

Psalms 11:3

If the foundations are destroyed, what can the righteous do?

**Laying a firm foundation for understanding
the beginnings of creation.**

Joseph Herrin

Table of Contents

[Introduction](#)

[The Foundation of Truth, Wisdom, and Knowledge](#)

[The Only Begotten Son](#)

[The Apprehension of Truth](#)

[Beginnings](#)

[The Genesis Gap](#)

[The Host of Heaven and the Rulers of This Age](#)

[The Fall of the Anointed Cherub](#)

[The Prince of This World](#)

[The Serpent Seed Doctrine](#)

[Creation by the Numbers](#)

[Yahweh's Calendar](#)

[Prophecy in the Heavens](#)

[The Scroll of the Heavens](#)

[The Ancient Zodiac and its Motions](#)

[The Zodiac Explained](#)

[Nimrod, Babel, and its Tower](#)

[Beyond Babel](#)

[Giants on the Earth](#)

[Wrapping Up](#)

Introduction

Psalms 11:3

If the foundations are destroyed, what can the righteous do?

It first entered my mind some years ago to write a book that addressed the beginnings of the creation. It seemed needful to lay a solid foundation for understanding the first things pertaining to this creation: the first appearance of the Son of God; the formation of the heavens and the earth; the creation of the angelic hosts; and the birth of mankind.

We live in an hour when there is much discussion in the church about ancient times. Doctrinal models pertaining to the state of humanity before the flood of Noah, the appearance of Nephilim - giants and mighty men of old who were the offspring of fallen angels and women, theories of alien visitors, and Kabbalistic teachings about an evil race of mankind referred to as “the serpent seed,” have become the fodder for Internet discussion, best selling books, and Hollywood productions.

There is a vast amount of error being taught about these matters. Rarely does one encounter teaching which is Biblically sound. Satan seems intent in sweeping all mankind away on a tidal wave of false histories, fictional mythologies, and lying fables. If Christians do not understand the beginnings of their history, and the rudimentary facts of the creation of God, they become easy prey for false doctrines and speculative fantasies that captivate the naive and Scripturally ignorant.

In this hour, many Christian teachers and authors are looking to extra-Biblical sources: apocryphal writings, pseudepigrapha, the occult teachings of Kabbala, the holy books of false religions, even the writings of Freemasons and Rosicrucians, to guide them. An increasing number of books and blog sites are serving up teachings derived from unclean, Satanically inspired sources which are unwisely used as guides for interpreting the Bible. The result is a growing darkness that is permeating the culture of the church of Christ.

This book will look to the Bible alone, and the tutelage of the Holy Spirit, as the authorities upon which an understanding of the foundations of this present creation might be established. There is a Latin saying that is recorded as “hominem unius libri timeo.” Translated into English the statement reads, “I fear the man of a single book.” This saying is attributed to Thomas Aquinas. By this phrase he meant to convey that a man who has thoroughly mastered one good book is dangerous as an opponent.

The Bible is THE Good Book. To many who occupy the seats of teaching among the body of Christ, the Bible has become a secondary source of information. Like the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints who interpret the Bible through the matrix of *The Book of Mormon*, many bloggers, book authors, and Christian teachers are promulgating spurious explanations of Bible passages as they look to an array of extra-Biblical writings for insight.

What the church needs are saints who have cut their teeth in the study of the Bible. It needs men and women who have immersed themselves in that text which alone bears the testimony of being written by “men moved by the Holy Spirit who spoke for God” (II Peter 1:21). Rather than interpreting the

Bible through a confusion of writings whose pedigree is far inferior, the Bible should be used as the standard to judge them. By this measure, many of these extra-Biblical writings stand condemned as works of deception, false copies of more ancient works that have been lost, and intentional works of darkness inspired by the enemy of mankind who desires to replace truth with lies.

As we near the end of the age and the soon revealing of the Son of God, Satan will increase the flood of deceptive works in an attempt to sweep away the people of God to destruction.

Revelation 12:15

And the serpent poured water like a river out of his mouth after the woman, so that he might cause her to be swept away with the flood.

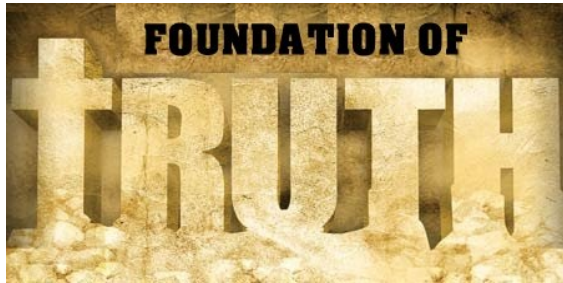
The people of God need a sure anchor to resist the fierce current of the times. They need to look to the Spirit and the Word to hold them fast to the bedrock of truth. As we look to understand the foundations of this present creation we need to hold fast to the one sure foundation of truth which is Jesus Christ/Yahshua the Messiah.

I Corinthians 3:11

For no man can lay a foundation other than the one which is laid, which is Yahshua Christ.

May you be blessed with peace and understanding in these days.

The Foundation of Truth, Wisdom, and Knowledge



An appropriate place to begin a book titled *FOUNDATIONS* is to speak of the foundation of Christian truth. Where does spiritual revelation come from? How does a man or woman arrive at the knowledge of the truth, specifically those truths that are the focus of the Bible? Let us begin to answer these questions by considering what passes for truth today.

At this present hour there are a myriad of books being marketed to the millions who identify themselves as Christians. Many of these books are fantastical. Their subject matter ranges from stargates to nephilim, ancient astronauts (aliens) to the spawn of the serpent and Eve. These writings allure with a promise of mysteries explained. They titillate with conspiratorial theories of the working of Satan in these last days before the return of Christ.

These books are rife with error, spurious conjecture, and unsupported speculation. Imaginative descriptions of the ancient history of the creation, and spectacular predictions of future events, are boldly proclaimed. A wide range of Scripture passages are cited as “proof” of an author’s theories. Yet, a careful examination of the Scriptural interpretations and arguments presented reveals their naked deception. Sensational doctrines are revealed to be founded upon faulty exegesis (critical explanation or interpretation of a text, especially of Scripture). The author is revealed to have practiced unethical eisegesis (an interpretation that expresses the interpreter's own ideas, or bias, rather than the meaning of the text).

Nevertheless, many readers never discover the error. The vast majority of Christians today have neglected to devote themselves to the study of the word of God. In fulfillment of the ministry entrusted to me, I encounter these individuals frequently. I am appalled at the absence of Bible knowledge among people who have been Christians 5, 10, 20, even 30 years or more. Many have rarely opened the Bible outside of a church service. Few have made the apprehension of Biblical truth a focus of their lives. They have been content to let others tell them what to believe, and to permit strangers to interpret the Bible for them.

One of the complaints I frequently hear in letters sent to me is that the Bible is a closed book, hard to understand, and that study of it is dry and bereft of fruit for the individual. Having found the Bible to be an enigma, its treasures difficult to mine, its secrets shrouded as if by an impenetrable veil, many Christians lose interest. Because the fruit of knowledge and understanding does not drop readily into their grasp, many Christians abandon personal Bible study.

The veil over the Scriptures perceived by these individuals is not an illusion. It is quite real. In the Bible we read:

Proverbs 25:2

It is the glory of God to conceal a matter, but the glory of kings is to search things out.



Yahweh has locked understanding of the mysteries of His kingdom away as with a key. Truth is highly valued by Yahweh. It is not dispensed indiscriminately. Those who prove themselves worthy are granted access to the secret things of God. Notice the condition to gain understanding that is set forth in the following verses.

Psalms 119:100

I understand more than the ancients, *because I keep Your precepts.*

Psalms 25:14

The secret of Yahweh is for those who fear Him, and He will show them His covenant.

The guarding of truth has ever been the practice of Yahweh. The concealing and restricted unveiling of divine truth was demonstrated vividly in the life of Christ. When speaking to the multitudes, Christ cloaked His meaning through the use of parables. It was before His disciples alone (those who followed Him obediently, sharing in His sufferings) that He would remove the veil from His words and explain to them the hidden things of God.

Matthew 13:10-11

And the disciples came and said to Him, “Why do You speak to them in parables?” And He answered and said to them, “To you it has been granted to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it has not been granted.”

Mark 4:33-34

And with many such parables He was speaking the word to them as they were able to hear it; and He did not speak to them without a parable; but He was explaining everything privately to His own disciples.

Christ is called “The Word made flesh” and the Bible is known as “the Word of God.” Both are an enigma. The apostle Paul speaks the following about the Messiah.

Colossians 2:2-3

Christ in whom are hidden all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

Note carefully that the apostle does NOT say “Christ in whom are *contained* all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.” If the Son of God was merely a container for the treasures of wisdom and knowledge, then all mankind might be able to come and take freely of these treasures. The apostle says that in Christ are “*hidden*” all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge. The Greek word from

which the English “hidden” is translated, is derived from the root “apokrupto.” *Strong’s Concordance* defines this Greek word in the following manner.

apokrupto; to conceal away (i.e. fully); figuratively, to keep secret:

In Christ are “concealed away” all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge. If one would gain access to these concealed treasures they must be intimate with Christ. Like the disciples who went aside from the multitudes and privately inquired about the meaning of the parables, those who want to arrive at the knowledge and understanding of the secret things of God’s kingdom must prove that they are disciples, and not merely confessors, of Christ. The qualifications of discipleship are exceedingly high. It will cost a man or woman everything in order to be a disciple of Yahshua.

Luke 14:26-27

“If anyone comes to Me, and does not hate his own father and mother and wife and children and brothers and sisters, yes, and even his own life, he cannot be My disciple. Whoever does not carry his own cross and come after Me cannot be My disciple.”

Luke 14:33

So then, any of you who does not forsake (renounce, surrender claim to, give up, say good-bye to) all that he has cannot be My disciple.

[Amplified Bible]



Understanding that the treasures of wisdom and truth are concealed by the godhead, to be revealed to those who will pay the cost of surrendering their lives to the lordship of Christ, one can begin to perceive why the Bible remains a closed book to so many. It also explains why many authors, teachers, and Internet bloggers are deriving so many spurious interpretations of the mysteries contained in the Bible. The price of access to divine truth is costly. Many look for a way to acquire knowledge while avoiding the high cost of discipleship with its self-denial, and suffering.

Many of the best selling authors in Christendom today are promulgating doctrines and theories which did not originate in Christ, who is the source and guardian of divine truth. Their teachings have arisen from the counsel of their own soul, and the fruitless imagination of the carnal mind. Some are looking to occult and deceptive writings for inspiration. Consequently they are being led astray into much error and are influencing others who stumble with them in the darkness.

In discoursing with a brother in Christ on this subject recently, I shared with him the following:

I have often reflected on the error of the Christian religious system that has chosen its own model to prepare men for ministry. Christ's model was to take a group of men and have them walk with Him, to share in His trials, His hardships, and His reproaches. Mankind today virtually ignores this experiential aspect of discipleship and training for ministry. Instead it substitutes classroom instruction, the reading of text books, and written and oral examinations. Bible colleges and seminaries have become a substitute for a life of surrender to the guidance of the Holy Spirit. It is little wonder that so many come out of these institutions with their minds confused, and filled with the errors that pass for orthodox belief today.

Brothers and sisters, the greatest safeguard against error and apostasy is to embrace a life of surrender to the leading of the Spirit of Christ. If we do not walk with Christ in a surrendered life we will find ourselves separated from Him, and lacking that intimacy that is necessary to hear His voice and be guided into all truth. A self-directed life, no matter how noble in appearance, does not bear the same fruit as a life of abandonment that has yielded to go wherever Christ says go, and to do whatever He commands.

Because the price of discipleship is so high, there are very few Christians today who qualify as disciples. There are myriads of confessors of Christ who are following the counsel of their own soul, pursuing the course that seems good to them. Many of these individuals aspire to be ministers, Bible teachers, and authors. Yet, because they are not disciples who are denying themselves and bearing their cross, they are often found to be running with a message that Christ has not given them. Not having access to the privy counsels of Christ, they feed upon one another, repeating and embellishing the ideas of other men and women.

Jeremiah 23:30-32

"Therefore behold, I am against the prophets," declares Yahweh, "who steal My words from each other. Behold, I am against the prophets," declares Yahweh, "who use their tongues and declare, 'He says.' Behold, I am against those who have prophesied false dreams," declares Yahweh, "and related them, and led My people astray by their falsehoods and reckless boasting; yet I did not send them or command them, nor do they furnish this people the slightest benefit," declares Yahweh.

Foundations are extremely important things. The psalmist laments, "If the foundations are destroyed, what can the righteous do?" (Psalms 11:3) If the foundation of truth is not firmly established in a man's life, seeking to access the treasures of wisdom and knowledge according to the divine pattern of obedience and surrender, the beliefs and doctrines of the man will be unstable.

Foundations undergird everything that rests upon them. If the foundation is flawed, the structure arising from it will be unsound. Many are attempting to be teachers of the Bible, expositors of the mysteries of creation, without embracing the suffering of the cross. Consequently, their teachings are riddled with corruption. The things they so confidently proclaim do not stand the test of truth.

Foundations are lowly things. To lay a sure foundation of truth a man or woman must humble themselves. The cross is an instrument of abasement and humility. The cross will put the self-life to death. The cross engenders reproach. Those who desire popularity, acclaim, and riches will inevitably despise the disciple's cross. Refusing to humble themselves, they will not receive the

grace of God that alone results in an unveiling of divine truth.

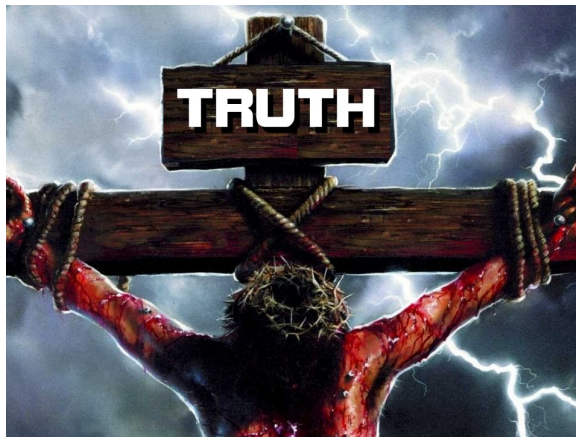
James 4:6-7

God is opposed to the proud, but gives grace to the humble. Submit therefore to God.

There are numerous men and women who are selling millions of books, audio messages, and videos. People flock to their conferences in great numbers. Media tables are set-up at their speaking events where those in attendance converge to fill up bags with books and videos that promise to impart to them the secrets of successful living and happiness, or to unveil the hidden things of God. Yet, the vast majority of this material is bereft of the divine truth it promises. Both shepherd and sheep are drinking from polluted streams, feeding in defiled pastures. Many of those who promote themselves as guides are in fact blind leaders of the blind. What is needed is a return to the foundations of truth.

Proverbs 15:33

The fear of Yahweh is the instruction for wisdom, and before honor comes humility.



There are no shortcuts to truth that circumvent the obedience of the cross. This is as much a fact for the readers of books as it is for the authors. The apostle Paul described those in the church who were “always learning and never able to come to the knowledge of the truth” (II Timothy 3:7). Christians may be purchasing millions of copies of the latest religious best sellers, but what are they gaining? They are not arriving at the knowledge of the truth. The church must embrace the cross. They must accept the cost of discipleship if they are to receive from Christ access to His most holy things.

The apostle Paul in writing to the Hebrews addresses the problem of feeding on “strange” and erroneous teachings. In his words are contained a deep truth, conveyed through means of symbolic speech.

Hebrews 13:9-10

Do not be carried away by varied and strange teachings; for it is good for the heart to be strengthened by grace, not by foods, through which those who were thus occupied were not benefitted. We have an altar, from which those who serve the tabernacle have no right to eat.

Teachings are compared to food. The soul feeds on ideas in the same way the body draws sustenance from various foods. Yet even as there are junk foods in abundance at this hour, there are also

teachings in abundance that do not profit. There are multitudes of books, sermons, and videos that do not lead to truth. They do not nourish the soul. Instead, they produce weakness and sickness among the body of Christ.

Paul states “We have an altar, from which those who serve the tabernacle have no right to eat.” What does the apostle intend to convey by these words? The fleshly body is described in the New Testament as a tabernacle, or temple, in which the Spirit of God resides. The apostle Paul has himself frequently resorted to this imagery.

I Corinthians 3:16-17

Do you not know that you are a temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwells in you? If any man destroys the temple of God, God will destroy him, for the temple of God is holy, and that is what you are.

How do men destroy, or defile, the temple of their body? They do so by indulging the flesh. In this same epistle the apostle chastises men in the church who have been fornicating with prostitutes from the local pagan temples.

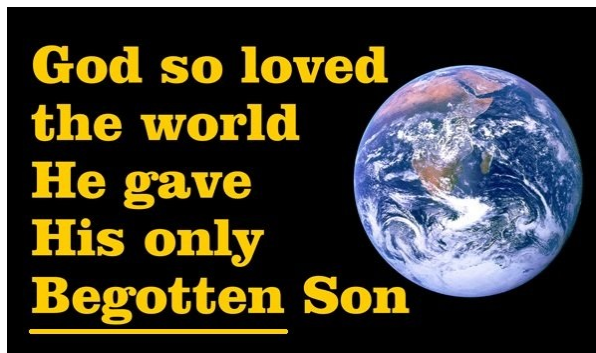
I Corinthians 6:15

Do you not know that your bodies are members of Christ? Shall I then take away the members of Christ and make them members of a harlot?

These statements of the apostle reveal the symbolic meaning of his statement in the book of Hebrews. Those who serve the tabernacle are those who serve the flesh. The apostle states that such ones are restricted from receiving food from the holy altar of God. When Paul says, “*We* have an altar...” he is speaking of himself and those other obedient disciples of Christ who buffet their bodies and keep them under subjection. He is speaking of those who do not live for the flesh, but live to do the will of Yahweh.

If you would be assured that you are not counted among those professors of Christ who are “always learning and never able to come to the knowledge of the truth” then you must not serve the flesh. You must be a servant of God, living to do His pleasure and to fulfill His righteousness. Then Yahweh will take food from His holy altar and give it to you to eat. If you will answer the call to “take up YOUR cross and follow” in the footsteps of Christ, then He will call you aside and explain those things that are hidden to the understanding of the multitude. Obedience to God is the foundation upon which truth must be established.

The Only Begotten Son



John 1:14

And the Word became flesh, and dwelt among us, and we beheld His glory, glory as of *the only begotten from the Father*, full of grace and truth.

From the time I was a child I heard Christ described as “*the only begotten son*.” Like many Christians I could quote John 3:16 from my youth.

John 3:16

For God so loved the world, that He gave *His only begotten Son*, that whoever believes in Him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

Incredible as it may seem, although I heard this expression thousands of times throughout my life, I had never heard any minister, author, Bible teacher, or Christian explain what the words “only begotten Son” meant in a way that was clear and satisfying. There was always a nagging thought that something was missing, or not quite correct, in the common explanations of this Biblical expression. Following are a few more occurrences.

John 1:18

No man has seen God at any time; *the only begotten God*, who is in the bosom of the Father, He has explained Him.

John 3:18

He who believes in Him is not judged; he who does not believe has been judged already, because he has not believed in the name of *the only begotten Son of God*.

I John 4:9

By this the love of God was manifested in us, that God has sent *His only begotten Son* into the world so that we might live through Him.

The Greek word translated as *only begotten* is “monogenes.” You may recognize elements of this word. The prefix mono means “one.” It is from this prefix that the English word “only” finds its way into the expression “*only begotten*.” The latter part of monogenes is taken from the Greek word ginomai. *Strong’s Concordance* defines this word in the following manner.

NT:1096

ginomai (ghin'-om-ahee); a prolongation and middle voice form of a primary verb; to cause to be ("gen"-erate), i.e. (reflexively) to become (come into being)...

What this Greek word is expressing is that Jesus Christ/Yahshua the Messiah is the only Son that was directly generated from the Father. There are other beings that are referred to in Scripture as the "son(s) of God," but none of these beings were the direct generation of Yahweh God, the Father of Yahshua. Consider the following Scriptures. In Luke chapter 3 we are given the supposed lineage of Yahshua through Joseph the husband of Mary. I use the word "supposed" because this is how the lineage is presented.

Luke 3:23

And when He began His ministry, Yahshua Himself was about thirty years of age, being *supposedly* the son of Joseph...

The ensuing genealogy is interesting because it follows a very consistent pattern. Each man listed is declared to be the son of his father. Following is just a portion.

Luke 3:23-25

Yahshua Himself was about thirty years of age, being supposedly the son of Joseph, the son of Eli, the son of Matthat, the son of Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of Jannai, the son of Joseph, the son of Mattathias, the son of Amos...

This lengthy genealogy continues all the way to its root in Adam, whereupon we read the following:

Luke 3:38

...the son of Adam, the son of God.

In my years growing up in church I never heard a minister or teacher define what the difference was between Adam's creation and Christ's creation. (Some may be troubled that I use the word "creation" in reference to Christ for many have been taught that Christ has always existed co-equal with the Father and is not a created being. Please be patient as I will address this momentarily.)

What was unclear to me in childhood was how Christ and Adam differed as sons of God. Both are called "the son of God." Yet only Yahshua is called "the only begotten Son of God." Did not God also beget Adam? Was not Adam the direct generation of God? The answer to these questions has in part been obscured due to the way in which various Hebrew words in the book of Genesis have been translated into English. For example, we read:

Genesis 1:27

And **God** (Elohim) created man in His own image, in the image of **God** (Elohim) He created him...

Genesis 2:7

Then **the Lord God** (Yahweh Elohim) formed man of dust from the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living being.

When we read these statements in English we do not clearly see what was expressed in the Hebrew. The word *Elohim* is a plural word. The singular form is *Eloah*. Both words are masculine gender. Whenever the Bible uses the word Elohim as a reference to God (uppercase) it is a reference to the godhead. The godhead is comprised of God the Father, God the Son, and the Holy Spirit. Because there is more than one member of the godhead, the Hebrew language uses the plural Elohim in reference to the godhead, rather than the singular Eloah.

In Genesis 2:7 the expression “Yahweh Elohim” is also a reference to the godhead. If the writer had meant to speak of the Father only, who is called Yahweh, he would have written “Yahweh Eloah,” or simply “Yahweh.” What is being communicated is that the godhead of Yahweh, which includes the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit, acted in concert to create man (Hebrew *Adam*). This becomes apparent in other verses in Genesis.

Genesis 1:26

Then God (Elohim) said, "Let Us make man in Our image, according to Our likeness..."

The words “us” and “our” indicate a plurality. The members of the godhead are speaking to one another when they say “Let US make man...” This raises an interesting point for consideration. If Adam was directly formed by Yahweh the Father, then we could not say that Yahshua is the monogenes, the only direct generation, of the Father. We have to look to other passages of Scripture to resolve this conundrum. In his gospel, the apostle John speaks of Yahshua as “the Word.” What John states about the Son of God is pertinent to our investigation.

John 1:1-3

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. He was in the beginning with God. ***All things came into being by Him, and apart from Him nothing came into being that has come into being.***

The apostle Paul provides further insight in his epistle to the saints in Colossae.

Colossians 1:13-16

For He delivered us from the domain of darkness, and transferred us to the kingdom of His beloved Son, in whom we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins. And He (the Son) is the image of the invisible God, the first-born of all creation. ***For by Him (the Son) all things were created, both in the heavens and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities - all things have been created by Him and for Him.***

Contained in these passages is a very important revelation. From the Father came forth the Son at the beginning of the creation. This is what is declared as the apostle states that “*He (the Son) is... the first-born of all creation.*” Yahshua the Son was the ONLY direct generation from the Father. All other things were created through the instrumentality of the Son. Both man and the angels were created directly by the Son. The Son did not create anything of His own initiative, however, for we are told that the Son ever lives to do the will of the Father.

John 4:34-35

Yahshua said to them, “My food is to do the will of Him who sent Me, and to accomplish His work.”

John 5:30

I can of mine own self do nothing... because I seek not mine own will, but the will of the Father which hath sent me.

These verses, and many others, reveal that the Son has always existed to do the will of God the Father. Although it is common to depict God’s hands forming the creation, the Bible tells us that the creation was spoken into existence.



Psalms 33:6

By the word of Yahweh the heavens were made, and by the breath of His mouth all their host.

For those who are quick of spirit, you may have noticed that a double meaning lies hidden in the verse above. Suppose we change one letter above from lower case to upper case. Consider what revelations would then come forth.

Psalms 33:6

By the **W**ord of Yahweh the heavens were made, and by the breath of His mouth all their host.

At some time determined by the Father, the Son of God began to act to accomplish His Father’s will by forming the creation; the heavens and the earth and all that is in them. “*For by Him (the Son) all things were created, both in the heavens and on earth, visible and invisible.*” Solomon, in the book of Proverbs, affirms this truth as he speaks of the Son of God under the simile of Wisdom. That the Son of God is Wisdom is affirmed in various Scriptures.

I Corinthians 1:24

Christ the power of God and the **wisdom** of God.

Observe then the parallels between the declarations of the apostles John and Paul, and the words of King Solomon.

Proverbs 8:12, 22-30

I, wisdom, dwell with prudence, and I find knowledge and discretion... Yahweh possessed me at the beginning of His way, before His works of old. From *everlasting* (literally, “the age”) I was established (anointed), from the beginning, from the earliest times of the earth. When there were no depths I was brought forth, when there were no springs abounding with water. Before the mountains were settled, before the hills I was brought forth; While He had not yet made the earth and the fields, nor the first dust of the world. When He established the heavens, I was there, when He inscribed a circle on the face of the deep, when He made firm the skies above, when the springs of the deep became fixed, when He set for the sea its boundary, so that the water should not transgress His command, when He marked out the foundations of the earth; Then I was beside Him, as a master workman...

“As a master workman” the Son of God formed the heavens and the earth, mankind and angels. When the apostle Paul states “whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities - all things have been created by Him and for Him,” those beings named are members of the heavenly host. They are angelic beings. The Son of God has created them all.

Some are offended when they hear it taught that the Son of God is a created being. They fear that to believe Yahshua was created of the Father in some way diminishes His divinity. Yet, those who would “rightly divide the word of God” cannot escape the truth of the Son’s creation. At the same time, the Son of God is preeminent among the creation, for He is the only begotten of the Father. He is the only direct generation of God. All other things were created by the Son, and for the Son. The apostle Paul continues to extol the surpassing greatness of the Son of God in his epistle to the Colossians.

Colossians 1:17-20

And He is before all things, and in Him all things hold together. He is also head of the body, the church; and He is the beginning, the first-born from the dead; so that He Himself might come to have first place in everything. For it was the Father's good pleasure for all the fulness to dwell in Him, and through Him to reconcile all things to Himself, having made peace through the blood of His cross; through Him, I say, whether things on earth or things in heaven.

It is in the son’s ministry of reconciliation, the returning of all the creation to a state of peace and oneness with the Father, that we find an affirmation of the truth that the Son of God came forth from the Father at some time in the distant past, and at the end of the ages He will return to the Father.

I Corinthians 15:25-28

For He must reign until He has put all His enemies under His feet. The last enemy that will be abolished is death. For He has put all things in subjection under His feet. But when He says, "All things are put in subjection," it is evident that He is excepted who put all things in subjection to Him. ***And when all things are subjected to Him, then the Son Himself also will be subjected to the One who subjected all things to Him, that God may be all in all.***

In the end of the age when all things that came forth from the Son are subjected to the same, the Son will in turn return to the Father that God may be “all in all.” Paul writes of this mystery elsewhere.

Ephesians 1:9-10

He made known to us the mystery of His will, according to His kind intention which He purposed in Him with a view to an administration suitable to the fulness of the times, that is, the summing up of all things in Christ, things in the heavens and things upon the earth.

The English word “sum” is derived from the Latin “summa.” When the Romans would add together figures they would put the total, the sum, at the top of the list of numbers. This is the opposite of how people in English speaking nations do sums. The expression “to sum up” is a direct reference to the Roman practice of placing the sum at the top of a list of figures. It is from the Latin summa that we derive the English word “summit,” meaning the highest point.

When Paul wrote to the Ephesians he had the Roman practice of summing up in mind. Consider that when we sum up a list of numbers that the sum necessarily encompasses and contains everything that is being summed. The reconciliation of the heavens and earth will only be accomplished when all that is contrary to the nature of God has been removed. All rebellion and all sin must cease. Those who were angry with God, the rebels and the wicked, must repent and be purified by fire before all can be summed up in Christ. There can be nothing unholy, and no rebellion, that is contained in the Son of God.

Isaiah 45:23-24

“I have sworn by Myself, the word has gone forth from My mouth in righteousness and will not turn back, that to Me every knee will bow, every tongue will swear allegiance. They will say of Me, 'Only in Yahweh are righteousness and strength.' Men will come to Him, and all who were angry at Him shall be ashamed.”

The fact that these former rebels are ashamed reveals that repentance has come to them. That they would freely confess that “Only in Yahweh are righteousness and strength” demonstrates that the ministry of reconciliation has been fully accomplished by Yahshua, the Son of God.

Philippians 3:20-21

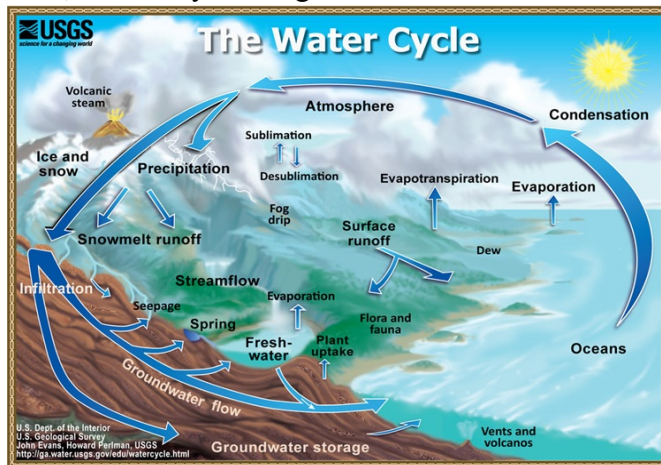
For our citizenship is in heaven, from which also we eagerly wait for a Savior, the Lord Yahshua Christ; who will transform the body of our humble state into conformity with the body of His glory, ***by the exertion of the power that He has even to subject all things to Himself.***

When Yahweh’s plan of the ages has finished its course, all that came forth from the Son will be reconciled to the Father. All things, whether in heaven or on earth that have been in a state of rebellion and sin will be brought to a state of peace and righteousness. All will be subjected to, and summed up in, the Son of God. He will in turn be subject to the Father so that He is “all in all.” This is the glorious cycle of creation established by the Father. Solomon observed the cycle of creation in that which is observable on earth.

Ecclesiastes 1:5-7

The sun rises and the sun sets; And hastening to its place it rises there again. Blowing toward the south, then turning toward the north, the wind continues swirling along; And on its circular courses the wind returns. All the rivers flow into the sea, yet the sea is not full. To the place where the rivers

flow, there they flow again.



The grandest cycle of all began with the creation of the Son of God. Before there was anything, the Son came forth as the only begotten of the Father. Through the Son the heavens and the earth were made, and all they contain. We are now seeing the firstfruits of the creation returning to Christ as those who are overcoming sons and daughters born of the Spirit of Christ are being cleansed of all sin and that which defiles. Yet these are merely firstfruits. The entire creation must be restored to the Son, and then the Son Himself will return to the Father so that He is “all in all.”

Thus, we see in the creation cycle the preeminence of the only begotten Son of God. At the same time we understand that the Father is the source of all. It should not be surprising to anyone to learn that the Son had to arise out from the Father. The very words “son” and “father” convey a sense of order. A father always exists before a son. Likewise, a son always comes out of a father. Mankind was created in God’s image. The mystery of the godhead is revealed in humanity. Even as a man contains seed that must come out of the man to form something in his image, so too did the Son of God proceed out of the Father.

Some may still be troubled, supposing that recognizing the Son as a creation (generation) of the Father somehow diminishes His divinity. A believer may inquire, “How can Christ be the direct generation of the Father and yet be One with the Father?” There are mysteries contained here, but Yahweh has not left us without understanding. In the creation itself Yahweh has demonstrated the glorious mystery of the godhead. He has revealed the relationship between Father, Son, and Holy Spirit through the example of speech. Having written on this subject previously in the book *God’s Plan of the Ages*, I will repeat a passage from that writing here.

Some years back I was meditating upon the doctrine of the Trinity. I wanted to understand the nature and relationship of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit. Yahweh, as He often does, brought understanding through means of a parable.

As I was sitting before the Father He asked me, “If you want to see the soul of a man, how would you view it?” I knew the soul to be invisible. It will not show up on an x-ray, or a CAT scan or MRI. A person cannot take a picture of the soul of man. Nonetheless, the soul can be seen. Yahshua said,

Luke 6:45

"The good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth what is good; and the evil man out of the evil treasure brings forth what is evil; for his mouth speaks from that which fills his heart."

The heart is a metaphor of the soul. A man's soul can be seen in His words. Do you want to know if a soul is evil, listen to the words that come from a man's mouth. One can discern if a man is lustful by listening to his words. If the man is ruled by anger in his soul, his words will reveal it. Rebellion, covetousness, jealousy, pride, envy, and every evil characteristic of the soul of a man is exhibited in a man's speech.

The righteous man is also known by his words. You can discern whether a man is pure in heart, whether he is loving, merciful, patient, longsuffering, humble, and selfless by observing his conversation. Surely a man's soul is revealed through his words.

As the Father directed me to contemplate these things, He revealed to me the relationship of the Spirit and the Son to Himself through the parable of speech. Every created thing was crafted with masterful design to show forth hidden mysteries of the kingdom of God. Yahweh has revealed the Trinity through the miracle of speech.

Every word begins with a thought in the mind of man. The thought is made visible as a man exhales air from his lungs and shapes identifiable sounds as the air passes over the vocal chords. These sounds exit the man as words, and the words reveal the hidden things inside the soul of man.

Yahweh the Father is Spirit. No one has seen the Father at any time. The apostle John shared the following words of inspiration with the saints.

John 1:18

No man has ever seen God at any time; the only unique Son, or the only begotten God, Who is in the bosom [in the intimate presence] of the Father, He has declared Him [He has revealed Him and brought Him out where He can be seen; He has interpreted Him and He has made Him known].
(Amplified Bible)

God wanted to make Himself known to the creation. Yet a physical creation cannot see that which exists in Spirit alone. Yahweh had to do something to reveal Himself even as a man must do something to make the thoughts of his mind known to others. Yahweh formed a Word.

John 1:14

And the Word became flesh, and dwelt among us, and we saw His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.

Yahweh exhaled His Spirit and formed a Word. It was a perfect Word that fully revealed Himself. This Word became flesh so that mankind could perceive it. The Word is the Son of God. The Son has perfectly declared, manifested, and made known the Father.

John 14:9

Yahshua said to him, "Have I been so long with you, and yet you have not come to know Me, Philip? He who has seen Me has seen the Father..."

When the Father wanted to reveal Himself to creation He formed the Word. As the Father showed this to me He showed me the process by which a word is formed. We utter forth speech as we breathe out. Yahweh designed speech to be accomplished in this manner. Speech is accomplished by the exhalation of man's breath.

Throughout the Bible the word for Spirit is always related to the word for breath, air, or wind. In the Old Testament the word is "ruach." The first occurrence is found in the second verse of the Bible.

Genesis 1:2

The earth was formless and void, and darkness was over the surface of the deep, and the ***Spirit*** [ruach] of God was moving over the surface of the waters.

This same word is used in the following verses.

Genesis 7:22

All in whose nostrils was the ***breath*** [ruach] of life, of all that was in the dry land, died.

Genesis 8:1

And God remembered Noah, and every living thing, and all the cattle that was with him in the ark: and God made a ***wind*** [ruach] to pass over the earth, and the waters assuaged...

When man who has a body of flesh breathes out his exhalation is air. When Yahweh who is Spirit breathes out, His exhalation is Spirit. Even as man's breath is used to form words, so was the exhalation of the Spirit of God used to form Christ, "the living Word."

Luke 1:35

The angel answered and said to (Mary), "The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you; and for that reason the holy Child shall be called the Son of God."
[End Excerpt]

What Yahweh did in sending His Son to the earth in the form of man was a physical re-enactment of what the Father did in the very beginning of the creation. He breathed out His Spirit and formed the Word, the only begotten, directly generated Son of God. This Son is a perfect expression of the thought, mind, character and being of the Father. All that pertains to the Father was embodied in the Son. Yet, the Son's body in His original creation was different from the human form He took on when He was born of a virgin woman. The Son of God received a heavenly body. It was a body of great glory and immeasurable power. By the exercise of this body He created all things. We are told that when the time came for the Son of God to be born of a woman in order to redeem mankind, He had to lay aside the glorious form of His first creation.

Philippians 2:5-7

Have this attitude in yourselves which was also in Christ Yahshua, who, although He existed in the form of God, did not regard equality with God a thing to be grasped, but emptied Himself, taking the form of a bond-servant, and being made in the likeness of men.

When the time came for the redemption of man to take place, Yahweh prepared a different body for His Son. It was a body like unto our own.

Hebrews 10:5

Therefore, when He comes into the world, He says, "Sacrifice and offering You have not desired, but a body You have prepared for Me..."

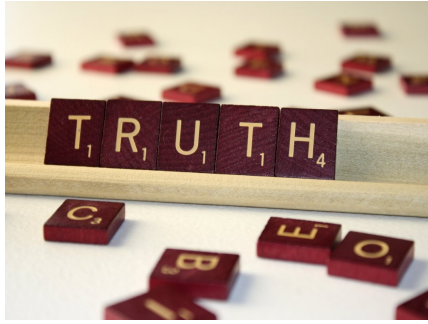
From the beginning of the creation the Son existed in the form of God. His was a celestial body. He was the heavenly vision of the invisible God. As the Son, Yahshua was granted the wisdom, character, and power of God the Father. By exercise of these attributes, and in subjection to the Father, the Son created all things.

If you are able to receive these things, you can then understand what is meant when the Bible describes Yahshua as "the only begotten of the Father." In a sense we can say that all things have come forth from the Father. Yet, only one being was the direct generation, the monogenes, of the Father. This is the Son, the firstborn, the preeminent One of all creation.

Adam came forth from God, but he is not a direct generation of the Father. He was formed by the Son through whom all things both visible and invisible were made. The angels came forth from God, but neither were they directly generated by the Father. It was the Son who created principalities and powers, thrones and dominions. All things were created by Him and for Him.

It has been granted to mankind to become sons of God, yet there will only ever be one who is the only begotten Son of the Father. He issued forth at the very beginning of the creation. He is before all things, and through Him all things consist and hold together. Glory and honor belong to the Son of God!

The Apprehension of Truth



In posting the previous chapter of this book I have anticipated some objections that may be raised to what has been set forth. In trying to keep each post to a reasonable length it becomes untenable to attempt to address in one writing every concern, question, or objection to a doctrine as profound and far reaching as the relationship between Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. I believe a good beginning was made in the previous chapter. I will now proceed to build upon that foundation.

I encourage those to whom this teaching is new to search the Scriptures as did the noble Bereans, to see whether the things being declared are true. Truth does not fear scrutiny. It is error that must ever hide in the shadows, and it is falsehood that does not assent to being questioned. In your searching you must not fail in diligence. Do not be content to grasp only that which is on the surface. You must dig deep to discover what lies beneath.

One of the most irresponsible things we could do is to reject a teaching out of hand, saying, “That is not what I have been taught. What you are sharing offends me.” It is common to view with fear that which contradicts what we have received as the orthodox view of the church, especially if it was communicated to us by someone we admire. I have experienced this emotion myself, but I have listened to that still, small voice that told me to hear before I judge, and to test all things before rejecting them.

Perhaps you were taught that God the Father created the heavens and the earth and it troubles you to hear it taught that all things (other than the Son Himself) were formed by the Son of God. In the preceding chapter there were numerous Scriptures cited in support of this teaching. The skeptical reader should examine each verse to see if it truly says what this Bible teacher is declaring. They should also look for other Scriptures that may affirm, or refute, the conclusions shared. If they had done so, they may have come across the following passage.

Hebrews 1:1-2

God, after He spoke long ago to the fathers in the prophets in many portions and in many ways, in these last days has spoken to us in His Son, whom He appointed heir of all things, ***through whom also He made the world.***

These words of one of Christ’s apostles very succinctly summarize the role of the members of the godhead in the creation. The translation above does contain an inaccuracy. The word “world” is translated from the Greek “aion” which means “an age.” A more literal translation would say “*through whom also He made the ages.*” This is in fact the meaning that Young’s Literal Translation,

The Amplified Bible, and other Bibles bring forth. Rendering *aion* as age does no harm to the point being made, for we see the Son being the agent through which the Father is creating all things. I would further suggest that “the ages” encompass all that is contained within them, including the heavens and the earth and all their inhabitants.

The Father can be said to have formed the creation, but He did so through the agency of the Son. As John testified, nothing came into being apart from the Son. The great truths of Scripture do not stand alone on one verse, or one statement. A truth may be declared in one passage, but additional insight is obtained in other Scriptures. We must take the entire counsel of the word of God and form a comprehensive view of truth where all the various passages complement one another to form a harmonious whole. If we find a passage that contradicts, then we have either understood verses incorrectly, or there may be a translation error. Translation errors are abundant in Scripture, for men translate according to their understanding, an understanding that is often faulty.



Fitting All the Pieces Together

In the previous chapter we looked at a number of Scriptures that reveal that the Son’s being and existence is subordinate to the Father. The Son of God did not always co-exist with the Father. The Bible reveals that at some point the Son was generated from the Father. He is the “monogenes” of the Father, the only direct generation of God. In contrast, the Bible reveals that God the Father has always been. He is the self-existent One.

The Son is not self-existent. He came forth from the Father. As one considers what the terms Father and Son mean, and what is entailed in being “born,” they will see that it would be inconsistent to speak of Yahshua as the Son and firstborn of God while holding to the view that His existence and beginning is identical to that of the Father. How can Christ be the “firstborn” of the Father and always have existed with Him?

Being born implies that one had a beginning and arose out of another. You are the offspring of your father and mother. You had a definite beginning. We can debate whether your beginning was at the moment of birth, the moment of conception, or whether you existed further back as the seed of your father and ancestors. We could even suggest that your beginning lay as far back as the thought of God before the earth was formed, for the Bible says “Before I formed you in the womb I knew

you...” (Jeremiah 1:5), and “And all who dwell on the earth will worship him, *everyone whose name has not been written from the foundation of the world* in the book of life of the Lamb who has been slain” (“Revelation 13:8). What is indisputable is that, in your bodily form as a descendant of Adam, you had a definite beginning.

The same is true of the Son of God. Perhaps He always existed in the mind of the Father. Yet even as a thought does not take on substance until a man exhales his breath and forms a word that others can hear, so too there was a definite point in time when Yahweh breathed out His Spirit and formed “the Living Word.” That Yahshua is a part of the creation of God is plainly stated in the Bible.

Revelation 3:14

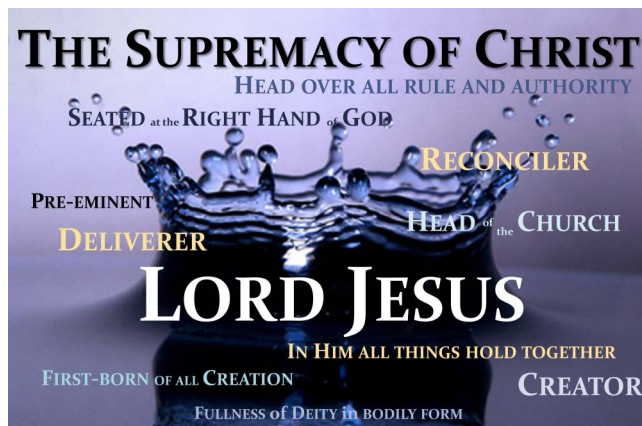
The Amen, the faithful and true Witness, *the Beginning of the creation of God*, says this...

Colossians 1:15

And He is the image of the invisible God, *the first-born of all creation*.

Hebrews 1:5

For to which of the angels did He ever say, "*You are My Son, today I have begotten Thee*"?



Of God the Father no similar statement can be made. There was not a day in which the Father was begotten. He was not generated by another. He always has been. He is the great I AM.

Isaiah 43:10

Before Me there was no God formed, and there will be none after Me.

Part of the confusion that exists in the church today regarding the Son of God’s origin and beginning comes from a lack of patient and careful consideration of the Scriptures. There are a number of passages of the Bible that declare the Son to be one with the Father.

John 10:30

“I and the Father are one.”

Some have assumed that this statement means that there is no difference between them. Such a conclusion does not stand up to scrutiny. Most assuredly there are differences between them. One

is the Father. The other is the Son. One is called Yahweh. The other is called Yahshua. One is Spirit whom no man has ever seen at any time, the other was incarnated in the form of man, and the disciples saw Him, handled Him, and spent several years of their lives walking with Him. Furthermore, we have Christ's own confession that the Father is greater than Himself.

John 14:28

"You heard that I said to you, 'I go away, and I will come to you.' If you loved Me, you would have rejoiced, because I go to the Father; for *the Father is greater than I*."

None of these truths diminish the honor and glory of the Son of God. Christians need not be afraid that acknowledging the Son as subordinate to the Father, and the first creation of the Father, in any way is a denial of His preeminence, or of His identity as God.

On the other hand, I have had conversation with numerous individuals over the course of my ministry who deny that Yahshua is God. It was not atheists making this claim. It was men and women who profess to be Christians. The views on this are many. Some claim that the Son of God is the same being as the archangel Michael. Others who are non-trinitarian in their beliefs, deny that Yahshua could be God, for the Bible says there is only "one God."

Deuteronomy 6:4-5

"Hear, O Israel! Yahweh is our God, *Yahweh is one!*"

I Timothy 2:5

For there is one God, and one mediator also between God and men, the man Christ Yahshua...

Some who oppose the trinitarian view would point to the verse above from Timothy and confidently assert that only the Father is God, and Christ is a man, albeit a glorified man. This reveals the error of focusing too narrowly on a single passage of Scripture. For a doctrine to be true it must accord with the entire testimony of the Bible. There are numerous passages that attest to the truth that Christ is God.

John 1:18

No man has seen God at any time; *the only begotten God*, who is in the bosom of the Father, He has explained Him.

John 20:28

Thomas answered and said to Him (Yahshua), "*My Lord and my God!*"

Philippians 2:5-7

Have this attitude in yourselves which was also in Christ Jesus, who, although *He existed in the form of God*, did not regard equality with God a thing to be grasped, but emptied Himself, taking the form of a bond-servant, and being made in the likeness of men.

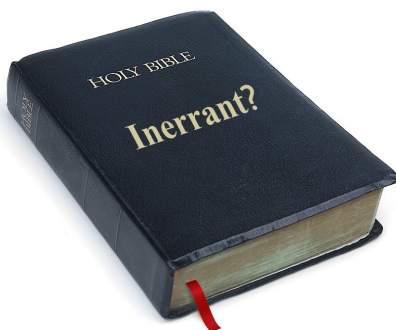
Titus 2:13

Looking for the blessed hope and the appearing of the glory of *our great God and Savior, Christ*

Yahshua.

If we would walk in truth we must not neglect those Scriptures that serve to refute some doctrinal belief we have adopted. There are men and women who are zealous in their contention that the Father and the Son are in every way identical to one another. To the other extreme there are those who declare that Christ is not God at all. Both positions are proven false as we apply ourselves to “rightly divide the word of truth.”

I am in no way intending to criticize those who have sincere objections that hinder them from being able to accept specific truths. The world is a very confusing place. There are a myriad of voices declaring a plethora of contrasting and often incompatible beliefs. The church itself is fractured into thousands of denominations that are largely divided along doctrinal lines. As I demonstrated in the writing *Yahweh's Book*, even our Bibles are leavened throughout with error. Yahweh has not preserved the Bible without error anymore than He has preserved the body of Christ without error. This may seem to some to be a bad thing, but it is in an environment of error, deception, and lies that Yahweh is best able to prove those who are lovers of truth, and to cause His people to exercise themselves in the pursuit of the same.



I have observed a similarity in the zeal of some who are offended at the teaching that reveals that the Son of God is a creation of the Father, and the zealousness of those who are offended when they hear it declared that there are contradictions in the Bible. I understand the reaction. Some believe that teaching that Christ was created by the Father is an attack on the Son of God's divinity. Similarly, some believe to describe the Bible as anything other than perfect and inerrant is an attack on God or Christianity. When strong emotions are aroused people tend to lose their ability to reason. Fear and anger are hindrances to the apprehension of truth.

An example of the errors in the Bible is readily observed in books of the Bible that parallel one another, but differ in their accounts. The books of Kings and Chronicles give accounts of similar things, but contain differences. The same is true of the Gospels, particularly the synoptic Gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke. I will cite a couple of examples.

Describing the Bronze Laver, also called the Molten Sea, that Solomon had constructed to hold water for the ceremonial washing of the Levitical priests, the book of I Kings and the book of II Chronicles differ by a third in its capacity.

I Kings 7:26

And it was an hand breadth thick, and the brim thereof was wrought like the brim of a cup, with flowers of lilies: ***it contained two thousand baths.***

KJV

II Chronicles 4:5

And the thickness of it was an handbreadth, and the brim of it like the work of the brim of a cup, with flowers of lilies; ***and it received and held three thousand baths.***

KJV

Similarly, we see a discrepancy in the number of days that passed from the time Christ was said to have taken Peter, James, and John up to the mount of transfiguration.

Mark 9:1-2

And He was saying to them, "Truly I say to you, there are some of those who are standing here who shall not taste death until they see the kingdom of God after it has come with power." ***And six days later,*** Jesus took with Him Peter and James and John, and brought them up to a high mountain by themselves.

NAS

Luke 9:27-28

"But I say to you truthfully, there are some of those standing here who shall not taste death until they see the kingdom of God." ***And some eight days after these sayings,*** it came about that He took along Peter and John and James, and went up to the mountain to pray.

NAS

These types of errors are not uncommon in the Bible. What are we to attribute them to? Did the Holy Spirit inspire the original writers of these books to present contradictory information? Have these writings been altered over the millennia as scribes copied and re-copied the Scriptures? Are there errors in translation that can account for these differences? Certainly the role man has played in copying and translating the Scriptures has led to the introduction of a great many errors. In the case of the above two examples, it would be very easy for a scribe, or a translator, to change one number to another by accident.

There is another type of Bible error of which those who seek truth must be aware. It is an error of understanding. When the Bible is translated from one language to another those laboring to produce a copy of the Scriptures must not only have an understanding of the original languages of the Bible, and the language to which it is being translated, they must also understand the truths contained in the Bible. It is common for a single Hebrew or Greek word to bear a diversity of meanings. If a translator does not have an accurate understanding of what is being declared in a Bible passage, he/she will find it difficult to identify correctly which meaning a Hebrew or Greek word was intended to convey. This is a very problematic issue. A man could be the foremost Hebrew or Greek scholar of his day and, not understanding the truths of the Bible, he would frequently err in bringing forth a translation.

As an example of the wide divergence of meaning that men can derive from a single verse, let us look at the following Scripture.

I Timothy 1:17

Now unto the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only wise God, be honour and glory for ever and ever. Amen.

KJV

I Timothy 1:17

And to the King of the ages, the incorruptible, invisible, only wise God, [is] honour and glory - to the ages of the ages! Amen.

YLT

Comparing this verse in the King James Bible with the same verse in Young's Literal Translation, we find that very different information is conveyed. Is the King "eternal" or is He the "King of the ages"? The KJV translation places the emphasis on the King Himself. The word "eternal" becomes an adjective to describe the King. Young's Literal Translation places the focus upon the duration of the King's reign. The words "eternal" and "ages" are widely divergent in meaning. Eternal means without beginning or end, yet the word "ages" speaks of that which has a definite beginning and a recognized end point.

There are other marked differences in information conveyed in these two translations. Who is right, or are either of them correct? The problem we find here did not arise as much from a misapprehension of the Greek language as it did from a difference of doctrinal views. The KJV translators were charged to not derive any interpretation of the Scriptures that would upset the orthodox teachings of the Anglican Church of which King James was the titular head. (This present series cannot address the doctrine of the ages of creation at length. Those who are interested in pursuing the subject further will find it set forth at some length in the book *God's Plan of the Ages*.)

I chose the above verse as an example of contradictions that exist between Bible translations because it bears directly on the subject of the attributes of the Son of God. Identifying the King as Yahshua, we find one Bible attributing to the Son an eternal existence while the other does not. We have already read in a number of Bible passages that the Son was "born," He is the "beginning of the creation of God." Therefore, a contradiction arises when we read in the KJV Bible, and numerous other translations, statements that ascribe to Yahshua an eternal character. We find this same contradiction among Bible translations of the following Scripture:

Hebrews 1:8

But *unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever*: a sceptre of righteousness is the sceptre of thy kingdom.

KJV

Hebrews 1:8

And *unto the Son: 'Thy throne, O God, [is] to the age of the age*; a scepter of righteousness [is] the scepter of thy reign;

YLT

Is the Son's rule "for ever and ever," or is it "to the age of the age"? These are very different expressions. The KJV rendering indicates that there will be no end to the Son's rule. Once again the translators have rendered the Greek word "aion" as "for ever" while Young renders it more accurately as "age."

I have found that people are often not convinced by arguments based upon the meaning of a Greek or Hebrew word. This is understandable, for very few Christians today, myself included, can lay claim to being advanced scholars of these ancient languages. How then are we to know which translator has done the better job? The way many Christians resolve the issue is to accept the word of their pastor or some trusted friend. Many saints adopt whatever view that they have been taught from early on to be correct.

There is a better way to resolve a matter. Contradictions such as these can be settled as we become conversant with the entire testimony of the Bible. This is one reason it is important for Christians to independently study the word of God. If you have applied yourself to the study of the Scriptures then the Holy Spirit is able to bring to mind other passages that will lead to understanding. For example, as I consider the verses above, desiring to know what is the proper interpretation, my mind is quickened to the following passage from Paul's address to the Corinthian believers.

I Corinthians 15:24-28

Then comes the end, when He delivers up the kingdom to the God and Father, when He has abolished all rule and all authority and power. ***For He must reign until*** He has put all His enemies under His feet. The last enemy that will be abolished is death. For He has put all things in subjection under His feet. But when He says, "All things are put in subjection," it is evident that He is excepted who put all things in subjection to Him. ***And when all things are subjected to Him, then the Son Himself also will be subjected to the One who subjected all things to Him, that God may be all in all.***

The apostle Paul reveals that the reign of Christ will have an end. At some point in the distant ages the reign of the Son will have accomplished its purpose of subjecting all things to the Father. When this is accomplished, all rule and authority will be abolished. The Son's reign will also come to an end as all things are subjected to the Father and He becomes "all in all."

People of God, as we look to the entire counsel of the Scriptures to inform our judgment we are able to see that Christ had a beginning as the firstborn of the Father. We are told He is "the beginning of the creation of God." The Son is ancient of days, but He is not eternal. He has a beginning, and his rule will have an end when He has subjected all things to the Father. It is therefore inaccurate to describe the reign of the Son of God as "for ever and ever." His reign will be to the end of the ages. It is also incorrect to describe the Son as "the King eternal." Robert Young has translated the passage properly for us when he rendered it as "the king of the ages."

Many more examples of this type of conflict and resolution, leading to a harmonious view of the whole of Scriptures could be cited, but I will mention only one more that a reader mentioned after the previous chapter was posted. He asked me about the testimony found in the following Scripture.

Isaiah 9:6

For a child will be born to us, a son will be given to us; And the government will rest on His shoulders; And His name will be called Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God, ***Eternal Father***, Prince of Peace.

Once again we find a verse that is conveying information about the Christ that contradicts with that which is revealed elsewhere. How can the Son of God be rightly described as “Eternal Father” if He has a beginning, and His reign will come to an end at the end of the ages? How would we test the matter? How do we arrive at truth?

My intent in this writing is to do more than supply the reader with answers to doctrinal difficulties. My desire is to demonstrate to the reader how to resolve doctrinal difficulties. There is a proverb that states, “Give a man a fish and feed him for a day. Teach a man to fish and feed him for a lifetime.” I would much prefer to teach the people of God how to arrive at truth for themselves than to tell them what truth is.



The place to begin is always to pray, for Yahweh is the possessor and guardian of all truth. There is nothing that is hidden from His sight. He has also admonished His people to seek Him if they lack wisdom, or need understanding.

James 1:5

If any of you lacks wisdom, let him ask of God, who gives to all men generously and without reproach, and it will be given to him.

John 16:23

“And in that day you will ask Me (the Son) no question. Truly, truly, I say to you, if you shall ask the Father for anything, He will give it to you in My name.”

It would be presumptuous of any man to think that he can arrive at spiritual truth apart from the aid of God the Father. At the same time, we would be negligent if we asked Yahweh to instruct us and then neglected to apply ourselves to the study of the word of God. We should invite our heavenly

Father to guide us in our study of His word.

How might we begin to test Isaiah 6:9 to see if our English translations that describe Christ as “Eternal Father” are correct? A good place to begin would be to see what Hebrew word lies behind the word “eternal.” We could look up the word in *Strong’s Concordance* where we would find this entry:

ad; from OT:5710; properly, a (peremptory) terminus, i.e. (by implication) duration, in the sense of advance or perpetuity...

This leads us in turn to another Hebrew word, Strong’s number 5710, from which this word is derived.

adah; a primitive root; to advance, i.e. pass on or continue; causatively, to remove; specifically, to bedeck (i.e. bring an ornament upon):

Perhaps these definitions are a bit cryptic. James Strong had a pretty good vocabulary. He used many English words that are relatively obscure today. What after all is a “peremptory terminus”? The word *peremptory* signifies that which is definite, unable to be challenged, and unchangeable. The word *terminus* refers to an end point. Together they describe something that has a definite end point, either a beginning, or an end, or both, that is fixed. This describes very well an age, or any period of a fixed length. It does NOT accord well, however, with the word “eternal.”

The Study Light Forum has an entry for this Hebrew word. On it they list a Greek equivalent word. These equivalent words are at times obtained by looking for quotations of Old Testament passages that are cited in the Greek New Testament, for these quotations are in abundance. An equivalent Greek word may also be found by looking at ancient versions of the Old Testament that exist in the Greek language. The Septuagint is an example of one such Greek translation. Although these word equivalents cannot be considered conclusive, they do show how ancient Greek speaking people understood Hebrew words. (Bear in mind that they too translated according to their understanding and were prone to err.)

The Greek word equivalent for “ad” that is listed on the Study Light Forum is “aion.” This is the same word we have looked at in a number of New Testament passages. We saw that the KJV Bible was rendering *aion* as “eternal” or “for ever” while Young’s Literal Translation was consistently interpreting it as “an age.” The definition of *aion* as “an age” accords very well with the “proper” meaning of the Hebrew word “ad” as defined by James Strong. It is a duration of time with a “peremptory terminus.” In other words, it indicates a span of time that has definite end points.

As we look at other passages where this Hebrew word is used, we find that the KJV translators ascribed to it a range of meaning. Following are a couple examples.

Job 20:4-5

Knowest thou not this of **old** (Hebrew “ad”), since man was placed upon earth, that the triumphing of the wicked is short, and the joy of the hypocrite but for a moment?

KJV

“Eternal” would not be a suitable English word to use to translate this Hebrew word in the verse above. We would not say “*Knowest thou not this of eternity...*”

Another instance of this word is in the following verse:

Psalms 104:23

Man goeth forth unto his work and to his labour **until** (Hebrew “ad”) the evening.

KJV

Keep in mind that *Strong’s Concordance* tells us that the proper meaning of this word refers to a “peremptory terminus” or a definite end. We can see then how this word was employed in the original Hebrew of this verse. Men work “until” a certain end, which in this verse is identified as “the evening.” Men do not work perpetually, or eternally.

The King James translators most often rendered this Hebrew word as “for ever.” Yet, we must question whether they have done well in doing so in all instances. Following is one example.

Numbers 24:20

And when he looked on Amalek, he took up his parable, and said, Amalek was the first of the nations; but his latter end shall be that he perish **for ever** (Hebrew “ad”).

KJV

Following is how the New KJV translates this same verse.

Numbers 24:20

Then he looked on Amalek, and he took up his oracle and said: "Amalek was first among the nations, but shall be last **until** (Hebrew “ad”) he perishes."

NKJV

Again, the word *until* carries with it an understanding of something coming to a peremptory terminus. Amalek was prophesied to exist “until he perishes” (comes to a peremptory end). It would appear that the NKJV has done a better job of expressing the proper meaning of the Hebrew word.

We have seen that there is a range of meaning that can be ascribed to this word. We have seen it properly employed to mean “old,” or “until” some indicated end. Could Isaiah 9:6 be translated differently, in a manner that accords well with the proper meaning of the Hebrew word “ad,” and at the same time find a harmony with the testimony of the rest of Scripture? It certainly can. Following is one possible translation.

Isaiah 9:6

For a child will be born to us, a son will be given to us; And the government will rest on His shoulders; And His name will be called Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God, ***Ancient Father***, Prince of Peace.

The Bible does describe the Son of God as ancient. We have already read that the Son of God existed before the heavens and earth were formed. He is described elsewhere as “ancient” of days.

Micah 5:2

But you, O Bethlehem Ephrathah, who are too little to be among the clans of Judah, from you shall come forth for me one who is to be ruler in Israel, ***whose coming forth is from of old, from ancient days.***

ESV

Brothers and sisters, I wish to assure you that I have no interest in leading you astray. I recognize that people have very strongly held beliefs about the Son of God. It is a very sensitive issue to many to be presented with thoughts about the identity of the Son of God that are contrary to what one was raised to believe. Many have been taught that Christ is no different from the Father. Some have heard it repeated ad infinitum that He is eternal. My desire is to cause you to look to the entirety of Scripture to see what is testified about the Son of God.

When you do so you will find clear statements that the Son had a beginning, and His reign will have an end. You will find that the Father is declared to be greater than the Son. These truths must be reconciled with the rest of the Scriptures. When you encounter contradictions in the Bible, as you surely will, it is requisite that you tarry until you resolve the contradiction. Exercise patience. Demonstrate that you are a skillful workman who is able to rightly divide the word of truth. Look to the Father to guide you.

If you would be established in truth, you must labor to clear away all the confusion, deception, and lies, that are characteristic of this dark and evil age in which we live. The rewards are worth the effort. Press forward brothers and sisters. The truth awaits you.

Beginnings

The Bible speaks much of the beginning of things. In understanding beginnings we are able to properly understand both the physical and spiritual world about us. If we do not properly identify beginnings our beliefs and doctrines will invariably be distorted. During the years in which I have labored as a minister to the body of Christ as a teacher I have encountered many erroneous ideas about the beginning of things. Some of the beginnings that God has given us information about so that we might be established in truth are:

The beginning of the creation of God.

Revelation 3:14

The Amen, the faithful and true Witness, the Beginning of the creation of God, says this...

The beginning of the heavens and the earth.

Genesis 1:1

In the beginning Elohim created the heavens and the earth.

The beginning of sin.

I John 3:8

The one who practices sin is of the devil; for the devil has sinned from the beginning.

The beginning of murder and lying.

John 8:44

"You are of your father the devil, and you want to do the desires of your father. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. Whenever he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own nature; for he is a liar, and the father of lies.

There are Bible teachers who are promoting errant doctrines and false understandings of these beginnings. They have fallen short of rightly dividing the word of God. I frequently have occasion to converse with members of the body of Christ whose minds have been misled by indiscriminately feeding upon that which is false. I am not seeking to cast stones at such ones.



Many people come to the Lord through the evangelistic efforts of Christians who are members of churches that have long ago fallen away from an understanding of truth. People tend to trust those who led them to the Lord. Those who are babes in Christ often lack discrimination in that which they are imbibing. They lap up whatever Biblical instruction is given to them, not suspecting that it is tainted.

Some years ago I read a tragic story of a newborn baby who died in a hospital when a nurse mistakenly grabbed a container of saline water thinking it was nursing formula. Any adult who tasted the saline water would have recognized what it was at once, and would have rejected it. The baby, however, did not have its sense of taste developed and eagerly devoured the solution. The small infant died as a result of saline poisoning, an excess of salt in the body.

What I have found to be true in my life, and that of a great many other sons and daughters of God, is that once we began to mature spiritually we started to test the things that were being fed to us by our pastor, Sunday School teacher, parents, or other individuals who acted as teachers. Having personally been brought up in church from the time I was a young child, I innocently imbibed many doctrines that I never suspected contained error. I trusted the adults in my life. I had no reason to suspect that they were teaching me things about God, the world, and Yahweh's kingdom that were not true.

Consequently, I spent many years of my later life testing what had been delivered to me in my physical youth and spiritual immaturity. I found that a great many things, including some important foundational doctrines, had been delivered to me in a highly adulterated state. As I began to be taught of God, and to apply myself to a pursuit of truth, I was at times shocked by the great disparity between what I was taught in my youth and what God was teaching me as an adult.

Many people stumble at this point. If their hunger for truth, and a desire to stand approved before God, does not exceed their regard for the people around them, the traditions that are dear to them, and the continued fellowship of men and women in the church, they will often balk when they encounter teachings that contradict what they first received. Additionally, if a person has a pride of knowledge, they will be hindered from casting off their errant beliefs. It requires humility to be corrected. The proud do not like to receive instruction, or to admit that they once held to error.

As a Bible teacher with an Internet audience, I frequently encounter people who disagree with the things I am teaching. Quite often their beliefs are traceable back to their upbringing in a particular church, or denomination. People frequently form strong emotional bonds to doctrines. They associate their beliefs with a respected minister, or beloved saint. They may remember their experiences in a particular church with much fondness. Some view it as an attack when another Christian calls into question any of the doctrines that were imparted to them.

Many times I observe people getting quite emotional when they express their disagreement with something I am teaching. One might think I had insulted their parents, a beloved pastor, or their best friend. Christians need to recognize that even the best intentioned and sincere individuals can, and often do, pass along false doctrines to others. The motive of the person teaching error need not be malicious. I suspect most do so in ignorance, and often with great fervor of conviction. It is quite

possible, however, to have zeal that is not in accordance with knowledge (Romans 10:2).

Because of people's strong emotional attachments to their beliefs, and the anger that arises in their soul when they encounter teaching that is contrary to what they have previously received, I frequently find myself urging those who write to me to exercise the fruit of the Holy Spirit, while ruling over their fleshly passions.



Galatians 5:22-24

But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, humility, self-control; against such things there is no law. Now those who belong to Christ Yahshua have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires.

It really is not possible to make progress in God's kingdom apart from exercising the fruit of the Spirit. If a Christian does not manifest the *patience* to listen intelligently to what another is saying, they cannot benefit from what is shared. If a man or woman is not *humble*, they cannot be taught. Therefore, I entreat those with disagreements to clothe themselves with the Spirit of Christ. Carnal believers who are irascible, quick to speak and slow to hear, condemn themselves to remain fixed in error.

If you find that some of the things I share in this series relating to beginnings are contrary to what you were taught by others, I exhort you to manifest the patience to intelligently consider what is shared. I entreat you to pray to the Father, asking Him to disclose to you truth and error and to lead you in the path of understanding. I fully anticipate that many, indeed most, readers have been taught something different. (I was.) It will require patience on your part to search the Scriptures, laying aside all bias. You will have to rise up in spirit and rule over any emotions that are stirred up due to a personal affinity to an individual, group, church, denomination, or to a doctrine itself. If your goal is to apprehend truth and walk in the understanding and wisdom of God, you should do well.

As important as truth is, I believe it is even more important that believers demonstrate love for one another. The apostle Paul wrote:

I Corinthians 13:1-2

If I speak with the tongues of men and of angels, but do not have love, I have become a noisy gong or a clanging cymbal. And if I have the gift of prophecy, and know all mysteries and all knowledge..., but do not have love, I am nothing.

If you or I possess truth, or an understanding of the mysteries of God, but fail to communicate with others in a spirit of love, we have become nothing more than a discordant noise in God's ears. He is not pleased when men speak truth while their attitude is devoid of love. We are commanded to "speak the truth in love."



Accurately Identifying Beginnings

Not long before Christ's crucifixion and ascension, He spoke to His disciples about His departure. He disclosed to them that He was going to send to them the Holy Spirit who would bear witness of Him. He then added:

John 15:27

You will bear witness also, because you have been with Me *from the beginning*.

What beginning did Christ refer to in this statement? Those familiar with the Gospel accounts will rightly infer that Yahshua was speaking of the beginning of His earthly ministry when He called forth twelve men to walk with Him. Would we not err greatly if we concluded that Christ was speaking of *His* beginning, the beginning *of the creation*, or the beginning *of the world*? This may seem a simple question. I have chosen this particular verse because I do not believe there will be too much controversy from readers as to its meaning.

If you are like me, and have concluded that Christ is in fact speaking of the beginning of His earthly ministry when He called forth twelve disciples to walk with Him, I would ask you how you can be sure of this? What if someone challenged you on this point? How would you demonstrate that your understanding is the right one?

I would suggest that there are a number of ways to do so. A good place to begin would be looking at the statement itself to see if it lends itself to other interpretations. In this instance I would allow that it does indeed do so. The wording of the sentence itself does not clearly identify the specific beginning of which Yahshua was speaking. Just by the phrasing itself we could not rule out the possibility that Yahshua was speaking of any number of possible beginnings. Following are some variant meanings.

You will bear witness also, because you have been with Me from the beginning (*of my earthly ministry*).

You will bear witness also, because you have been with Me from the beginning (*of My existence in*

heaven).

You will bear witness also, because you have been with Me from the beginning (*of the creation*).

You will bear witness also, because you have been with Me from the beginning (*of the world*).

Seeing that the sentence itself does not clearly identify the beginning Christ had in mind, a next step would be to look at the word translated as “beginning.” We could see if it is only rightly used in a particular way. Having looked up the word we would have to conclude that it does not help us to resolve this matter.

A next step might be to check the context of the passage in which these words of Christ were spoken. If we see evidence that He was speaking about the beginning of His time with the disciples on earth in this passage, or we find other evidence that would point to the beginning to which He was referring, the matter might be easily settled. Following this course, we actually find some help. Here is the passage with a little more context.

John 15:26-16:5

“When the Helper comes, whom I will send to you from the Father, that is the Spirit of truth, who proceeds from the Father, He will bear witness of Me, and you will bear witness also, because you have been with Me from the beginning. These things I have spoken to you, that you may be kept from stumbling. They will make you outcasts from the synagogue, but an hour is coming for everyone who kills you to think that he is offering service to God. And these things they will do, because they have not known the Father, or Me. But these things I have spoken to you, that when their hour comes, you may remember that I told you of them. And these things I did not say to you at the beginning, because I was with you.”

We see in this larger portion of Scripture that Yahshua is speaking of the Holy Spirit and of His disciples bearing witness of Him to mankind. What they are bearing witness of is His identity as the Hebrew Messiah, the ministry He conducted, the life that He lived, and the words that He spoke. We can deduce this from the gospels, for this is indeed what they focus upon. Additionally, in the book of Acts we find Christ’s disciples bearing witness of what they had seen and heard while walking with Christ. There are also some very clear statements in other books such as the following.

I John 1:1-3

What was from the beginning, what we have heard, what we have seen with our eyes, what we beheld and our hands handled, concerning the Word of Life... what we have seen and heard we proclaim to you also, that you also may have fellowship with us...

John clearly states here that he is testifying of that which he has heard, seen with his eyes, and touched with his hands regarding the Son of God. John is identifying experiences in this mortal life. With these words of John we are able to confidently assert that the beginning that Yahshua was referring to in John 15:27 was the beginning of His ministry when He called twelve disciples to walk with Him, that they might experience daily life and ministry with the Son of God.

One other thing we could do is to look for similar statements, or parallel passages, that might shed light on this matter. For example, we could look to Luke's opening statement from the Gospel account he penned.

Luke 1:1-4

Inasmuch as many have undertaken to compile an account of the things accomplished among us, just as *those who from the beginning were eyewitnesses and servants of the Word* have handed them down to us, it seemed fitting for me as well, having investigated everything carefully from the beginning, to write it out for you in consecutive order, most excellent Theophilus; so that you might know the exact truth about the things you have been taught.

Note that Luke tells us that he is writing an account "of the things accomplished among us." He is not writing of things that occurred before the creation of the world. Luke's account is a terrestrial one. It is focused on the life and ministry of the Son of God on the earth as He dwelt among mankind. There are other Bible passages that affirm this same truth that the disciples of Christ were called to bear witness to what they beheld during their earthly sojourning with the Son of God.

I John 4:14

And we have *beheld* and *bear witness* that the Father has sent the Son to be the Savior of the world.

John echoes the words of Christ in the gospel that he penned. He states that the disciples "bear witness" to Yahshua. He specifically says the witness is of that which they "beheld." John does NOT say that the disciples beheld Christ in ages prior to His coming to earth, or that they walked with Him in realms that are celestial before this present age. The disciples of Christ bore witness to what they beheld when the Son of God walked among them.



Yahshua Calling His Disciples

I want to point out that it was necessary to look beyond the immediate context of John 15:27 to properly resolve this question of what beginning Christ was referring to. If we had looked too narrowly at this passage, we might have come up with some very strange interpretations. Someone might have used this verse as a proof text to declare that the disciples existed with Christ in heaven before His earthly ministry. Some might use it as evidence to suggest that the Bible teaches

reincarnation, or the pre-existence of the soul. If they look at no other Scriptures they could very well build a case to suggest that this was in fact what Christ meant when He said His disciples had been with Him “from the beginning.”

You may say, “Joseph, isn’t it obvious that Christ was speaking of His disciples being with Him from the beginning of His earthly ministry? Surely no reasonable person would suggest otherwise.” A search of the Internet reveals that some are misconstruing Christ’s words here, using them to build a case for the pre-existence of the soul. Having failed to properly identify the “beginning” to which the Son of God was referring, they are falling away into error.

My purpose in sharing these things is to demonstrate that there is a danger of misinterpreting the meaning of the Scriptures if we fail to consider the entire counsel of the Bible. It requires patience, an intimate acquaintance with the Bible, and a heart that yearns after truth, to rightly divide the word of God. Any Scripture, or portion of it, can be wrested out of its context and used to assert a false understanding. These wrong understandings in turn serve as the foundation for false doctrines.

In the ensuing chapters I am going to address some of the beginnings spoken of in the Bible. I will seek to lay a solid foundation for accurately understanding the truths of God’s kingdom.

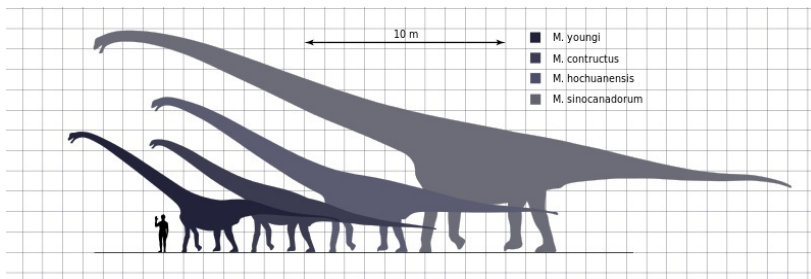
The Genesis Gap



Tokyo Dinosaur Museum

(Click on any image to view larger)

The dinosaur skeleton in the foreground of the picture above is a Mamenchisaurus. There have been a number of skeletal remains of this dinosaur species found throughout China, the earliest being discovered in Sichuan Province in 1952 during construction of a highway. This massive earth roaming creature in its adulthood reached an astonishing 115 feet in length. The graphic below compares the various fossil remains of a number of different age Mamenchisaurus specimens that have been discovered, providing a comparison to the size of man.



Mamenchisaurus

Following is another image from within the Tokyo museum that demonstrates the scale of this massive creature.



From America to Australia, from the Himalayan Mountains to the deserts of Arabia, even in the frozen wasteland of Antarctica, fossils of extinct species of animals have been found that dwarf any animals that exist today. The giraffe and elephant are tiny in comparison. An African Bush Elephant averages 4.9 tons in weight, with the maximum weight being 10 tons. The giraffe may reach a weight of 2 tons. The size and mass of the elephant and giraffe is impressive when compared to man, but they seem relatively puny when compared to many of the larger dinosaurs. The fossil remains of the Argentinosaurus have led to an estimate of the creature's weight at 73 tons, more than seven times the mass of the largest elephant.



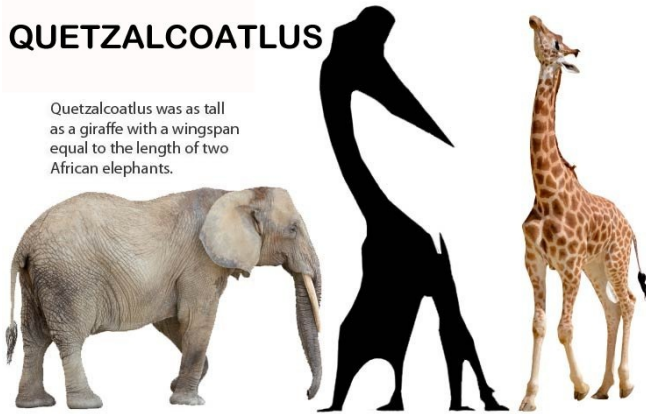
Reconstructed Argentinosaurus

The Pterosaurs, or flying lizards, also were of remarkable size. Hatzegopteryx is estimated to have had a wingspan as long as 39 feet. The similarly sized Quetzalcoatlus is estimated to have had wings

approaching 36 feet in length. That is the equivalent of six 6' tall men lined up end to end. It is also more than three times the length of the largest wingspan of any bird alive today. The Wandering Albatross is the current record holder and can have wings as long as 11 feet 6 inches.

QUETZALCOATLUS

Quetzalcoatlus was as tall as a giraffe with a wingspan equal to the length of two African elephants.



Quetzalcoatlus Size Comparison

Fossil records from all across the world indicate that there existed a tremendous variety of great creatures in large numbers. New species are being discovered all the time, and the vast majority of fossils likely reside in places that man cannot readily access, such as buried beneath the sea floor.

Back in the 1990s I was teaching a Sunday School class of youth. I brought with me a variety of small plastic models of dinosaurs and set them on display in front of the students. I asked them where in Bible history they would place the dinosaurs. Other than speculation that the behemoth and leviathan that God described in the book of Job were some form of dinosaur, there is no Biblical mention of any such creatures existing on this present earth. If such animals had existed concurrently with mankind, they would have posed a very great threat. Yet there is no Scriptural account of man having to contend with these great creatures. The Old Testament describes David slaying a lion and a bear. The lion is frequently mentioned as among the fiercest and most deadly adversaries of man. There is no mention of mankind having to contend with creatures as great as Pterodactyls, Tyrannosaurs, Triceratops, and the various massive Sauropods.

An additional issue that I raised with the students in my class was that both creation scientists and evolutionary scientists agree that there is strong evidence that the earth was once largely covered in ice. It is estimated that much of the earth's surface was covered in ice a mile thick. Huge glaciers moved across the earth's surface, scouring out valleys, moving huge stones hundreds of miles, and leaving deep deposits of fertile soil in places like America's Northern Midwestern states.

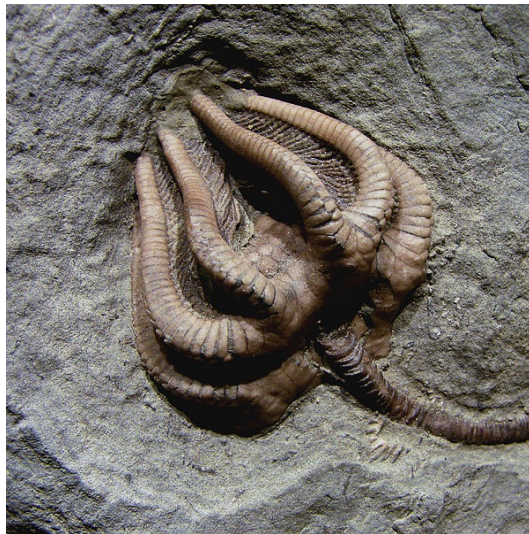
A few years ago I had the opportunity to visit Yosemite National Park in California. While there I saw evidence of the massive glaciers that carved out Yosemite Valley from solid rock. I took the following photograph as I stood atop "Glacier Point." The name of this location points to the evidence one can see below. Across the valley wall, one can observe the telltale signs of huge glaciers that scarred the rock face as they moved through the valley. You can see where the glaciers gouged the rock face in the photograph I took below.



Yosemite Valley from Glacier Point

I posed the question to the students in my Sunday School class, “Where in the history recorded for us in the Bible can we place the ice age(s) that this world has experienced?”

Another geologic oddity is observed in the discovery of ocean fossils in mountainous regions of the earth. How did the fossils of ocean dwelling creatures end up embedded in rock in mountains that are thousands of feet above, or thousands of miles removed, from the nearest ocean?



Crinoid Fossil (a marine animal) Discovered in Indiana in the Heart of America

The Bible provides a continuous history of this planet from the creation of the first man. The Bible also provides us with a very accurate understanding of how long it has been since Adam was created. Numerous genealogies are listed, many of them giving the ages of individuals when sons were born to them, that allow for a precise calculation of the length of time mankind has resided upon this planet. From the creation of Adam to Christ a period of approximately 4,000 years elapsed. From Christ to the present day, mankind has experienced another 2,000 years of history. It can be

reasonably established from Biblical evidence that man has been present on this globe for the past 6,000 years.

What the Bible does not record are any ice ages that occurred simultaneously with the existence of mankind. Neither does the Bible provide any evidence that dinosaurs roamed the earth since the time of Adam's creation. Some in attempting to find some explanation for the presence of dinosaurs on an earth that they have been taught is no more than 6,000 years old have looked for some extinction event that could explain why dinosaurs are absent from the historical account of the Bible. The only Biblical extinction event that presents itself to the minds of most readers is the flood of Noah. Consequently, some have theorized that the dinosaurs were not taken aboard the ark, but perished in the great flood that inundated the world at that time.

This explanation does not stand up to scrutiny. The Biblical account of Noah's flood declares that Noah took some of EVERY kind of animal upon the earth with him on the ark. The only distinction that Yahweh made between animals at the time was that the clean animals were taken aboard in groups of seven, while the unclean animals went onboard in twos.

Genesis 7:2-3, 8-9

You shall take with you of every clean animal by sevens, a male and his female; and of the animals that are not clean two, a male and his female; also of the birds of the sky, by sevens, male and female, to keep offspring alive on the face of all the earth... Of clean animals and animals that are not clean and birds and everything that creeps on the ground, there went into the ark to Noah by twos, male and female, as God had commanded Noah.

If dinosaurs existed at the time of the flood of Noah, and Yahweh had intended to wipe them out, He would certainly have stated something about the matter. Yet, the Bible speaks nothing of any animals in existence at the time being singled out for judgment. When God formed the present creation in six days He declared all of it to be good. If the dinosaurs were part of the six days of creation, we are left without explanation as to why God changed His mind about them.

It was a blessing that the Father led me to an explanation of these difficulties when I was still in my youth. In the late 1970s and early 1980s I was introduced to the writings of Watchman Nee, a Chinese minister who was very active in teaching in the 1930s to 1950s. He was subsequently arrested by the Communists and sent away to prison where he eventually died. This Chinese martyr had a very keen mind that sought out understanding of the things of God. I found his teachings to be of great help to me in my early Christian experience. Watchman Nee's teachings disclosed to me a number of doctrines that I had never encountered in the Baptist churches of my childhood. In one little book titled [*The Mystery of Creation*](#), I was introduced to what is commonly known today as "the gap theory." Following is an excerpt from that writing.

The general concept among Christians regarding the first chapter of Genesis is that the very first verse is a kind of general introduction or premise, and that the works which are done in the six days to follow explain it. In other words, they take the words "In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth" as the subject of Chapter 1. The writer of Genesis, so they speculate, outlines what he intends to say in the first sentence and then proceeds to explain it in detail. Having mentioned

when God created the heavens and the earth, he then continues by telling what condition the earth is in and how God day after day creates light, air, earth, plants, animals, and so forth. Such is the popular view as to how Genesis 1 narrates the creation story and how the universe was created out of waste and void. Yet those who study carefully the first chapter of sacred Scripture deem this interpretation to be erroneous...

In the original Hebrew, this initial verse of the first chapter of Genesis contains seven words which carry within themselves a sense of independence. These divinely revealed words do not say that in the beginning God “formed” or “made” the world out of certain raw materials. No, the heavens and the earth were **created**. This word “created” is “bara” in the original. So that in the beginning **God bara** the heavens and the earth. This word “bara” is used three more times in Genesis 1 and 2: (1st) “And God created [bara] the great sea-monsters, and every living creature that moveth, wherewith the waters swarmed, after their kind, and every winged bird after its kind” (1.21); (2nd) “And God created [bara] man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them” (1.27); and (3rd) “And God blessed the seventh day, and hallowed it; because that in it he rested from all his work which God had created [bara] and made” (2.3). To “create” is to “call the things that are not, as though they were” (Rom. 4.17). These sea-monsters and living things not only had physical bodies but also had an animated life within them. They therefore required a direct creative act of God. Thus it is only reasonable that the Scriptures should use the word “created” rather than the word “made” in these passages. In similar manner, though man’s body was formed out of the dust of the ground, his soul and spirit could not be made out of any physical material, and hence the Bible declared that “God **created** man in his own image.”

In the first two chapters of Genesis three different words are used for the act of creation: (1) “bara” - calling into being without the aid of pre-existing material. This we have already touched upon; (2) “asah” - which is quite different from “bara,” since the latter denotes the idea of creating without any material whereas “asah” signifies the making, fashioning, or preparing out of existing material. For instance, a carpenter can **make** a chair, but he cannot **create** one. The works of the Six Days in Genesis are mainly of the order of “asah”; (3) “yatsar” - which means to shape or mold as a potter does with clay. This word is used in Genesis 2.7 as follows: “And Jehovah God formed man of the dust of the ground.” Interestingly, Isaiah 43.7 illustrates the meaning and connection of all three of these words: “every one that is called by my name, and whom I have **created** for my glory, whom I have **formed**, yea, whom I have **made**.” “Created” signifies a calling into being out of nothing; “formed” denotes a fashioning into appointed form; and “made” means a preparing out of pre-existing material.

The words “In the beginning” reinforce the thought of God creating the heavens and the earth out of nothing. There is really no need to theorize; since God has so spoken, let men simply believe. How absurd for finite minds to search out the works of God which He performed at the beginning! “By faith we **understand** that the worlds have been framed by the word of God” (Heb. 11.3). Who can answer God’s challenge to Job concerning creation (see Job 38)?...

To understand the first chapter of Genesis, it is of utmost importance that we distinguish the “earth” mentioned in verse 1 from the “earth” spoken of in verse 2. For the condition of the earth referred to in verse 2 is not what God had created originally. Now we know that “God is not a God of

confusion” (1 Cor. 14.33). And hence when it states that in the beginning God created the earth, what He created was therefore perfect. So that the waste and void of the earth spoken of in verse 2 was not the original condition of the earth as God first created it. Would God ever create an earth whose primeval condition would be waste and void? A true understanding of this verse will solve the apparent problem.

“Thus saith Jehovah that created the heavens, the God that formed the earth and made it, that established it and created it not a waste, that formed it to be inhabited: I am Jehovah; and there is none else” (Is. 45.18). How clear God’s word is. The word “waste” here is “tohu” in Hebrew, which signifies “desolation” or “that which is desolate.” It says here that the earth which God created was not a waste. Why then does Genesis 1.2 state that “the earth was waste”? This may be easily resolved. In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth (Gen. 1.1). At that time, the earth which God had created was **not** a waste; but **later** on, in passing through a great catastrophe, the earth **did** become waste and void. So that all which is mentioned from verse 3 onward does not refer to the original creation but to **the restoration of the earth**. God created the heavens and the earth in the beginning; but He subsequently used the Six Days to remake the earth habitable. Genesis 1.1 was the original world; Genesis 1.3 onward is our present world; while Genesis 1.2 describes the desolate condition which was the earth’s during the transitional period following its original creation and before our present world.

Such an interpretation cannot only be arrived at on the basis of Isaiah 45.18, it can also be supported on the basis of other evidences. The conjunctive word “and” in verse 2 can also be translated as “but”: “In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth, **but** the earth was waste and void.” G. H. Pember, in his book “Earth’s Earliest Ages,” wrote that

the “and” according to Hebrew usage—as well as that of most other languages—proves that the first verse is not a compendium of what follows, but a statement of the first event in the record. For if it were a mere summary, the second verse would be the actual commencement of the history, and certainly would not begin with a copulative. A good illustration of this may be found in the fifth chapter of Genesis (Gen. 5.1). There the opening words, “This is the book of the generations of Adam,” are a compendium of the chapter, and, consequently, the next sentence begins without a copulative. We have, therefore, in the second verse of Genesis no first detail of a general statement in the preceding sentence, but the record of an altogether distinct and subsequent event, which did not affect the sidereal [starry] heaven, but only the earth and its immediate surroundings. And what that event was we must now endeavour to discover.

Over a hundred years ago, Dr. Chalmers pointed out that the words “the earth **was** waste” might equally be translated “the earth **became** waste.” Dr. I. M. Haldeman, G. H. Pember, and others showed that the Hebrew word for “was” here has been translated “became” in Genesis 19.26: “His wife looked back from behind him, and she **became** a pillar of salt.” If this same Hebrew word can be translated in 19.26 as “became,” why can it not be translated as “became” in 1.2? Furthermore, the word “became” in 2.7 (“and man became a living soul”) is the same word as is found in Genesis 1.2. So that it is not at all arbitrary for anyone to translate “was” as “became” here: “In the

*beginning God created the heavens and the earth, [but] the earth **became** waste and void.” The earth which God created originally was not waste, it only later became waste...*

*We do not know when God created the heavens and the earth, nor do we know how long was the period after the original creation that the desolation described in verse 2 occurred. But we do believe that the original, perfect creation must have passed through many many years before it became waste and void. Such a long period would be enough to cover the so-called pre-historic age. All the years which geology demands and all the so-called geologic periods which it distributes among those years can fall into this time frame. We do not know how long the earth underwent change nor how many changes there were before it became waste and void because the Scriptures do not tell us these things. Yet we **can** affirm that the Bible never states that **the age of the earth** is but six thousand years in length. It merely shows that the history of man is approximately six thousand years old. By understanding the first two verses of Scripture, we can recognize that there is no contradiction between the Bible and geology. The attack of geologists against the Bible is merely beating the air. How marvelous is the word of God.*

[Source: Watchman Nee; [The Mystery of Creation](#)]

This doctrine presented by Watchman Nee was greatly divergent from what I had been taught in the Baptist church. Yet, even at that young age I had developed habits of testing new teachings carefully. I got out my *Strong's Concordance* and checked the definitions of the words in dispute. I verified for myself whether the conjunction “and” that ties verses 1 and 2 of Genesis together could be translated as “but.” I also checked to see if the Hebrew word rendered as “was” in verse 2 had been translated as “became” in other verses. I found that every statement made, every argument set forth, in the words above by Watchman Nee were in fact true. The most common teaching of the Genesis account of creation follows the pattern set forth by the King James Bible.

Genesis 1:1-2

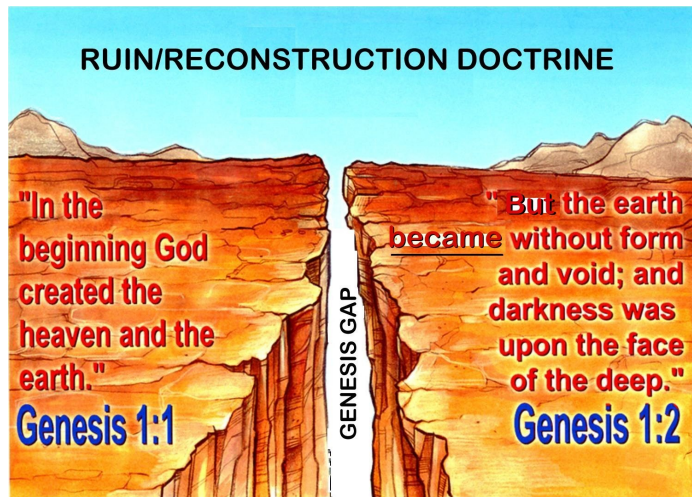
In the beginning God created the Heaven and the earth. And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.

KJV

The phrasing here leads the reader to conclude that God originally created the Heaven and the earth formless and void and covered in darkness. Beginning in verse three we then read of God forming the earth and all it contains into a habitable planet. Yet, those who translate the book of Genesis from Hebrew to English could have just as readily set forth the words in the following manner.

Genesis 1:1-2

In the beginning God created the Heaven and the earth. **But** the earth **became** formless, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.



I checked every Bible verse that Watchman Nee cited, following the pattern of the faithful Bereans who looked to the Scriptures to see if what they were being told was true. I looked at the second chapter of Genesis to see if in fact the KJV translators had rendered the Hebrew word *hayah* as “became.” I found that they had done so.

Genesis 2:7

And the Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man **became** [*hayah*] a living soul.

KJV

I also looked up this Hebrew word’s definition in *Strong’s Concordance*.

hayah (haw-yaw); a primitive root; to exist, i.e. be or become, come to pass (always emphatic, and not a mere copula or auxiliary):

Why did the KJV translators render this word as “was” in Genesis 1:2 when they knew it could bear the meaning of “become,” or “come to pass”? That is not a difficult question to answer. I explored the subject of translation inconsistencies in depth in the writing titled *Yahweh’s Book*. Men translate according to their understanding. If they believe the earth was originally created by God in a formless and void state, then their belief will influence their translation decisions. The KJV translators, however, had an even greater obstacle with which to contend. King James had given them a list of fifteen rules to follow in producing their Bible translation. One of the rules stated that they could not render any words into English in a way that would contradict the orthodox teaching of the Church of England. They were therefore constrained by the doctrine of the church, whether that doctrine was true or false.

Doctrinal beliefs within the church tend to ebb and flow. What is considered orthodox to one generation is often abandoned by the next. Most present day Christians are unfamiliar with the ruin/reconstruction doctrine, having never been taught that there is a gap of indeterminate length indicated between the first two verses of Genesis. Upon hearing it, many view the doctrine with suspicion. They assume that this must be some new and heretical doctrine.

There is a division between Biblical creationists today. Some are young earth creationists. They believe that the entire creation is only 6,000 to 10,000 years old. They hold to the present majority view of Genesis verses 1:1-2. They allow for no gap to exist. They refuse to entertain any notion that the earth as we presently know it may have been judged and destroyed in an age before Adam, and that it could be much older than 6,000 years.

There is another group who are at present in the minority who perceive a gap between the earth's first creation, and its re-creation whose account begins in the 3rd verse of Genesis. Both hold to a literal six day account of the creation, but differ on other matters. Those who hold to the ruin/reconstruction doctrine of the creation are able to allow for the existence of dinosaurs on that more ancient, original earth. When it was judged and destroyed, so too was all life on the planet. They also are able to account for past ice ages, for when God judged the earth and sealed it up in darkness, blocking the light and warmth of the Sun, this could very well be what precipitated a global ice age.

Since the Bible does not tell us how long the original earth existed before it was destroyed, and it does not tell us how long it lay in a state of being formless, void, and covered in darkness, those who hold to the ruin/reconstruction doctrine find no difficulty in allowing for various geological ages to have passed.

If there were no more to the matter than it being possible to translate "and" as "but," and "was" as "became," we might all just stop now and take a vote as to which rendering we think is the more plausible. This would be a very poor way to establish truth, and it would likely devolve into a matter of personal opinion, a mere popularity contest. Yahweh, however, has not left us without further evidence to test this matter. Before I present that evidence I want to address some of the criticism of the ruin/reconstruction doctrine.

Young earth creationists frequently refer to the ruin/reconstruction doctrine as "the gap theory." The employment of the word "theory" instead of the word "doctrine" reveals their bias in the matter. There is a tendency for men to seek to control the language in which ideas are discussed in order to favor their view of a matter. We see this in the struggle over abortion. Those who are defenders of life in the womb prefer to call themselves "pro-life," but their opponents have labeled them as "anti-abortion." The prefix "anti" carries a negative stigma. It paints the person as someone who is seeking to restrict another person's freedom. This is blatant hypocrisy, for there can be no greater curtailment of a person's freedom than to murder them while they are still in the womb. It is similarly disingenuous for young earth creationists to speak of their "doctrines" while labeling opposing views as "theories." They are all doctrines.

One of the false charges made by young earth creationists against the ruin/reconstruction doctrine is that it is of fairly recent origin and is merely an attempt to reconcile evolutionary theory with the Bible. I have read the oft repeated charge that Thomas Chalmers's *Bridgewater Treatise* that popularized this doctrine in the mid 1800s was the starting point of this doctrine. The claim continues by asserting that the ruin/reconstruction doctrine was devised as a way to find some agreement with geologists who were beginning to present evidence for a much older earth.

These charges by opponents of “the gap theory” are false on multiple levels. Those who teach a Genesis gap are no more likely to be evolutionists than those who do not. I personally believe in a literal six days of creation. Nor do those who perceive a gap to be indicated believe that the geologists are correct in their varied claims of the earth being hundreds of millions, or billions of years old. They simply allow that a gap of unspecified length exists in the Biblical account. Most Bible teachers who are advocates of the ruin/reconstruction doctrine do not pretend to know how long a gap is indicated, and they do not look to science to provide the answer.



Additionally, the ruin/reconstruction doctrine did not begin with Thomas Chalmers in the 1800s, nor did it arise as a response to scientific claims of a much older earth. It is an ancient doctrine. One of the most scholarly and well documented treatises in defense of the ruin/reconstruction doctrine was authored by Arthur C. Custance. His book is titled *Without Form and Void* and can be read in its entirety free of charge online. The evidence he presents makes it inexcusable for young earth creationists to parrot the charge that “the gap theory” is a relatively new doctrine. Arthur Custance demonstrates the great antiquity of the doctrine among both Jews and Christians. Arthur Custance did prodigious research into this subject, and is very rational in his presentation.

To me, this issue is important, and after studying the problem for some thirty years and after reading everything I could lay my hands on pro and con and after accumulating in my own library some 300 commentaries on Genesis, the earliest being dated 1670, I am persuaded that there is, on the basis of the evidence, far more reason to translate Gen. 1.2 as "But the earth had become a ruin and a desolation, etc." than there is for any of the conventional translations in our modern versions.

[Source: *Without Form and Void*, Arthur Custance]

I won't repeat the extensive Hebrew grammatical evidence that Custance presents on this subject. Those who are interested can view his book online.

<http://www.custance.org/Library/WFANDV/>

Custance reveals that the ruin/reconstruction doctrine was held among the Jews as far back as the time of the apostles. He also cites references from among the early church fathers who taught this view.

Origen, for example, who lived from 186 to about 254 A.D., and to whom the original languages of the Bible were very familiar, has this to say in his great work, De Principiis, at Gen. 1.1: "It is certain that the present firmament is not spoken of in this verse, nor the present dry land, but rather that heaven and earth from which this present heaven and earth that we now see afterwards borrowed their names." And that he saw verse 2 as a description of a "casting down" of the original is borne out quite clearly by his subsequent observation that the condition resulted from a "disruption" which is best described, he suggests, by the Latin verb dejicere, 'to throw down.'
[Source: Ibid]

This doctrine has waxed and waned within the church. Few Christians today realize that as recently as the 1950s the ruin/reconstruction doctrine found wide support in American and European churches. One online encyclopedia provides the following statement.

"In fact, with one prominent exception, virtually all of the leading creationists of the 1920s endorsed either the Day-Age or Gap Interpretation of Genesis. The exception was Seventh-Day Adventist teacher and amateur geologist, George McCready Price, who followed Adventist Prophet, Ellen G. White, in limiting the history of life on earth to about 6,000 years. Price attributed most fossil-bearing rock formations to the geological disruptions of the Biblical flood."
[Source: Microsoft Encarta Encyclopedia]

Arthur Custance expresses a similar view to that which has led me to write this present book. He makes mention of the importance of a Christian having a correct understanding of foundational teachings.

The importance of establishing its intended meaning does not stem from the fact that if it is interpreted in one particular way it can then be used to resolve certain apparent conflicts between the Mosaic cosmogony and modern geological theory. Its importance stems from the fact that it is a foundation statement; and the foundation statements of any belief system are the more critical as they lie nearer the base of its structure. An error at the end of a long line of reasoning may be very undesirable but it is much less dangerous than an error at the beginning. And in the first three chapters of Genesis we have the basic facts upon which are erected the whole theological superstructure of the Christian faith. Uncertainty here, or misinterpretation, is likely to have repercussions throughout the whole of the rest of the system of belief.
[Source: Without Form and Void, Arthur Custance]

With this in mind, I entreat the reader to patiently consider the Biblical evidence for a much older earth that was at some distant point destroyed until the God began the work of reconstruction that is described from Genesis 1:3 and forward. The first argument I would present is taken from a citation from a book published by J. Harris in 1847 titled *The Pre-Adamite Earth*.

"Now, that the originating act, described in the first verse, was not meant to be included in the account of the six Adamic days, is evident from the following considerations: first, the creation of the second, third, fourth, fifth and sixth days begins with the formula 'And God said'. It is only natural, therefore, to conclude that the creation of the first day begins with the third verse where the said formula first occurs, 'And God said, Let there be light'. But if so, it follows that the act

described in the first verse, and the state of the earth spoken of in the second verse, must both have belonged to a period anterior to the first day..."



If this explanation is a little unclear to you, I will attempt to clarify the author's point. Each of the six days of creation has a specific work attached to it. For example, of the second through sixth days we read:

Day Two

Genesis 1:6

Then God said, "Let there be an expanse in the midst of the waters, and let it separate the waters from the waters."

Day Three

Genesis 1:9

Then God said, "Let the waters below the heavens be gathered into one place, and let the dry land appear."

Day Four

Genesis 1:14-15

Then God said, "Let there be lights in the expanse of the heavens to separate the day from the night, and let them be for signs, and for seasons, and for days and years; and let them be for lights in the expanse of the heavens to give light on the earth."

Day Five

Genesis 1:20

Then God said, "Let the waters teem with swarms of living creatures, and let birds fly above the earth in the open expanse of the heavens."

Day Six

Genesis 1:24

Then God said, "Let the earth bring forth living creatures after their kind: cattle and creeping things and beasts of the earth after their kind"

Seeing that the description of each day has a specific work attached to it, and that each day's work begins with the words "Then God said," it is textually consistent to expect that the work of day one also begins with this same expression.

Day One

Genesis 1:3

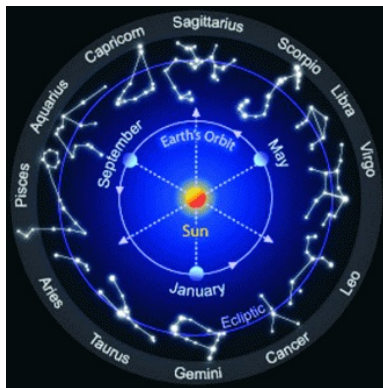
Then God said, "Let there be light"; and there was light.

This fact reasonably leads to the conclusion that the first two verses of Genesis are speaking of events that preceded the six days of creation. At some time prior to day one of creation, Yahweh had created the heavens and the earth, and they had subsequently become formless and void and covered in darkness.

This leads into a second point in favor of the ruin/reconstruction doctrine. We are told that God did not establish the lights in the heavens until day four. The Bible does not say God created (bara) the heavenly bodies on day four, but the sense is more of God arranging them to “separate the day from the night, and let them be for signs, and for seasons, and for days and years.” Those familiar with Biblical astronomy and the testimony of the constellations and stars in the heaven, will understand how they proclaim the story of man’s fall and redemption. The Bible tells us that the stars are given for this purpose.

Psalms 19:1-4

The heavens are telling of the glory of God; And their expanse is declaring the work of His hands. Day to day pours forth speech, and night to night reveals knowledge. There is no speech, nor are there words; Their voice is not heard. Their utterance has gone out through all the earth, and their words to the end of the world.



That the ancients recognized the constellations, and perceived messages from God in them was observed long before the magi read the heavenly declaration that the King of the Jews had been born in the time of Christ. The book of Job is among the oldest books of the Bible, and it speaks of a number of constellations. It also speaks of the ancients having a knowledge that God had once sealed the earth in darkness, commanding the sun and stars to no longer give light to the planet.

Job 9:5-9

It is God who removes the mountains, they know not how, when He overturns them in His anger; Who shakes the earth out of its place, and its pillars tremble; ***Who commands the sun not to shine, and sets a seal upon the stars***; Who alone stretches out the heavens, and tramples down the waves of the sea; Who makes the Bear, Orion, and the Pleiades, and the chambers of the south...

This Scripture describes perfectly the doctrine of the ruin and reconstruction of the earth. The mountains were removed in God's anger. The earth was overthrown and the sun and stars commanded not to shine. When did this occur, since Job is one of the most ancient books of the Bible? There is no account of such an event from the time of Adam's creation. It must have occurred before Adam. The sun and stars were still in the heavens, but God placed a seal upon them that they might not give forth light.

Is it not puzzling that God would say "Let there be light" on Day One if the sun and stars did not exist until Day Four? This is a problem for those who deny that the heavens and earth already existed, having suffered the effects of a divine judgment. The natural act of God on the first day of the reconstruction of the heavens and earth is to remove the curse of darkness. He therefore removes the seal that He has placed upon the sun and stars as He declares "Let there be light!"

Since God is beginning a new work, and it involves new creatures, and a divine plan for their perfecting as sons of God, it is fitting that on Day Four He should rearrange the heavenly bodies to perfectly declare the glorious plan and the work He will accomplish. His arrangement was so perfectly ordered that thousands of years later, at the right moment, heavenly signs would be observed to mark key events in His work among the new creation. The star declaring the Savior's birth appeared at the precise time for the wise men of the East to perceive its message. Some thirty years later the sky was darkened at the very hour that the Son of God was offering up His life on the cross. Christ also prophesied that the heavens would announce His return at the end of the age.

Luke 21:25, 27

"And there will be signs in sun and moon and stars... And then they will see the Son of Man coming in a cloud with power and great glory."

Even as God had to reorder an earth that had been made waste and void and covered by water, He had to reorder the heavens that they might serve as signs, and for seasons, and to give light upon the earth at the proper time. This ordering of the heavens was on Day Four, but its initial work had to begin with God removing the seal He had placed upon the heavens that they might once more give forth their light upon the earth. This was accomplished on Day One.

One of the most profound Biblical evidences of the ruin of the initial earth is observed in the description that is given to the earth in verse two of Genesis.

Genesis 1:2

But the earth became *formless* and *void*, and *darkness was over the surface of the deep...*

We have three descriptors here of the earth's condition. It was formless (tohu). It was void, or empty (bohu). It was sealed in darkness. If we could find these same three descriptors in another passage of Scripture, and this passage spoke of Yahweh judging and destroying the earth, then we could reasonably conclude that these words are also used in Genesis chapter 1 to describe an earth that had been judged. Does such a passage exist? Yes, it does.

Jeremiah 4:22-28

“For My people are foolish, they have not known Me. They are silly children, and they have no understanding. They are wise to do evil, but to do good they have no knowledge.” I beheld the earth, and indeed it was *without form* (tohu), and *void* (bohu); *And the heavens, they had no light*. I beheld the mountains, and indeed they trembled, and all the hills moved back and forth. I beheld, and indeed there was no man, and all the birds of the heavens had fled. I beheld, and indeed the fruitful land was a wilderness, and all its cities were broken down at the presence of Yahweh, by His fierce anger. For thus says Yahweh: “The whole land shall be desolate; Yet I will not make a full end. For this shall the earth mourn, *and the heavens above be black*, because I have spoken. I have purposed and will not relent, nor will I turn back from it.”

In this passage the prophet Jeremiah is pronouncing Yahweh’s judgment upon Judah and Jerusalem. Because of the wickedness of the people, He has determined to make the land a desolation. The very same descriptors found in Genesis 1:2 are found in this passage speaking of the ruin God will bring upon the land of His people. Can there be any clearer evidence that the earth described in Genesis 1:2 has suffered the judgment of Yahweh? Not just one, or two, but all three of these signs of judgment are found in both passages of Scripture.

What could account for the destruction of the first earth? What was the transgression that caused Yahweh to turn a habitable planet into a wasteland and to seal it up in darkness? That topic will be explored in the next chapter.

The Host of Heaven and the Rulers of This Age



There are some things that Yahweh in His providence has chosen to reveal to His people in mere glimpses. There are some matters that are too great for us to bear at this time. The apostle Paul was given visions of heavenly matters that are beyond the ken of mortal man. He was at one time caught up into the third heaven where he “heard inexpressible words, which a man is not permitted to speak” (II Corinthians 12:4).

There is some knowledge that Yahweh has chosen to hide from mortal men. God is very judicious in choosing how much revelation, knowledge, and understanding to parcel out to the descendants of Adam. The apostle John spoke of experiences Yahweh has destined for mankind that are at present unknowable.

I John 3:2

Beloved, now we are children of God, and *it has not appeared as yet what we shall be*. We know that, when He appears, we shall be like Him, because we shall see Him just as He is.

In these mortal tents in which we now dwell we “see as through a glass darkly.” Not only are there future things that Yahweh has hidden from mankind, but there are past and present things that have not been fully disclosed to us. The subject I would write about now is of such a hidden nature that I do not believe any man can be acclaimed to be an “expert” in the field. Even if one were to know everything that has been disclosed to humanity about angels and the hosts of heaven, his knowledge must be regarded as elementary. The deeper things pertaining to the heavens have been sealed, to be disclosed to the seed of Adam when they enter into their majority.

In writing this section of this book I am reminded of the words of the Psalmist:

Psalms 131:1

Yahweh, my heart is not haughty, nor my eyes lofty; neither do I exercise myself in matters too great or in things too wonderful for me.

I will not pretend to possess knowledge which is beyond my present grasp. I am but an infant when it comes to the knowledge of the angelic hosts. Yet, God has not withheld all information from mankind that pertains to the angels. Sadly, of that which has been declared in the Scriptures, much has been misapprehended by Christians. There are many spurious doctrines being taught today concerning the angels, Satan, and spiritual forces in the heavens. It is important that we understand aright that which Yahweh has deemed fit to disclose to us. It is my hope that at the end of this present chapter you will perceive some things more accurately about the hosts of heaven and the rulers of this age.

I Corinthians 2:6-8

Yet we do speak wisdom among those who are mature; a wisdom, however, not of this age, nor of ***the rulers of this age, who are passing away***; but we speak God's wisdom in a mystery, the hidden wisdom, which God predestined before the ages to our glory; the wisdom which none of ***the rulers of this age*** has understood; for if they had understood it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory...

In an earlier chapter we looked at the preeminent position that Yahshua, the Son of God, holds among the creation. He is declared to be “the firstborn” and “the beginning of the creation of God” (Revelation 3:14). Yahshua is “the only begotten of the Father.” That is to say, He is the only direct generation of Yahweh. All other things in the creation came into being after the Son and through the Son.

Colossians 1:15-16

And He is the image of the invisible God, the first-born of all creation. For by Him all things were created, both in the heavens and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities - all things have been created by Him and for Him.

The words “thrones,” “dominions,” “rulers,” and “authorities” are references to angelic beings. These words give us some inkling as to the role that angels have had entrusted to them, roles which even the fallen angels continue to occupy to this day. Each of these words describe some aspect of oversight, of exercising authority and judgment over a specific domain. Following are some other Bible passages that refer to angels in their roles as rulers and authorities of this age.

Ephesians 1:19-21

These are in accordance with the working of the strength of His might which He brought about in Christ, when He raised Him from the dead, and seated Him at His right hand in the heavenly places, far above all ***rule and authority and power and dominion***, and every name that is named, not only in this age, but also in the one to come.

Ephesians 3:10

In order that the manifold wisdom of God might now be made known through the church to ***the rulers and the authorities in the heavenly places***.

Ephesians 6:12

For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against ***the rulers***, against ***the powers***, against ***the***

world forces of this darkness, against *the spiritual forces of wickedness in the heavenly places*.

Colossians 2:15

When He had disarmed *the rulers and authorities*, He made a public display of them, having triumphed over them through Him.

I Peter 3:21-22

Yahshua Christ, who is at the right hand of God, having gone into heaven, after *angels and authorities and powers* had been subjected to Him.



The Heavenly Host by Gustave Dore

What each of these passages reveal is that Yahweh entrusted to the heavenly host ruling authority over the creation. These angelic beings were heavenly shepherds, angelic sovereigns, tasked with the charge of carrying out Yahweh's will among the vast creation. Even as Yahweh placed man in the Garden of Eden and committed it to his care, so He created the hosts of heaven and entrusted to them the oversight of the worlds He has made. The Bible tells us that these angelic beings were present at the creation of the earth. In the following passage Yahweh is speaking to Job.

Job 38:4-7

"Where were you when I laid the foundation of the earth? Tell Me, if you have understanding. Who set its measurements, since you know? Or who stretched the line on it? On what were its bases sunk? Or who laid its cornerstone, *when the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy?*"

The phrases "morning stars" and "sons of God" are both expressions that are used in reference to the angels and heavenly host. We see a variant of these expressions used in reference to Lucifer/Satan.

Isaiah 14:12

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, *son of the morning!*

One reason that I believe the angels are described as stars is that they are brilliant heavenly creatures manifesting the glory of Yahweh. It seems fitting that angels should be called *morning* stars because they were among the *first* luminous creations that Yahweh formed. All that Yahweh creates is light, for He is light, and in Him is no shadow or variation. The Bible in a number of places reveals the glorious, luminous, aspect of angelic beings.

Luke 2:9

And *an angel of the Lord* suddenly stood before them, and *the glory of the Lord shone around them...*

II Corinthians 11:14

For even Satan disguises himself as *an angel of light*.

All the heavenly host were originally created as angels of light. Some, however, have turned away from the light of God and have become darkened in their minds and in their character. Some have wondered why the appellation “morning star” is also used as a Biblical reference for the firstborn Son of God.

II Peter 1:19

And so we have the prophetic word made more sure, to which you do well to pay attention as to a lamp shining in a dark place, until the day dawns and *the morning star* arises in your hearts.

Revelation 22:16

"I, Yahshua, have sent My angel to testify to you these things for the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, *the bright morning star*."

This title is appropriate for both Christ and the angels. Both reveal the glory of God. Both are among the earliest of Yahweh's creations. Both are heavenly beings. Yet Christ is preeminent. The Son of God is not “a morning star.” He is “THE morning star.” We can understand the distinction as we consider that in America there are many “white houses,” but there is only one “White House.” This is the home of the American President, the chief executive of the nation. A common man may boast of living in “a white house,” but he cannot boast of living in “THE White House.”

We understand from the Scriptures that Yahshua, the only begotten Son of God, preceded all other things in the creation. Afterwards, the Son of God created the heavenly hosts. These were in turn present to witness the creation of the earth. Man, by comparison, is a relative latecomer.

Another Biblical expression used to denote angels is “sons of God.” There are some who are teaching that the Old Testament phrase “sons of God” (Hebrew - bene ha elohim) is NOT a reference to angels.

Genesis 6:1-2

Now it came about, when men began to multiply on the face of the land, and daughters were born to them, that the *sons of God* (bene ha elohim) saw that the daughters of men were beautiful; and they took wives for themselves, whomever they chose.

Job 1:6

Now there was a day when the *sons of God* (bene ha elohim) came to present themselves before Yahweh, and Satan also came among them.

The most common argument against angels being called “sons of God” is based upon a misunderstanding of the following Scripture passage.

Hebrews 1:5

For to which of the angels did He ever say: "You are My Son, today I have begotten You"?

In this passage the apostle is declaring the preeminence of Christ above all other created beings. He is making a Scriptural argument that Yahshua is greater than all of the angels. Some in reading what the apostle has written declare, “See, he has said that God never refers to the angels as sons.” This is NOT what the apostle wrote. The apostle is directly referencing an Old Testament prophecy of the Messiah.

Psalms 2:6-7

“But as for Me, I have installed My King upon Zion, My holy mountain. I will surely tell of the decree of Yahweh: He said to Me, ‘*You are My Son, today I have begotten You.*’”

It is improper Biblical exegesis to break apart this Biblical quotation and cite Hebrews 1:5 as “For to which of the angels did He ever say: ‘You are My Son?’” We cannot stop there. If we abused the Scriptures in this manner we could come up with many errant ideas. The apostle is stating that the prophecy from the Psalms “You are My Son, today I have begotten You,” was not spoken of an angel. It was only spoken of Yahshua. It is error to conclude that no part of this prophetic statement is true of the angels. It is the statement in its entirety that cannot be applied to angelic beings. The angels are sons of God, but there is only one Son who was directly *begotten* from the Father.

It should not seem strange to Christians that Yahweh refers to angels as sons of God any more than that He should refer to Adam as “the son of God” (Luke 3:38). Like Adam, angels are sentient beings with free will. They were created to show forth the glory of God. Furthermore, we find that angels are referred to as “gods” in the Bible.

Psalms 82:1

God (Elohim) has taken his place in the divine council; in the midst of the gods (elohim) he holds judgment.

The Hebrew term “elohim” denotes “a mighty one.” This is not a name. It is merely a title. This word appears approximately 2,600 times in the Old Testament, and is most often used as a reference to Yahweh. However, in a small percentage of occurrences it is used as a reference to angels, to the false gods of other nations, or as a reference to a mighty man.

Genesis 23:5-6

And the children of Heth answered Abraham, saying unto him, “Hear us, my lord: you are a *mighty* (elohim) prince among us.”

Laban, the father-in-law of Jacob, spoke the following to him.

Genesis 31:29-30

“It is in my power to do you harm, but the God of your father spoke to me last night, saying, 'Be careful not to speak either good or bad to Jacob.' And now you have indeed gone away because you longed greatly for your father's house; but why did you steal my **gods** (elohim)?”

Later on, Jacob spoke to his family and all those in his retinue, saying, ““Put away the foreign **gods** (elohim) which are among you” (Genesis 35:2). Also of Moses we read:

Exodus 7:1

Then Yahweh said to Moses, “See, I make you a **god** (elohim) to Pharaoh, and your brother Aaron shall be your prophet.”

The gods of Egypt are likewise referred to as “elohim.”

Exodus 12:12-13

“For I will pass through the land of Egypt on that night, and will strike all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, both man and beast; and against all the **gods** (elohim) of Egypt I will execute judgment: I am Yahweh.”

When one discerns the root meaning of “elohim” as “mighty ones” it appears quite fitting that the angels should be described by this Hebrew term. Angels are greater in power and might than mankind. Whenever angels appeared to men throughout the Bible, we see that a common reaction is for the individual(s) encountering angels to fall prostrate before them. This is true even of righteous men.

A significant difference between holy angels, and fallen angels is related to the human response to their glorious appearance. Satan and other fallen angels invite mankind to worship them, while the holy angels direct the worship of mankind to Yahweh. At the beginning of Yahshua’s ministry we see that Satan even tempted the Son of God to worship him.



Matthew 4:8-9

Again, the devil took Him to a very high mountain, and showed Him all the kingdoms of the world,

and their glory; and he said to Him, “All these things will I give You, if You fall down and worship me.”

This prideful and rebellious attitude is a trait of the fallen angels. In contrast, the holy angels forbid men to worship them.

Revelation 22:8-9

And I, John, am the one who heard and saw these things. And when I heard and saw, I fell down to worship at the feet of the angel who showed me these things. And he said to me, "Do not do that; I am a fellow servant of yours and of your brethren the prophets and of those who heed the words of this book; worship God."

Revelation 19:10

And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said to me, “Do not do that; I am a fellow servant of yours and your brethren who hold the testimony of Jesus; worship God.”

The glory and might of angels are such that mortal men are left stunned and bereft of strength when they see them unveiled.

Daniel 8:15-18

And it came about when I, Daniel, had seen the vision, that I sought to understand it; and behold, standing before me was one who looked like a man. And I heard the voice of a man between the banks of Ulai, and he called out and said, "Gabriel, give this man an understanding of the vision." So he came near to where I was standing, and when he came I was frightened and fell on my face; but he said to me, "Son of man, understand that the vision pertains to the time of the end." Now while he was talking with me, I sank into a deep sleep with my face to the ground; but he touched me and made me stand upright.

Many of the “gods” that the nations serve are in fact fallen angels who have authority over regions, people, and parts of the creation. In the New Testament the apostle Paul acknowledges that many such “gods” exist, but he distinguishes these gods from the self-existent God who is the source of all things.

I Corinthians 8:5-6

For even if there are so-called gods whether in heaven or on earth, as indeed there are many gods and many lords, yet for us there is but one God, the Father, from whom are all things, and we exist for Him; and one Lord, Yahshua Christ, by whom are all things, and we exist through Him.

In these words of the apostle Paul we find that angelic beings are not only acknowledged as “gods,” but they are once more noted to be “lords.” That is to say, they have been entrusted with ruling authority. When a man or woman becomes a Christian they experience a transfer from the domain of Satan to the Kingdom of God. Therefore, it is proper for Paul to state that Christians have only one Lord, Yahshua the Messiah.

Colossians 1:13

For He delivered us from the domain of darkness, and transferred us to the kingdom of His beloved Son...

What should not be overlooked in this statement is that there continues to be a domain of darkness. In the Scripture above the words “domain” and “kingdom” are used in parallel to one another. One definition of the word domain is “the territory governed by a single ruler or government; realm.” In Luke’s gospel we read of Satan describing his dominion to Yahshua.

Luke 4:5-7

And he led Him up and showed Him all the kingdoms of the world in a moment of time. And the devil said to Him, "I will give You all this **domain** and its glory; for it has been handed over to me, and I give it to whomever I wish. Therefore if You worship before me, it shall all be Yours."

The Lord never reproached Satan for lying in this statement. What Satan spoke was indeed true. All the kingdoms of this world have been handed over to him. He has been granted ruling authority over the earth, an authority that God acknowledges. In another place Christ described Satan as “the ruler of this world.”

John 16:8-11

“And [the Holy Spirit], when He comes, will convict the world concerning sin, and righteousness, and judgment; concerning sin, because they do not believe in Me; and concerning righteousness, because I go to the Father, and you no longer behold Me; and concerning judgment, because **the ruler of this world** has been judged.”

Few Christians today understand that Satan and his angels legitimately hold positions of authority and power before God as rulers and judges of Yahweh’s creation. When Adam chose obedience to Satan over obedience to God in the garden of Eden, Satan was able to regain dominion over the earth. Adam sold all mankind into subservience and slavery to the rule of Satan. The apostle Paul provides the following insight.

Romans 6:16

Do you not know that when you present yourselves to someone as slaves for obedience, you are slaves of the one whom you obey...

Because all humanity was “in Adam” when he presented himself for obedience to Satan, all mankind fell under the dominion of Satan. It would be 4,000 years before God sent His firstborn Son to earth to begin the process of delivering mankind from the rule of Satan in order to reconcile them to Himself.

There is a tremendous parable in the Old Testament that provides deep insight into the rule of Satan and his angels up until this day. It is a story of an exchange of kingdoms from one lineage to another. In the manifold details that the Bible provides of these two kingdoms and their rulers, we can glean a tremendous amount of insight into the domain of darkness and its relationship to the Kingdom of the Son of God. The story is found in the books of I and II Samuel. It is the history of Israel’s first

human king (Saul), and the man whom Yahweh chose to succeed him (David).

The Israelites demand for a human king to lead them follows the pattern of Adam turning away from God to be ruled by another. Observe what Yahweh communicates to the prophet Samuel when the Israelites clamor for a king.

I Samuel 8:7

And Yahweh said to Samuel, “Heed the voice of the people in all that they say to you; for they have not rejected you, but they have rejected Me, that I should not reign over them.”

Did not Adam reject Yahweh’s rule when he embraced Satan’s temptation in the garden? King Saul is a type of Satan. They share numerous traits in common. Among their similarities is their impressive physical appearance.

Satan

Ezekiel 28:12-14

“You had the seal of perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty. You were in Eden, the garden of God; Every precious stone was your covering: The ruby, the topaz, and the diamond; The beryl, the onyx, and the jasper; The lapis lazuli, the turquoise, and the emerald; And the gold, the workmanship of your settings and sockets, was in you. On the day that you were created they were prepared. You were the anointed cherub who covers, and I placed you there.”

Saul

I Samuel 9:1-2

Now there was a man of Benjamin whose name was Kish the son of Abiel, the son of Zeror, the son of Becorath, the son of Aphiah, the son of a Benjamite, a mighty man of valor. And he had a son whose name was Saul, a choice and handsome man, and there was not a more handsome person than he among the sons of Israel; from his shoulders and up he was taller than any of the people.

Both Satan and Saul were humble when God appointed them to their high callings and entrusted great authority to them, but they later became prideful.

Satan

Ezekiel 28:15, 17

You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created, until unrighteousness was found in you.... Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty; You corrupted your wisdom by reason of your splendor.

I Timothy 3:6-7

[An overseer must not be] a new convert, lest he become conceited and fall into the condemnation incurred by the devil.

Saul

I Samuel 15:17

“Is it not true, though you were little in your own eyes, you were made the head of the tribes of

Israel? And Yahweh anointed you king over Israel...”

Both Satan and Saul rebelled against the will of God, proving to be insubordinate, stubborn, and self-willed.

Satan

Isaiah 14:13-14

But you said in your heart, “I will ascend to heaven; I will raise my throne above the stars of God, and I will sit on the mount of assembly in the recesses of the north. I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High.”

Saul

I Samuel 15:22-23

And Samuel said, “Has Yahweh as much delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices as in obeying the voice of Yahweh? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to heed than the fat of rams. For rebellion is as the sin of divination, and insubordination is as iniquity and idolatry. Because you have rejected the word of Yahweh, He has also rejected you from being king.”

Both Satan and Saul use(d) the promise of material reward to persuade men to serve them.

Satan

Luke 4:5-7

And he led Him up and showed Him all the kingdoms of the world in a moment of time. And the devil said to Him, "I will give You all this domain and its glory; for it has been handed over to me, and I give it to whomever I wish. Therefore if You worship before me, it shall all be Yours."

Saul

I Samuel 8:10-15

And Samuel told all the words of the Lord unto the people that asked of him a king. And he said, This will be the manner of the king that shall reign over you... And he will take your fields, and your vineyards, and your oliveyards, even the best of them, and give them to his servants. And he will take the tenth of your seed, and of your vineyards, and give to his officers, and to his servants.

I Samuel 22:7

And Saul said to his servants who stood around him, “Hear now, O Benjamites! Will the son of Jesse also give to all of you fields and vineyards? Will he make you all commanders of thousands and commanders of hundreds?”

Do we not see today that Satan gives to his chief human servants the wealth of the planet? Does he not give them power to steal the material possessions of hard working men and women, and to enrich themselves at the expense of others? Does not Satan promise his human servants authority as rulers of mankind?

Many more parallels could be observed between Satan and Saul, for both were murderers and liars. Both of them had judgment pronounced on them by God. Both of them were cast down to the earth.

("How have the mighty have fallen...") Both of them became adversaries of the righteous servants of Yahweh, and both have, or will have, their kingdoms wrested from them and given to another who is better than themselves.

One of my chief reasons for drawing your attention to the parallels between Satan and Saul is to help the people of God to understand the authority and anointing that Satan *continues* to bear among the creation of God. Even as Yahweh anointed Saul to serve as ruler over His people, so too did He anoint Satan with great authority and power. The Bible describes Satan as an "anointed cherub," an "angelic majesty," and an "authority." In the New Testament we find that both the apostle Peter and Jude, the brother of our Lord, reproved men in the church for reviling Satan and other angelic majesties.

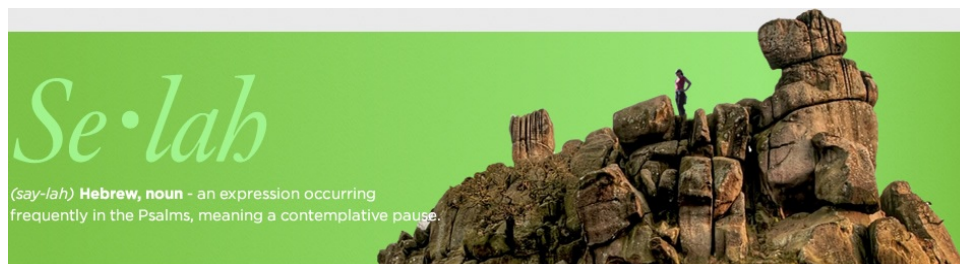
II Peter 2:10-11

Daring, self-willed, they do not tremble when they revile angelic majesties, whereas angels who are greater in might and power do not bring a reviling judgment against them before the Lord.

Peter is referring to Satan and those angelic beings who are in league with him when he speaks of "angelic majesties." A thought that needs correcting among Christians today is that Satan and the fallen angels no longer have any legitimate power or authority. Many Christians think it acceptable to revile Satan and other fallen angelic majesties. It is no more appropriate for Christians to do so than it would have been for David to revile King Saul. This is a great error that is as old as Christianity.

Jude 8-10

Yet in the same manner these men, also by dreaming, defile the flesh, and reject authority, and revile angelic majesties. But Michael the archangel, when he disputed with the devil and argued about the body of Moses, did not dare pronounce against him a railing judgment, but said, "The Lord rebuke you." But these men revile the things which they do not understand; and the things which they know by instinct, like unreasoning animals, by these things they are destroyed.



I encourage you to pause and carefully consider the argument set forth in the above Scripture. Jude is reproaching men for rejecting "authority" and "angelic majesties." He then makes it plain who he is referring to by citing an occasion when the archangel Michael contended with "the devil." If you follow the flow of Jude's argument, you can plainly see that "the devil" is the "authority" and the "angelic majesty" that is set forth as an example of someone who should not be reviled. If even the archangel Michael did not revile the devil/Satan, recognizing that he is an "angelic majesty" of Yahweh, then the argument follows that men who are inferior in might and power should not revile those beings they do not understand.

A very critical point to understand is that although God pronounced judgment upon King Saul, and declared him to have been rejected as ruler of His people, Saul's authority did not end at once. Saul maintained his authority as king until the end of his life which was many years later. During this time, Saul continued to act wickedly. He persecuted the righteous servants of Yahweh. It was AFTER Samuel pronounced Yahweh's judgment upon Saul that this wicked ruler pursued David in the wilderness on multiple occasions and murdered a city of priests. Despite all of this, Saul continued to occupy a position of power and authority as the anointed of Yahweh.

On two separate occasions Yahweh delivered King Saul into David's hands, resulting in David's men urging him to strike Saul, killing him, in order to bring an end to the persecution and mistreatment David and his men were experiencing. David's response in both instances is highly revelatory, and has great bearing on the present status of Satan and the church's relationship to him.

I Samuel 24:1-12

Now it came about when Saul returned from pursuing the Philistines, he was told, saying, "Behold, David is in the wilderness of Engedi." Then Saul took three thousand chosen men from all Israel, and went to seek David and his men in front of the Rocks of the Wild Goats. And he came to the sheepfolds on the way, where there was a cave; and Saul went in to relieve himself. Now David and his men were sitting in the inner recesses of the cave. And the men of David said to him, "Behold, this is the day of which Yahweh said to you, 'Behold; I am about to give your enemy into your hand, and you shall do to him as it seems good to you.'" ***Then David arose and cut off the edge of Saul's robe secretly. And it came about afterward that David's conscience bothered him because he had cut off the edge of Saul's robe, so he said to his men, "Far be it from me because of Yahweh that I should do this thing to my lord, Yahweh's anointed, to stretch out my hand against him, since he is Yahweh's anointed."*** And David persuaded his men with these words and did not allow them to rise up against Saul. And Saul arose, left the cave, and went on his way. Now afterward David arose and went out of the cave and called after Saul, saying, "My lord the king!" And when Saul looked behind him, David bowed with his face to the ground and prostrated himself. And David said to Saul, "Why do you listen to the words of men, saying, 'Behold, David seeks to harm you'? Behold, this day your eyes have seen that Yahweh had given you today into my hand in the cave, and some said to kill you, but my eye had pity on you; and ***I said, 'I will not stretch out my hand against my lord, for he is Yahweh's anointed.'*** Now, my father, see! Indeed, see the edge of your robe in my hand! For in that I cut off the edge of your robe and did not kill you, know and perceive that there is no evil or rebellion in my hands, and I have not sinned against you, though you are lying in wait for my life to take it. May Yahweh judge between you and me, and may Yahweh avenge me on you; but my hand shall not be against you."

I Samuel 26:7-11

So David and Abishai came to the people by night, and behold, Saul lay sleeping inside the circle of the camp, with his spear stuck in the ground at his head; and Abner and the people were lying around him. Then Abishai said to David, "Today God has delivered your enemy into your hand; now therefore, please let me strike him with the spear to the ground with one stroke, and I will not strike him the second time." ***But David said to Abishai, "Do not destroy him, for who can stretch out his hand against [Yahweh's] anointed and be without guilt?" David also said, "As Yahweh lives, surely Yahweh will strike him, or his day will come that he dies, or he will go down into battle and***

perish. Yahweh forbid that I should stretch out my hand against Yahweh's anointed...

Even though Saul had turned aside from the path of righteousness and had made himself an adversary of the righteous, David recognized that Saul continued as an anointed servant of Yahweh. David continued to manifest the honor due to one who stood in a position of authority that Yahweh had given to him. David refused to revile one in authority, or to lift his hand against him, even though that authority was acting wickedly.

We observe the parallel truth that Satan has rebelled against Yahweh and has become the adversary of all righteousness. Yahweh has pronounced judgment against him, but that judgment has not yet been fully carried out. Although God has judged the rebellion, self-will, and evil of Satan's heart, He has not withdrawn the authority and anointing that Satan bears. The day will come when Satan will fall in battle. An hour will arrive when Yahweh will strike him, but until that time he remains the anointed cherub, an angelic majesty. Even as Saul continued to reign, and his actions were evil resulting in condemnation, Satan continues to rule in wickedness heaping up condemnation upon himself.

People of God, I would have you to understand that Yahweh has allotted to Satan a period of time to fill up the fulness of his iniquity before final judgment is carried out against him. We see this also in the life of King Saul. Yahweh could have at once taken the life of Saul when the prophet Samuel pronounced God's judgment upon this king. Yet, he did not do so. It was appointed to David to bear up patiently for many years under the persecution, slander, and malevolent jealousy of this wicked king. Through this experience David learned many qualities of humility, patience, and faithfulness that enabled him to bear ruling authority and to exercise justice and righteousness as a man after God's own heart. Undoubtedly, Yahweh has similar purposes in allowing Satan and the angelic hosts in league with him to continue in their power and authority. The saints in Christ bear the brunt of Satan's wrath, his slanders, and his malevolent will, yet through it all they are given opportunity to acquit themselves faithfully as did David, that the day might arrive when Yahweh will elevate them to the throne.

The apostle Paul describes Satan as "the god of this world," and "the prince of the power of the air." These titles reveal that Satan still maintains authority as a world ruler.

II Corinthians 4:3-4

And even if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled to those who are perishing, in whose case ***the god of this world*** has blinded the minds of the unbelieving.

Ephesians 2:1-2

And you were dead in your trespasses and sins, in which you formerly walked according to the course of this world, according to ***the prince of the power of the air...***

It must be understood that when a person, being, or group are granted an anointing and authority by Yahweh, even if they should prove unfaithful in the calling bequeathed to them, Yahweh does not immediately revoke their calling or power. Not only do we see this in the life of King Saul, it is also observed in the calling and anointing Yahweh placed upon the Jewish people. The Jewish leaders

proved unfaithful. They failed to fulfill their calling as priests to the nations. Out of jealousy, they opposed the Son of God when He appeared. Afterward they waged a cruel war against Christ's disciples. Wherever the Jewish leaders had power and authority they would persecute the church of Christ. They confiscated the possessions of some. They imprisoned others. They murdered many. Yet of these adversaries of Christ the apostle Paul declares:

Romans 11:28-29

From the standpoint of the gospel they are enemies for your sake, but from the standpoint of God's choice they are beloved for the sake of the fathers; *for the gifts and the calling of God are irrevocable.*

Saul continued in his calling as king until Yahweh executed His judgment. Satan will also continue in his power and authority until Yahweh carries out His sentence against him. There are passages of Scripture that reveal that Satan and his angels continue to fulfill a role as judges of the inhabitants of the earth, though they are acting wickedly in the fulfillment of their duties. One of the most insightful passages that discloses this role is found in Psalms 82. This psalm is written as a reproach to the angelic rulers of this world who act corruptly.

Psalms 82

God has taken his place in the divine council; in the midst of the gods (elohim) he holds judgment: "How long will you judge unjustly and show partiality to the wicked?" Selah

"Give justice to the weak and the fatherless; maintain the right of the afflicted and the destitute. Rescue the weak and the needy; deliver them from the hand of the wicked."

They have neither knowledge nor understanding, they walk about in darkness; all the foundations of the earth are shaken. I said, "You are gods, sons of the Most High, all of you; nevertheless, like men you shall die, and fall like any prince." Arise, O God, judge the earth; for you shall inherit all the nations!

[English Standard Version]

Although I previously thought a portion of the above psalm was speaking exclusively of mankind, as Yahweh has instructed me and I have understood the context of this psalm, I have realized that what is written is equally true of angelic majesties who serve as judges and rulers of the earth. These angelic beings comprise a "divine council" in the heavens. Like King Saul, these elohim are charged with the rule of men, yet like that same king they are proving unfaithful in carrying forth their duties. Therefore, Yahweh is remonstrating with them. He pronounces the fate that awaits them.

Angels were created as immortal beings. Death is not a natural part of their experience. The angels that were first created at the word of Yahshua ages ago, that were present when the foundations of the earth were laid, continue to this day. Yet God has declared that the unfaithful among these princes shall die like men. Death is not a normal experience for an angel. None of them were born with mortal and corruptible bodies. Because angels do not procreate with one another, they cannot pass along sin and death to other angels. The angels do not experience the physical death that is the portion of all the descendants of Adam, but those who have rebelled against God will experience the "second death" which is the lake of fire.

Matthew 25:41

“Then He will also say to those on His left, “Depart from Me, accursed ones, into the age-during fire which has been prepared for the devil and his angels...””

Revelation 20:10

And the devil who deceived them was thrown into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are also; and they will be tormented day and night to the age of the ages.



When the psalmist writes that “I said, ‘You are gods, sons of the Most High, all of you; nevertheless, like men you shall die, and fall like any prince...”” he is prophesying of the judgment that awaits the fallen angels. When we perceive that the fallen angels are continuing to bear the responsibility for the rule of this world, and continue as ministers of God, a number of perplexing Scriptural passages are rendered sensible. Following is one example of the fallen angels appearing among the divine council of God in the heavens.

I Kings 22:19-23

And Micaiah said, “Therefore, hear the word of Yahweh. I saw Yahweh sitting on His throne, and all **the host of heaven** standing by Him on His right and on His left. And Yahweh said, 'Who will entice Ahab to go up and fall at Ramoth-gilead?' And one said this while another said that. Then a spirit came forward and stood before Yahweh and said, 'I will entice him.' And Yahweh said to him, 'How?' And he said, 'I will go out and be a deceiving spirit in the mouth of all his prophets.' Then He said, 'You are to entice him and also prevail. Go and do so.' Now therefore, behold, Yahweh has put a deceiving spirit in the mouth of all these your prophets; and Yahweh has proclaimed disaster against you.”

Here is one of the fallen angels, a member of “the host of heaven,” who is continuing in his calling as a member of the divine council. This is a “lying spirit” which identifies him with Satan who is the father of lies. Does it seem incredible that such an one should be used by Yahweh to carry out His will? Do we not read in the Bible of wicked kings that Yahweh uses to carry forth His will? Did not Yahweh use Nebuchadnezzar, King of Babylon, to execute His fierce anger against Judah and Jerusalem?

This fact touches on a troubling aspect of Paul’s writing to the church in Rome. In the following passage the apostle speaks of Yahweh using human rulers of the nations to carry forth His will. Yet, we know that these rulers are rarely Christian, and are quite often marred by deep issues of

unrighteousness.

Romans 13:1-7

Let every person be in subjection to the governing authorities. For there is no authority except from God, and those which exist are established by God. Therefore he who resists authority has opposed the ordinance of God; and they who have opposed will receive condemnation upon themselves. For rulers are not a cause of fear for good behavior, but for evil. Do you want to have no fear of authority? Do what is good, and you will have praise from the same; for it is a minister of God to you for good. But if you do what is evil, be afraid; for it does not bear the sword for nothing; for it is a minister of God, an avenger who brings wrath upon the one who practices evil. Wherefore it is necessary to be in subjection, not only because of wrath, but also for conscience' sake. For because of this you also pay taxes, for rulers are servants of God, devoting themselves to this very thing. Render to all what is due them: tax to whom tax is due; custom to whom custom; fear to whom fear; honor to whom honor.

Paul wrote these words to Christians in Rome during the time of the Roman Empire. The Caesars were the supreme rulers of the Empire, and they were renowned for their sinful failings. Nevertheless, the apostle declares that these world rulers serve as ministers of God. So too do we understand that Satan and his angels will continue as ministers of God until Yahweh's judgment is carried out upon them.

Yahweh does use unfaithful rulers to carry out His will. At present America is in a great state of moral decline. Her President is promoting homosexuality, the murder of the unborn, and many grievous and deceptive policies. Yet the government still continues to prosecute murderers, rapists, thieves, swindlers, child abusers, and many other wicked people. The government is not faithful in upholding God's righteousness, for it does so with great inequity. Nevertheless, it still bears the sword of the Lord. The same can be said of Satan and his angels.

Is it not inexplicable to those who do not understand these things that the apostle Paul could look to Satan to carry out discipline against members of the body of Christ who were committing grievous sin in an unrepentant manner?

I Corinthians 5:5

I have decided to deliver such a one to Satan for the destruction of his flesh, that his spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord Yahshua.

Do not these words reveal that Satan continues to be used as a servant of God? It may be fairly said that Satan even serves to save the lives of some from utter destruction. Is this not what Paul is conveying in the passage above? The apostle is turning an unrepentant Christian over to Satan for chastisement with the ultimate goal in mind that the spirit of the man might be saved in the day of judgment. Satan, in this association, becomes an instrument in the hands of God to prevent a believer from suffering complete loss.

In what is to many an equally perplexing Scripture, the apostle speaks of turning two men over to Satan that they might be taught not to blaspheme.

I Timothy 1:20

Among these are Hymenaeus and Alexander, whom I have delivered over to Satan, so that they may be taught not to blaspheme.

Will Satan the blasphemer be used to teach others not to blaspheme? Indeed, Yahweh can, and will, use him in this manner. This does not imply that Satan is a righteous minister. King Saul, after becoming puffed up with pride, was not a righteous ruler. Nevertheless, Yahweh used Saul to carry out His will. The apostle Paul furthermore speaks of God using an "angel of Satan" to prevent him from becoming unduly exalted in his mind and falling into pride.

II Corinthians 12:7-9

And because of the surpassing greatness of the revelations, for this reason, to keep me from exalting myself, there was given me a thorn in the flesh, an angel/messenger (Greek - angelos) of Satan to buffet me - to keep me from exalting myself! Concerning this I entreated the Lord three times that it might depart from me. And He has said to me, "My grace is sufficient for you, for power is perfected in weakness."

What does this declaration of the apostle reveal? It reveals that Yahweh continues to use Satan's angels to carry forth His will, a will that ever seeks the welfare of His people. God even gives Satan and his angels assignments that safeguard His people from spiritual loss.

I think that the prevailing thought in the minds of most Christians today is that there has been an irreconcilable break between Yahweh and those angelic hosts that have fallen. In the minds of some, there is no longer any interchange or communication between God and Satan and his angels. This is NOT what the Bible reveals, however. The fallen angels have continued to fulfill roles of authority and power in the same way that King Saul continued to be the anointed King of Israel after God had pronounced judgment upon him. The prophet Micaiah revealed that lying spirits assemble before Yahweh in His divine councils, even as do the holy angels. So too do we read in the book of Job of Satan appearing before Yahweh when the sons of God (bene ha elohim) came to present themselves before Him.

Job 1:6-12

Now there was a day when the *sons of God* (bene ha elohim) came to present themselves before Yahweh, and Satan also came among them. And Yahweh said to Satan, "From where do you come?" Then Satan answered Yahweh and said, "From roaming about on the earth and walking around on it." And Yahweh said to Satan, "Have you considered My servant Job? For there is no one like him on the earth, a blameless and upright man, fearing God and turning away from evil." Then Satan answered Yahweh, "Does Job fear God for nothing? Have You not made a hedge about him and his house and all that he has, on every side? You have blessed the work of his hands, and his possessions have increased in the land. But put forth Your hand now and touch all that he has; he will surely curse You to Your face." Then Yahweh said to Satan, "Behold, all that he has is in your power, only do not put forth your hand on him." So Satan departed from the presence of Yahweh.

Here we see Satan in the role of the ruler and god of this world. We are not told how often that Satan appears before Yahweh in the heavens, but it is apparent that he continues to have access there. This

is not unlike King Saul continuing to have access to the Tabernacle of God, and the ability to inquire of Yahweh's prophets. It was only at the very end of Saul's life that God refused to answer the King of Israel. This is why Saul sought out a medium to summon forth the prophet Samuel from the grave. Yahweh is patient, bearing long with His anointed servants who have turned to wickedness.



Job's Trials

In the book of Job we see that Yahweh allows Satan to voice his complaint. Yahweh grants to Satan the authority to test his claim that Job honors God only because Yahweh protects and prospers him. At the same time, Yahweh always has in mind the welfare of his righteous servant. Although Job suffered greatly, his suffering was temporal and resulted in no spiritual loss. On the contrary, Job learned much about Yahweh, and of humility, through the things he suffered. Job was like a fruitful vine that Yahweh allowed to be pruned back severely that it might bring forth more abundantly.

For many years I was troubled by a certain passage from the Gospels. Not having been taught correctly about the continued authority of the fallen members of the host of heaven, I could not make sense of a particular statement of Christ.

John 19:10-11

Pilate therefore said to Him, "You do not speak to me? Do You not know that I have authority to release You, and I have authority to crucify You?" Yahshua answered, "***You would have no authority over Me, unless it had been given you from above; for this reason he who delivered Me up to you has the greater sin.***"

In my Baptist upbringing, the only being I was aware of who had authority in the heavens was God. I could not conceive of Christ charging God with sin. This left me with the unresolved questions, "To whom was Christ referring when He spoke of Pilate being granted authority from above? Who was it that had the greater sin?" The answer is now readily apparent to me. Satan continues to bear authority as the ruler of this world. His rule is in the heavens. He granted authority to Pilate to condemn the Son of God to death. He goaded the Jews into crying out "Crucify Him!" It was Satan to whom Christ said the greater guilt belonged.

Satan and other fallen members of the heavenly host are still entrusted with ruling authority. Like King Saul, they are abusing this ruling authority. Even as Saul jealousy sought the life of David, so too did Satan jealousy seek the life of Yahshua, the Son of David.

In the book of Revelation we read of an hour approaching when Satan and his angels will be cast out of heaven and no longer have access there.

Revelation 12:7-12

And there was war in heaven, Michael and his angels waging war with the dragon. And the dragon and his angels waged war, and they were not strong enough, and there was no longer a place found for them in heaven. And the great dragon was thrown down, the serpent of old who is called the devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world; he was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him. And I heard a loud voice in heaven, saying, "Now the salvation, and the power, and the kingdom of our God and the authority of His Christ have come, for the accuser of our brethren has been thrown down, who accuses them before our God day and night. And they overcame him because of the blood of the Lamb and because of the word of their testimony, and they did not love their life even to death. For this reason, rejoice, O heavens and you who dwell in them. Woe to the earth and the sea, because the devil has come down to you, having great wrath, knowing that he has only a short time."

Yahweh has not yet withdrawn the authority of the hosts of heaven who deal wickedly anymore than He has withdrawn the authority of sinful men who rule unjustly. Yet, the hour will arrive when He will judge both the angels above and mankind below.

Isaiah 24:21

So it will happen in that day, that Yahweh will punish the host of heaven, on high, and the kings of the earth, on earth.

"That day" is near at hand, but it has not yet appeared. It will be cause for rejoicing when these wicked gods (elohim), these rebellious sons of God (bene ha elohim), these principalities, powers, and spiritual forces of wickedness in high places, meet the just penalty for their sins. The atmosphere of the entire planet will change at once. It will then be known what a powerful, and wicked influence these fallen members of the heavenly host exerted upon this terrestrial sphere.

At present the church of Christ is much like David as he was being pursued by the armies of Saul. David stated the following to King Saul who was dogging his steps in the wilderness.

I Samuel 26:19-20

"Now therefore, please let my lord the king listen to the words of his servant. If Yahweh has stirred you up against me, let Him accept an offering; but if it is men, cursed are they before Yahweh, for they have driven me out today that I should have no attachment with the inheritance of Yahweh, saying, 'Go, serve other gods.' Now then, do not let my blood fall to the ground away from the presence of Yahweh; for the king of Israel has come out to search for a single flea, just as one hunts a partridge in the mountains."



Partridge in the Wilderness

Do you at times feel like a partridge that is mercilessly hunted, driven into wilderness places? Have you been driven away from home and hearth and kin? Do you find that even those who claim to be servants of God hold you in reproach and derision? Does your life appear as insignificant as that of a flea? Has Satan pursued you without cause, seeking your hurt? Then take comfort in this: Even as Yahweh preserved David's life in many years of wilderness wanderings, so too will He preserve the lives of those who commit themselves to walking with Him in righteousness. Yahweh's eyes are always upon His suffering servants. He sustains them, and permits the adversary to do no more than that which will result in their good in the end.

The hour will come when Satan will meet his doom, even as King Saul fell on Mount Gilboa. Then the faithful servants of Yahweh will be exalted. The proud and mighty will be abased, and the humble of the earth will be exalted. What a glorious day that will be. There is wisdom in all of Yahweh's ways.

I will close this post by repeating a verse I cited at the beginning of this chapter.

I Corinthians 2:6-8

Yet we do speak wisdom among those who are mature; a wisdom, however, not of this age, nor of ***the rulers of this age, who are passing away***; but we speak God's wisdom in a mystery, the hidden wisdom, which God predestined before the ages to our glory; the wisdom which none of ***the rulers of this age*** has understood; for if they had understood it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory...

"The rulers of this age" is a reference to both the human and angelic rulers. Did not Christ tell the Roman governor Pilate that Satan had the greater guilt for crucifying Him? These fallen angelic rulers are certainly included among those whom the apostle declared to be "passing away." Their days are numbered. Their time is short. The lake of fire awaits them.

Let us not err in believing as some do that the fallen angels, and Satan himself, do not continue to this hour as rulers that bear an anointing from God. Though they abuse the anointing, and prove unfaithful in the governance allotted to them, they do rule nonetheless. At the appointed time Yahweh will execute His judgment upon all rule and authority. Those who have embraced evil will pass away, and

new righteous rulers will arise in their place.

As you look at the daily news and see wicked rulers filling the world with lies, abominations, and rebellious plans; as they speak proud and slanderous words against the holy God of heaven, take comfort in knowing that their time is passing. The hour is approaching when the kingdom of this world will become the kingdom of our Lord and Christ.

In this chapter I have not been able to address the initial fall of Lucifer, “the anointed cherub.” There are other additional questions to answer and issues to be addressed that pertain to the fallen angels. This subject will be continued in the next chapter.

The Fall of the Anointed Cherub



Cherubim Covering the Ark of the Covenant

There are a great many diverse and incompatible doctrines existent today concerning the identity of that being that the Bible calls Satan, the devil, the great dragon, and the serpent of old. Some have suggested that the Scriptural references to this being are to be understood as a metaphor for the carnal mind of man. Others suggest that passages that have traditionally been understood to be descriptions of this angelic being known as Satan/Lucifer are in fact speaking of Adam, of human rulers upon the earth, or of something else entirely different.

It would be exhausting to seek to refute all the diverse views on this subject, so I will limit my discussion to a few of the more common doctrines that I frequently encounter. My main approach will be to build from the Scriptures a composite description of this being that is present from the very first book of the Bible when he tempts Adam and Eve to sin, to the last book of the Bible where he incites humanity to open warfare against God and incurs the just punishment of being cast into the lake of fire. Because Satan is such a central figure throughout the Bible, and has persisted as the chief adversary of humanity, it is important that Christians have an accurate understanding of this being.

The first appearance of man's ancient enemy in the Bible occurs in the third chapter of Genesis where Satan appears in the form of a serpent to tempt the man and the woman.

Genesis 3:1-5

Now the serpent was more cunning than any beast of the field which Yahweh God had made. And he said to the woman, "Has God indeed said, 'You shall not eat of every tree of the garden'?" And the woman said to the serpent, "We may eat the fruit of the trees of the garden; but of the fruit of the tree which is in the midst of the garden, God has said, 'You shall not eat it, nor shall you touch it, lest you die.'" Then the serpent said to the woman, "You will not surely die. For God knows that in the day you eat of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil."

About 14 years ago a brother in Christ that I knew through our participation at the same church began to take some classes at Mercer University in Macon, Georgia. Mercer began as a Southern Baptist University, but became so liberal in its views that the Baptists eventually ended all association with

them. This brother had to take a religion course. He mentioned to me that his professor challenged a statement that he had made in one of his papers. The professor criticized this man's statement that Satan had tempted Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden. The professor stated that the Genesis account made no mention of Satan, speaking only of a serpent. My friend read the Genesis account and saw that this was true, and asked me what I thought. I responded by telling him about the following Scripture passages from the book of Revelation.

Revelation 12:9

And the great dragon was thrown down, the serpent of old who is called the devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world; he was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him.

Revelation 20:2-3

And he laid hold of the dragon, the serpent of old, who is the devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years, and threw him into the abyss, and shut it and sealed it over him, so that he should not deceive the nations any longer, until the thousand years were completed...

Both of these passages reveal that "the dragon," "the serpent of old," "the devil," and "Satan" are references to the same being. This satisfied my friend who was eager to return to his professor and share this evidence with him. As we look at the behavior of this being described in Revelation, we find that the same activity is ascribed to the serpent in the third chapter of Genesis. In Revelation we read that this being "deceives the whole world," and "deceives the nations." In Genesis we read:

Genesis 3:13

And the woman said, "The serpent deceived me, and I ate."

Satan is a deceiver and a liar. There is a common idiom ascribed to Native Americans that lying white men "spoke with a forked tongue." In *The History of the American Indians*, published in 1775, the leaders of the Chickasaw tribe spoke ruefully of the white man's lawyers who they described as "*hired speakers, who use their squint eyes and forked tongues like the chieftains of the snakes, (meaning rattle-snakes) which destroy harmless creatures for the sake of food.*"



This Native American expression is befitting of the being that appears in the opening chapters of Genesis in the form of a serpent. Of this being the Son of God declared:

John 8:44

Whenever he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own nature; for he is a liar, and the father of lies.

We can understand by these statements the unrighteous nature of Satan, yet the question that remains to be answered is "What kind of being is Satan?" Certainly he is much more than a lowly snake. The beast we recognize as a serpent typifies Satan's character in the same way that a lamb is used as a symbol for the Son of God, but it would be error to conclude that Satan is an actual snake even as it would be error to conclude that Christ is a literal lamb.

There is much disagreement, and many diverse opinions, as to the relationship of the serpent of Genesis 3 and Satan. Are we to understand that Satan took upon the form of a serpent when he appeared to Eve? Is he able to alter his appearance to that of a beast? Or did Satan enter into this beast in a similar manner as is indicated in the gospels where we are told that Satan entered into Judas, the betrayer of God's Son?

Luke 22:3-4

And Satan entered into Judas who was called Iscariot, belonging to the number of the twelve. And he went away and discussed with the chief priests and officers how he might betray Him to them.

That Satan is able to place very specific thoughts into men's minds is very evident. In the Scripture above we see him leading Judas to a very specific course of action which included speaking words that were in harmony with his own wicked desires. We see a similar profound manifestation of Satan's ability to control men in the book of Job. Once Yahweh granted Satan permission to afflict Job, we are informed of the awesome power of this angelic being to control precisely the thoughts and actions of various groups of men.

Job 1:12-19

Then Yahweh said to Satan, "Behold, all that he has is in your power, only do not put forth your hand on him." So Satan departed from the presence of Yahweh. Now it happened on the day when his sons and his daughters were eating and drinking wine in their oldest brother's house, that a messenger came to Job and said, "The oxen were plowing and the donkeys feeding beside them, and the Sabeans attacked and took them. They also slew the servants with the edge of the sword, and I alone have escaped to tell you." While he was still speaking, another also came and said, "The fire of God fell from heaven and burned up the sheep and the servants and consumed them, and I alone have escaped to tell you." While he was still speaking, another also came and said, "The Chaldeans formed three bands and made a raid on the camels and took them and slew the servants with the edge of the sword; and I alone have escaped to tell you." While he was still speaking, another also came and said, "Your sons and your daughters were eating and drinking wine in their oldest brother's house, and behold, a great wind came from across the wilderness and struck the four corners of the house, and it fell on the young people and they died; and I alone have escaped to tell you."

In a single moment of time, in a perfectly choreographed series of events, Satan was able to stir up

the Sabceans to attack Job's servants who were plowing his fields, and to direct three bands of Chaldeans to raid Job's camel herders. Yet we see that Satan did something even more remarkable in its appearance. At the precise moment of his choosing he caused fire from heaven to fall and burn up Job's sheep and those tending them, and to direct a whirlwind on a perfect course to strike the home in which Job's children were gathered. It certainly seems within the power of this "mighty one" to exert an influence over a serpent so that this beast would communicate his message to humanity's first forbears.



Staircase of the Winged Serpents, Bali, Indonesia

Cultures from all over the world, as widely separated as Asia and South America, have myths of dragons and great serpents that are part of ancient forms of worship. A dragon is a winged serpent. It must be observed that the serpent of Genesis did not crawl upon its belly until AFTER Yahweh pronounced judgment upon it.

Genesis 3:14

And Yahweh God said to the serpent, "Because you have done this, cursed are you more than all cattle, and more than every beast of the field; On your belly shall you go..."

The serpent left the garden on its belly, but it did not enter that way. It seems quite plausible that the serpent was formerly a winged creature. This would explain why Satan is described as both a dragon and a serpent. The serpent on its belly is a dragon that has been cast down and abased. The serpent served as a visual testimony of the judgment that would one day befall Satan for his wicked actions. Even as the serpent was once a heavenly creature but was cast down to the earth, so too would Satan be thoroughly abased when Yahweh's judgment for his wickedness was fully carried out.

Some have interpreted the Genesis account of the serpent to be purely metaphorical, while others have suggested a different understanding of the Hebrew word translated as "serpent." E.W. Bullinger in the appendices of *The Companion Study Bible* states the following:

The Serpent of Genesis 3

Appendix 19 From *The Companion Bible*

In Genesis 3 we have neither allegory, myth, legend, nor fable, but literal historical facts set forth, and emphasized by the use of certain Figures of speech.

*All the confusion of thought and conflicting exegesis have arisen from taking literally what is expressed by Figures, or from taking figuratively what is literal. A Figure of speech is never used except for the purpose of calling attention to, emphasizing, and intensifying, **the reality of the literal sense**, and truth of the historical facts; so that, while the words employed may not be so strictly true to the letter, they are all the more **true to the truth conveyed by them**, and to the historical events connected with them.*

But for the figurative language of verses 14 and 15 no one would have thought of referring the third chapter of Genesis to a snake; no more than he does when reading the third chapter from the end of Revelation (chapter 20:2). Indeed, the explanation added there, that the "old serpent" is the Devil and Satan, would immediately lead one to connect the word "old" with the earlier and former mention of the serpent in Genesis 3: and the fact that it was Satan himself who tempted "the second man," "the last Adam," would force the conclusion that no other than the personal Satan could have been the tempter of "the first man, Adam."

*The Hebrew word rendered "serpent" in Genesis 3:1 is **Nachash** (from the root **Nachash**, to shine, and means **a shining one**. Hence, in Chaldee it means **brass** or **copper**, because of its **shining**. Hence also, the word **Nehushtan**, a piece of brass, in 2Kings 18:4.*

*In the same way **Saraph**, in Isaiah 6:2,6, means **a burning one**, and, because the serpents mentioned in Numbers 21 were burning, in the poison of their bite, they were called **Saraphim**, or **Seraphs**.*

*But when the LORD said unto Moses, "Make thee a fiery serpent" (Numbers 21:8), He said, "Make thee a **Saraph**," and, in obeying this command, we read in verse 9, "Moses made a **Nachash** of brass." **Nachash** is thus used as being interchangeable with **Saraph**.*

*Now, if **Saraph** is used of a serpent because its bite was **burning**, and is also used of a celestial or spirit-being (a burning one), why should not **Nachash** be used of a serpent because its appearance was **shining**, and be also used of a celestial or spirit-being (a shining one)?...*

Have we not, in this, a clear intimation that it was not a snake, but a glorious shining being, apparently an angel, to whom Eve paid such great deference, acknowledging him as one who seemed to possess superior knowledge, and who was evidently a being of a superior (not of an inferior) order?...

We cannot conceive Eve as holding converse with a snake, but we can understand her being fascinated by one, apparently "an angel of light" (i.e. a glorious angel), possessing superior and supernatural knowledge.

*When Satan is spoken of as a "serpent," it is the figure **Hypocatastasis** or **Implication**; it no more means a snake than it does when Dan is so called in Genesis 49:17; or an animal when Nero is called a "lion" (2Timothy 4:17), or when Herod is called a "fox" (Luke 13:32); or when Judah is called "a*

lion's whelp." It is the same figure when "doctrine" is called "leaven" (Matthew 16:6). It shows that something much more real and truer to truth is intended. If a Figure of speech is thus employed, it is for the purpose of expressing the truth more impressively; and is intended to be a figure of something much **more real** than the letter of the word.

Other Figures of speech are used in verses 14,15, but only for the same purpose of emphasizing the truth and the reality of what is said.

When it is said in verse 15, "thou shalt bruise His heel," it cannot mean His literal heel of flesh and blood, but suffering, more temporary in character. When it is said (verse 15), "He shall crush the head," it means something more than a skull of bone, and brain, and hair. It means that all Satan's plans and plots, policy and purposes, will one day be finally crushed and ended, never more to mar or to hinder the purposes of God. This will be effected when Satan shall be bruised under our feet (Romans 16:20). This, again, will not be our literal feet, but something much more real.

The bruising of Christ's heel is the most eloquent and impressive way of foretelling the most solemn events; and to point out that the effort made by Satan to evade his doom, then threatened, would become the very means of insuring its accomplishment; for it was through the death of Christ that he who had the power of death would be destroyed; and all Satan's power and policy brought to an end, and all his works destroyed (Hebrews 2:14. 1John 3:8. Revelation 20:1-3,10). What literal words could portray these literal facts so wonderfully as these expressive Figures of speech ?

It is the same with the other Figures used in verse 14, "On thy belly shalt thou go." This Figure means infinitely more than the literal belly of the flesh and blood; just as the words "heel" and "head" do in verse 15. It paints for the eyes of our mind the picture of Satan's ultimate **humiliation**; for prostration was ever the most eloquent sign of subjection. When it is said "our belly cleaveth unto the ground" (Psalm 44:25), it denotes such a prolonged prostration and such a depth of submission as could never be conveyed or expressed in literal words.

So with the other prophecy, "Dust shalt thou eat." This is not true to the letter, or to fact, but it is all the more **true to truth**. It tells of constant continuous disappointment, failure, and mortification; as when deceitful ways are spoken of as feeding on deceitful food, which is "sweet to a man, but afterward his mouth shall be filled with gravel" (Proverbs 20:17). This does not mean literal "gravel," but something far more disagreeable. It means disappointment so great that it would gladly be exchanged for the literal "gravel." So when Christians are rebuked for "biting and devouring one another" (Galatians 3:14,15), something more heart-breaking is meant than the literal words used in the Figure...

If a serpent was afterward called a nachash, it was because it was more shining than any other creature; and if it became known as "wise," it was not because of its own innate positive knowledge, but of its wisdom in hiding away from all observation; and because of its association with one of the names of Satan (that old serpent) who "beguiled Eve" (2Corinthians 11:3,14).

It is wonderful how a snake could ever be supposed to speak without the organs of speech, or that Satan should be supposed able to accomplish so great a miracle.

It only shows the power of tradition, which has, from the infancy of each one of us, put before our eyes and written on our minds the picture of a "snake" and an "apple": the former based on a wrong interpretation, and the latter being a pure invention, about which there is not one word said in Holy Scripture.

Never was Satan's wisdom so craftily used as when he secured universal acceptance of this traditional belief: for it has succeeded in fixing the attention of mankind on the letter and the means, thus blinding the eyes to the solemn fact that the Fall of man had to do solely with the Word of God, and is centered in the sin of believing Satan's lie instead of Jehovah's truth...

This is his object in perpetuating the traditions of the "snake" and the "apple," because it ministers to the acceptance of his lie, the hiding of God's truth, the support of tradition, the jeers of the infidel, the opposition of the critics, and the stumbling of the weak in faith.

[End Excerpt]

Bullinger argues well for the serpent being only a figure of speech, yet I am not persuaded by his words. I find no trouble in allowing for Satan, the shining cherub, to use the serpent as an instrument of his cunning schemes, while agreeing that the serpent itself is a symbol of much greater things. Yahweh has often used actual, literal created beings and objects as symbols of something greater than themselves. As a person who has spent many years considering the parables of Scripture and of creation, I do not find any disharmony in understanding the serpent to have been an actual beast under Satan's influence. In fact, it accords very well with Yahweh's first commandment to the man and woman to "subdue the beasts and rule over them," a commandment that has both a literal and a spiritual application.

As far as Bullinger's claim that believing the serpent to be a beast opens up the Biblical account to "*the jeers of the infidel, the opposition of the critics, and the stumbling of the weak in faith,*" I would counter that Christians should never permit scoffers to influence that which they accept as the truths of God, no matter how fantastic these truths appear. Is a talking serpent any more incredible to the carnal mind than the plagues of Egypt, the worldwide flood of Noah, the sun tarrying an entire day in the sky at Joshua's plea, or reversing its course in answer to King Hezekiah's passionate prayer, the prophet Jonah spending three days in the belly of a great fish, a virgin giving birth, or the dead rising to life again? Would not the same infidels and critics protest that Balaam's donkey could not have spoken with him? That the Bible declares many things to be true that are supernatural in nature, or contrary to the normal experience of man and creation, is part of its inherent character. The apostle Paul declared:

I Corinthians 2:14

But a natural man does not accept the things of the Spirit of God; for they are foolishness to him, and he cannot understand them, because they are spiritually appraised.

I would share somewhat in defense of the serpent being an actual beast. We do not know what the capability of animals were before the fall of man. Without question the powers of every created thing on earth was diminished in the fall of man. The apostle Paul speaks of the effects of man's original sin in the following words.

Romans 8:19-22

For the anxious longing of the creation waits eagerly for the revealing of the sons of God. For the creation was subjected to *futility*, not of its own will, but because of Him who subjected it, in hope that the creation itself also will be set free from its slavery to corruption into the freedom of the glory of the children of God. For we know that the whole creation groans and suffers the pains of childbirth together until now.

The Greek word translated as “futility,” or as “vanity” in the KJV Bible, is “mataiotes.” *Strong’s Concordance* defines this word as “inutility,” which itself means “a lack of ability or usefulness.” Mankind losing the power of an immortal life was not the only consequence of his sin. Yahweh in His mercy chose to lessen the powers of man and of the creation that sin would not have such a devastating and powerful impact. Scientists today have postulated that man uses no more than 10% of his brain capacity. If man’s powers had not been diminished, humanity would surely have wrought far worse things than nuclear bombs, manufactured plagues, and extermination camps. It is quite plausible that the animals also suffered a great diminishment in their abilities as well, perhaps even losing the power of speech.

Although such possibilities cannot be proven, we are told plainly that the animals changed in a very dramatic (one could even say “supernatural”) manner after mankind sinned. Prior to the sin of Adam every animal was herbivorous. God gave them only the plants of the field for their food.



Carnivores

Genesis 1:30

“And to every beast of the earth and to every bird of the sky and to every thing that moves on the earth which has life, I have given every green plant for food.”

There are a great many things that must change in an animal’s body for it to transform from an herbivore into an omnivore or carnivore. There are changes in teeth and claws, changes in enzymes that must be released into the digestive tract, changes in the length of the large and small intestines, differences in the amount of uric acid and other agents released into the body to aid in breaking down proteins into amino acids, differences in liver function, etc.. If all of these things changed in the animals that became carnivorous after the fall of man, it is not too difficult to imagine that animals may have varied in other significant ways before sin entered the creation. Keep in mind that animals were also immortal, for there was no death on the earth until man transgressed.

When Yahshua establishes His kingdom on the earth, we will once again see the animals return to a plant based diet.

Isaiah 11:6-9

And the wolf will dwell with the lamb, and the leopard will lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little boy will lead them. Also the cow and the bear will graze; Their young will lie down together; And the lion will eat straw like the ox. And the nursing child will play by the hole of the cobra, and the weaned child will put his hand on the viper's den. They will not hurt or destroy in all My holy mountain, for the earth will be full of the knowledge of Yahweh as the waters cover the sea.

One objection that Bullinger made is that the serpent does not actually eat dirt. The serpent has an appearance of doing so, for they constantly flick out their tongue as if sampling the air. This is in fact what they are doing, for the snake's sense of smell is in its tongue. Snakes, however, do not exist by eating dirt, at least not yet. Yahweh has declared that in the days to come when all animals return to a herbivorous diet, the serpent will alone be signaled out to eat dirt.

Isaiah 65:25

The wolf and the lamb shall graze together, and the lion shall eat straw like the ox; and dust shall be the serpent's food.

If we are to understand that the wolf grazing with the sheep is to be taken literally, and the lion is to eat straw like the ox, then we must be consistent in agreeing that the serpent's food will be the actual dust of the ground. Why is this beast signaled out for this punishment if the serpent that tempted Eve was only a figure of speech? I am inclined to disagree with Mr. Bullinger on this matter. He has, however, brought forth many insightful details from this Biblical account. He has demonstrated why the serpent is such an apt counterpart for the shining cherub known as Lucifer, the light bearer.

There has been some disagreement whether Lucifer is intended as a name, a title, or merely a description of that being described by the prophet Isaiah.

Isaiah 14:12

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning!
KJV

I cannot answer the matter, but it seems hardly to matter. The word "heylel" in Hebrew is translated as "Lucifer," "morning star," "star of the morning," and "shining one," depending on the Bible version one is reading. They all accord well with the meaning of nachash, the Hebrew word for serpent which Bullinger has informed us means "a shining one." I fully concur with Bullinger that it was an angelic being of great power and wisdom that deceived Eve and enticed Adam in the garden. Yet, I would allow for the possibility (I would say "probability") that Satan accomplished his temptation through an agent of his choosing, a beast that bears many symbolic similarities to his own character.

Bullinger provides further information in *The Companion Bible* in the notes associated with Genesis

chapter 3. One thing Bullinger had an eye for was patterns in the textual layout of the Scriptures. He has demonstrated that the entire Bible contains repeating patterns of a very noteworthy character. We can at times infer various facts and details as we consider these patterns. Bullinger has shown that the first 24 verses of chapter 3 of Genesis contain a remarkable pattern.

Genesis 3:1-24 THE FALL **(Introversion and Alternation)**

E| 1-5 The Nachash: procuring man's death, in Adam

F| 6 The Tree of Knowledge. Eating of it.

G| f| 7-. Effect on both: the man and the woman.

g| -7. Human provision. man-made aprons.

H| 8-12. God's inquiry of the man.

I| 13. God's inquiry of the woman.

K| 14. Sentence on the Nachash.

K| 15. Promise of the Seed.

I| 16. God's sentence on the woman.

H| 17-19. God's sentence on the man.

G| f| 20. Effect on both: the man and the woman.

g| 21. Divine provision. God-made coats.

F| 22-24. The Tree of Life. Expulsion from it.

E| 24. The Cherubim: preserving man's life, in Christ.

As you study the pattern above you will note that a mirror image is formed where items mentioned in the first part of this passage have corresponding counterparts in the latter part of the passage. I would draw your attention specifically to the first item labeled "E."

The Nachash: procuring man's death in Adam

The Cherubim: preserving man's life, in Christ.

Keep in mind that "nachash" is both the Hebrew for "serpent," and for "a shining one." Thus, this word speaks of both the beast and the heavenly being we call a cherub (plural cherubim). Observe the parallels between the Nachash in verses 1-5 and the Cherubim in verse 24. This remarkable parallelism lends support to the belief that Satan is that cherub described in the 28th chapter of Ezekiel.

Ezekiel 28:13-14

You were in Eden, the garden of God... You were the anointed cherub who covers...

In the first 24 verses of Genesis 3 we observe the following comparisons/contrasts.

- Satan, as the first of the cherubim mentioned in Genesis chapter 3, invites mankind to violate Yahweh's commandment.

- The cherubim in verse 24 stand in the way of man to prevent him from violating Yahweh's commandment.
- Satan, as the first of the cherubim entices Adam to eat from the fruit of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.
- The cherubim of verse 24 block the way before Adam, hindering him from eating of the fruit of the tree of life.
- The result of the first cherub's actions was that death immediately began working in the creation.
- The result of the last cherubim's actions was the future promise of the end of death and an entrance into eternal life in Christ.

A further argument in favor of Satan having acted through an actual serpent is that the things Yahweh spoke as a curse on the serpent are true of the beast in a physical sense even as they are true of Satan in a spiritual sense. The serpent does crawl on its belly. The serpent does seem to lick up the dust, and one day dust will be its only food. There is enmity between humanity and serpents, especially the venomous varieties. All of these things are inexplicable if there was no actual beast present in the temptation of the man and woman.

Had Satan appeared as an anointed cherub in all his glory in the garden, his aspect would truly have been impressive and his enticements persuasive. In such a case, I think Yahweh would have warned Adam to beware of cherubim. Instead we find Yahweh exhorting Adam to "subdue the beasts and rule over them." Such a commandment would have been sufficient had Yahweh known that Satan would attempt to approach the man and woman through one of the beasts God had created. If some are inclined to think otherwise, I am at peace.

Having addressed the identity of the serpent, and the heavenly being that was influencing/controlling it, we can now turn our attention to identifying what type of being Satan was and is.



Replica of the Ark of the Covenant

Ezekiel identifies Satan as "the anointed cherub who covers." If you were to do a search for images

of cherubs on the Internet you would be met with an abundance of illustrations of winged babies. Such is the vanity of human thought. The Bible conveys an altogether different image of a cherub. Cherubim were magnificent winged beings of an angelic order who were possessors of great power, wisdom, and beauty. When Yahweh spoke to Moses and gave him instructions to build the tabernacle in the wilderness, along with all of its furnishings, He spoke to Moses in this way.

Exodus 25:8-22

And let them construct a sanctuary for Me, that I may dwell among them. ***According to all that I am going to show you, as the pattern of the tabernacle and the pattern of all its furniture, just so you shall construct it.*** And they shall construct an ark of acacia wood two and a half cubits long, and one and a half cubits wide, and one and a half cubits high. And you shall overlay it with pure gold, inside and out you shall overlay it, and you shall make a gold molding around it... And you shall make a mercy seat of pure gold, two and a half cubits long and one and a half cubits wide. ***And you shall make two cherubim of gold***, make them of hammered work at the two ends of the mercy seat. ***And make one cherub at one end and one cherub at the other end; you shall make the cherubim of one piece with the mercy seat at its two ends. And the cherubim shall have their wings spread upward, covering the mercy seat with their wings and facing one another; the faces of the cherubim are to be turned toward the mercy seat.*** And you shall put the mercy seat on top of the ark, and in the ark you shall put the testimony which I shall give to you. ***And there I will meet with you; and from above the mercy seat, from between the two cherubim which are upon the ark of the testimony***, I will speak to you about all that I will give you in commandment for the sons of Israel.

The apostle Paul gives us this further insight into the archetype that served as the pattern for all that Moses was shown.

Hebrews 8:4-6

Now if He were on earth, He would not be a priest at all, since there are those who offer the gifts according to the Law; ***who serve a copy and shadow of the heavenly things, just as Moses was warned by God when he was about to erect the tabernacle; for, "See," He says, "that you make all things according to the pattern which was shown you on the mountain."***

Those things that Moses was instructed to build were patterned after heavenly things. In the heavens there are living cherubim. In the pattern Moses was shown, the presence of Yahweh appeared "between the two cherubim." It was from this position that Yahweh would communicate to His creation. We can infer from this that in the heavens Yahweh also is flanked by covering cherubim. It is here that He chooses to manifest His glory and to make known His will in the heavens.

When David was later given the pattern for the temple that his son Solomon would build, angels and cherubim were infused throughout the design. In the innermost chamber, the Holy of Holies where the Ark of the Covenant was kept, two magnificent cherubim were constructed to tower over it.

I Kings 6:23-33

Also in the inner sanctuary he made ***two cherubim*** of olive wood, each ten cubits high. And five cubits was the one wing of the cherub and five cubits the other wing of the cherub; from the end of one wing to the end of the other wing were ten cubits. And the other cherub was ten cubits; both the

cherubim were of the same measure and the same form. The height of the one cherub was ten cubits, and so was the other cherub. And he placed the cherubim in the midst of the inner house, and the wings of the cherubim were spread out, so that the wing of the one was touching the one wall, and the wing of the other cherub was touching the other wall. So their wings were touching each other in the center of the house. He also overlaid the cherubim with gold. Then he carved all the walls of the house round about with carved engravings of cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers, inner and outer sanctuaries. And he overlaid the floor of the house with gold, inner and outer sanctuaries. And for the entrance of the inner sanctuary he made doors of olive wood, the lintel and five-sided doorposts. So he made two doors of olive wood, and he carved on them carvings of cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers, and overlaid them with gold; and he spread the gold on the cherubim and on the palm trees.

The cherubim in the Holy of Holies were approximately fifteen feet high and their combined wingspan was thirty feet. Overlaid in pure gold, they were truly magnificent and awe inspiring to behold. We get an idea of the glorious appearance of these created beings as we read the description set forth by the prophet Ezekiel.

Ezekiel 28:12-18

“Thus says Yahweh God, ‘You had the seal of perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty. You were in Eden, the garden of God; Every precious stone was your covering: The ruby, the topaz, and the diamond; The beryl, the onyx, and the jasper; The lapis lazuli, the turquoise, and the emerald; And the gold, the workmanship of your settings and sockets, was in you. On the day that you were created they were prepared. You were the anointed cherub who covers, and I placed you there. You were on the holy mountain of God; You walked in the midst of the stones of fire. You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created, until unrighteousness was found in you. By the abundance of your trade (slander - Hebrew *rakal*) you were internally filled with violence, and you sinned; Therefore I have cast you as profane from the mountain of God. And I have destroyed you, O covering cherub, from the midst of the stones of fire. Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty; You corrupted your wisdom by reason of your splendor. I cast you to the ground; I put you before kings, that they may see you. By the multitude of your iniquities, in the unrighteousness of your trade (slander - Hebrew *rakal*), you profaned your sanctuaries. Therefore I have brought fire from the midst of you; It has consumed you, and I have turned you to ashes on the earth in the eyes of all who see you.’”

This passage is traditionally understood to be a description of Satan in his heavenly office as an anointed cherub who covers. The passage mentions him in association with sanctuaries even as we see the cherubim in the Tabernacle of Moses and in Solomon’s Temple standing in their sanctuaries (literally - a holy place). For this being to be described in a heavenly setting among the holy angels as having a visage of great beauty and splendor reveals what a truly remarkable sight that he was. Yet, the very glory that adorned him became the cause of his downfall as conceit and pride began to take over his heart.

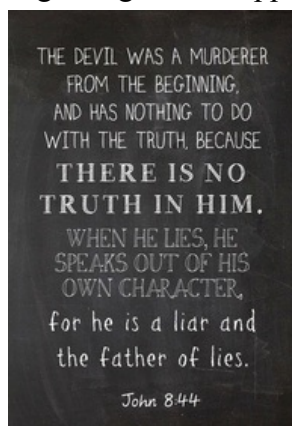
I Timothy 3:2-6

An overseer, then, must be above reproach,... and not a new convert, lest he become conceited and fall into the condemnation incurred by the devil.

There is a popular teaching being spread at this hour that asserts that Satan did not fall into sin, but that he was created evil by God. I find this to be a very disturbing teaching, for it maligns the character of Yahweh. This teaching denies that the passage above from Ezekiel is referring to Satan, yet those who hold to this view have the testimony of the apostle Paul to overcome. He clearly speaks of the devil *becoming* conceited and *falling* into condemnation. The testimony of Ezekiel is surely true. Of this anointed cherub who covers, the prophet states, “You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created, *until* unrighteousness was found in you.”

Sadly, some men with valuable insights into other truths hidden to many, have embraced this aberrant view of Satan, suggesting that he was created evil from the beginning. Among these men are J. Preston Eby and Bill Britton, both of whom are men who have published teachings that have been of much encouragement and insight to myself and others. Yet, even as the apostle Peter fell into error in one area that elicited the public reproof of the apostle Paul, we must be ever vigilant to test all that we hear, even when it comes from men who bear an obvious anointing of God and are appointed as ministers by His Son.

Common to the teachings of these men who promote the idea that Satan was created evil from the beginning is a misapprehension of a few select Scriptures that they all cite.



John 8:44

You are of your father the devil, and you want to do the desires of your father. ***He was a murderer from the beginning***, and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. Whenever he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own nature; for he is a liar, and the father of lies.

The phrase “He was a murderer from the beginning” is used as support of the teaching that Satan was created as an evil being. In an earlier chapter I spoke of the danger of wrongly identifying beginnings in the Bible. What those making this claim about Satan being created evil have done is to wrongly identify what the phrase “from the beginning” is referring to. Christ is NOT referring to Satan’s beginning, but to murder’s beginning. This can be seen as one compares this expression to the parallel statement where it is declared that Satan “is a liar, and the father of lies.”

Yahshua is using the example of a father to demonstrate Satan’s relationship to lying. A father is the source of the offspring that emanate from within him. A father is the beginning and source of the generations that follow him. Implicit within the idea of fatherhood is origination and beginnings.

Satan is in this sense the father of lying and murder. They emanated from him, and found their origination with him. Satan was NOT created as a liar and murderer. Christ is saying that lying and murder originated with Satan. He was the beginning of these evils, for they first appeared in Satan, and have spread to the creation through him.

To defend against the objection that naturally arises from claiming that God created a being that was evil in its very inception, these men cite another verse whose meaning is similarly misapprehended.

Isaiah 45:6-7

I am the LORD, and there is none else. I form the light, and create darkness: ***I make peace, and create evil***: I the LORD do all these things.

KJV

This passage is used to support the contention that Yahweh creates evil, and by this moral evil is implied. This is NOT what this Scripture verse is declaring. Throughout the Old Testament, a form of Hebrew poetry is employed. Where it is present it provides a great service in helping the reader to understand the original intent of the author. Hebrew poetry is not like English poetry where rhyming words are a common characteristic. Instead, the poetic nature of the Hebrew writing was demonstrated through the use of parallelism. Lines, or clauses, occur in pairs. These pairs either restate the same or similar idea, or they express an opposite thought.

Where some ancient Hebrew word has been obscure and its meaning lost, Bible scholars have often been able to ascertain the meaning of the word when it is used in this Hebrew poetic form. They merely need to compare the clause an unknown word appears in to its parallel phrase and determine whether the phrase was meant to convey the same idea, or a contrasting thought. We can use the same principle to establish what the prophet Isaiah was intending to convey in the two verses above. Let us examine what is set forth.

I form the light, and create darkness

I make peace, and create evil

Looking at the first line we can see that what is being used is the Hebrew poetic form that uses contrasts. Light and darkness are contrasted with one another. We can therefore infer that peace and evil are also being contrasted with one another, for these are parallel statements. The Hebrew word for peace found here is “shalom” which *Strong’s Concordance* defines as: *safe, i.e. (figuratively) well, happy, friendly; also (abstractly) welfare, i.e. health, prosperity, peace*. None of these things are the opposite of sin, or of moral evil.

The Hebrew word shalom is being contrasted with the Hebrew word “rah.” The KJV translators have rendered this word in a myriad of ways, including the following: *adversity, affliction, bad, calamity, distress, evil, grief, harm, heavy, sorrow, and trouble*. We must ask, “Did they choose the correct word to contrast with shalom in Isaiah 45:7?” Yahweh is saying, I create “Shalom” (*health, prosperity and peace*), and I create the opposite of these things which would be *affliction, poverty, and distress*.

This passage is ***not*** saying that Yahweh creates moral evil, or sin. It is a terrible corruption of the

Word of God to suggest it is doing so. Following are two renderings of this same passage from the New American Standard, and the New King James Version of the Bible, both of which have done a better job of conveying the correct meaning of this passage.

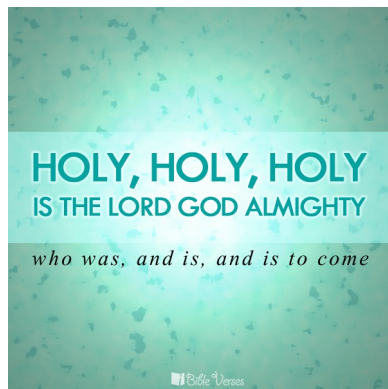
Isaiah 45:6-7

I am the LORD, and there is no other,
The One forming light and creating darkness,
Causing well-being and creating *calamity*;
I am the LORD who does all these.
NASU

Isaiah 45:6-7

I am the LORD, and there is no other;
I form the light and create darkness,
I make peace and create *calamity*;
I, the LORD, do all these things.
NKJV

It is great error to teach that Yahweh is the author of moral evil. The claim that Yahweh created Satan evil in his original form is false. Yahweh is holy and righteous in all His ways.



Revelation 4:8

And the four living creatures, each one of them having six wings, are full of eyes around and within; and day and night they do not cease to say, "Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord God, the Almighty, who was and who is and who is to come."

Leviticus 20:26

"Thus you are to be holy to Me, for I Yahweh am holy; and I have set you apart from the peoples to be Mine."

Psalms 99:9

Exalt Yahweh our God and worship at His holy hill, for holy is Yahweh our God.

Psalms 145:17

Yahweh is righteous in all His ways...

I Peter 1:14-16

As obedient children, do not be conformed to the former lusts which were yours in your ignorance, but like the Holy One who called you, be holy yourselves also in all your behavior; because it is written, "YOU SHALL BE HOLY, FOR I AM HOLY."

It is antagonistic to Yahweh's nature for Him to create something that is profane, obscene, or sinful. The Bible tells us that God is not the author of sin.

James 1:13-17

Let no one say when he is tempted, "I am being tempted by God"; for God cannot be tempted by evil, and He Himself does not tempt anyone... Do not be deceived, my beloved brethren. Every good thing bestowed and every perfect gift is from above, coming down from the Father of lights, with whom there is no variation, or shifting shadow.

If Yahweh would not tempt any creature to sin, how much more would He not create a being to be sinful in its initial condition? In the opening chapter of the Bible we see the pattern for all that Yahweh creates. Of all that He creates He can testify "It is good." In an earlier chapter it was mentioned that God spoke the creation into existence. Yahshua gives testimony to that which comes forth from inside a person.

Matthew 12:34-35

"You brood of vipers, how can you, being evil, speak what is good? ***For the mouth speaks out of that which fills the heart. The good man brings out of his good treasure what is good; and the evil man brings out of his evil treasure what is evil.***"

Seeing that God is the Father of lights, which is to say that He gives birth only to that which is holy and righteous, and that in Him is no variation or shifting shadow, how could He speak into creation that which is morally evil?

This leads us to the conundrum of trying to resolve how moral evil entered the creation if Yahweh did not create it. Some years back I came across a fictional story that provides some insight into this matter. I have found it to be helpful in conveying this truth to others.

Does evil exist?

The university professor challenged his students with this question. Did God create everything that exists? A student bravely replied, "Yes, he did!"

"God created everything? The professor asked.

"Yes sir," the student replied.

The professor answered, "If God created everything, then God created evil since evil exists and, according to the principle that our works define who we are, then God is evil." The student became quiet before such an answer. The professor was quite pleased with himself and boasted to the

students that he had proven once more that the Christian faith was a myth.

Another student raised his hand and said, "Can I ask you a question professor?"

"Of course," replied the professor.

The student stood up and asked, "Professor, does cold exist?"

"What kind of question is this? Of course it exists. Have you never been cold?" The students snickered at the young man's question.

The young man replied, "In fact sir, cold does not exist. According to the laws of physics, what we consider cold is in reality the absence of heat. Every body or object is susceptible to study when it has or transmits energy, and heat is a measure of this energy transfer. Absolute zero (-460 degrees F) is the total absence of heat; all matter becomes inert and incapable of reaction at that temperature. Cold does not exist. We have created this word to describe how we feel if we have no heat."

The student continued, "Professor, does darkness exist?"

The professor responded, "Of course it does."

The student replied, "Once again you are wrong sir, darkness does not exist either. Darkness is in reality the absence of light. Light can be studied and measured, but not darkness. We can use Newton's prism to break light into many colors and study the various wavelengths of each color. You cannot measure darkness. How can you know how dark a certain space is? You measure the amount of light present. Isn't this correct? Darkness is a term used by man to describe what happens when there is no light present."

Finally the young man asked the professor, "Sir, does evil exist?"

Now uncertain, the professor responded, "Of course, as I have already said. We see it every day. It is in the daily example of man's inhumanity to man. It is in the multitude of crime and violence everywhere in the world. These manifestations are nothing else but evil."

To this the student replied, "Evil does not exist sir, anymore than darkness or cold exist. Evil is simply the absence of God. God did not create evil. Evil is the result of the creation turning away from God. When God is absent in man, the angels, or any part of the creation, then we describe the absence of all that is good in God with the word evil. Evil is like the cold that comes when there is no heat, or the darkness that comes when there is no light. Evil comes when there is no presence of God."

The professor sat down.

The groundwork has now been laid to speak to you of how Satan fell into sin and became darkened in his understanding. We have observed in the types of the Tabernacle and the Temple that the

covering cherubim were created to stand in the presence of the glory of God. As long as the cherubim looked to the glory of God they would be filled with light. In the book of Revelation we read of four living creatures that behold the glory of God at all times. They continually exclaim:

Revelation 4:8

"Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord God, the Almighty, who was and who is and who is to come."

Had Satan maintained his focus upon God he would have been filled with the goodness and light of Yahweh. Yet, the prophet Ezekiel reveals to us that this anointed cherub who covers began to set his focus upon his own splendor, beauty, and wisdom. As he considered himself, he turned his focus away from Yahweh. The result of turning away from the source of all light is darkness. Satan became darkened in his understanding and began to worship the creature (his own magnificence) rather than the Creator (Romans 1:25).

We observe a Biblical type of the fall of Satan in the life of Absalom, the son of King David. The parallels are profound. Even as David was a sovereign ruler, so we see that Yahweh is THE sovereign ruler. Yet even as David's son sought to ascend to the throne, and to supplant his father, so too do we read of Satan seeking to ascend above the position appointed to him.

Isaiah 14:12-15

"How you have fallen from heaven, O star of the morning, son of the dawn! You have been cut down to the earth, you who have weakened the nations! But you said in your heart, 'I will ascend to heaven; I will raise my throne above the stars of God, and I will sit on the mount of assembly in the recesses of the north. I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High.' Nevertheless you will be thrust down to Sheol, to the recesses of the pit."

Absalom, like Satan, was renowned for his physical beauty.

II Samuel 14:25-26

Now in all Israel was no one as handsome as Absalom, so highly praised; from the sole of his foot to the crown of his head there was no defect in him. And when he cut the hair of his head (and it was at the end of every year that he cut it, for it was heavy on him so he cut it), he weighed the hair of his head at 200 shekels by the king's weight.

Add to this the fact that the sons of the king were arrayed in rich garments, and Absalom was truly an impressive sight to behold. That Absalom paid too much attention to his own physical appearance was evident in the spectacle he made annually of cutting his hair and weighing it. Absalom became conceited, and began to desire for himself that which God had not appointed to him. Absalom surely knew that the throne of his father David had been promised to Solomon, but he conspired to take the throne for himself.



Absalom Stealing the Hearts of the Men of Israel

II Samuel 15:1-6

Now it came about after this that Absalom provided for himself a chariot and horses, and fifty men as runners before him. And Absalom used to rise early and stand beside the way to the gate; and it happened that when any man had a suit to come to the king for judgment, Absalom would call to him and say, "From what city are you?" And he would say, "Your servant is from one of the tribes of Israel." Then Absalom would say to him, "See, your claims are good and right, but no man listens to you on the part of the king." Moreover, Absalom would say, "Oh that one would appoint me judge in the land, then every man who has any suit or cause could come to me, and I would give him justice." And it happened that when a man came near to prostrate himself before him, he would put out his hand and take hold of him and kiss him. And in this manner Absalom dealt with all Israel who came to the king for judgment; so Absalom stole away the hearts of the men of Israel.

In the passage from Ezekiel chapter 28 that I cited previously, I included the parenthetical note that the Hebrew word translated as “trade” also bears the meaning of “slander.”

By the abundance of your trade (slander - Hebrew rakal) you were internally filled with violence, and you sinned; Therefore I have cast you as profane from the mountain of God.

The Hebrew word “rakal” means “to go about from one to another for the purpose of trade or gossip/slander.” The Bible reveals that Satan was able to gather many angels to side with him in the same way that Absalom stole away the hearts of the men of Israel. The method both Absalom and Satan used was slander. Absalom gave out an evil and false report of his father David even as Satan gave out an evil and false report of Yahweh. Additionally, as Absalom’s actions resulted in war, a war that he lost at the cost of his life, so too do we read that Satan’s actions resulted in war in heaven and his being cast down to the earth and consumed in fire. Before the final judgment of God is fully executed upon this rebellious angelic being, Satan will be cast down and imprisoned a total of three times. Three is a number denoting divine completion.

The first time Satan was cast down and imprisoned was upon his initial rebellion which is recorded

in Ezekiel 28 and Isaiah 14. This occurred prior to the creation of man during the initial creation of the earth. It was then that Satan was cast down to the earth and the world was made formless and void and sealed in darkness. How long the earth lay in this state and Satan remained in confinement, we are not told. Yet the time came when Yahweh released Satan from his prison and refashioned the world in six days as it is recorded in the opening chapter of the Bible.

Satan will know a second judgment at the end of this age, before the millennial reign of Christ begins.

Revelation 12:7-9

And there was war in heaven, Michael and his angels waging war with the dragon. And the dragon and his angels waged war, and they were not strong enough, and there was no longer a place found for them in heaven. And the great dragon was thrown down, the serpent of old who is called the devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world; he was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him.

Revelation 20:1-3

And I saw an angel coming down from heaven, having the key of the abyss and a great chain in his hand. And he laid hold of the dragon, the serpent of old, who is the devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years, and threw him into the abyss, and shut it and sealed it over him, so that he should not deceive the nations any longer, until the thousand years were completed; after these things he must be released for a short time.

Satan will once again be released for a brief time from his imprisonment. He will gather the nations to a final war against Christ and will be thoroughly defeated and cast into the lake of fire.

Revelation 20:7-10

And when the thousand years are completed, Satan will be released from his prison, and will come out to deceive the nations which are in the four corners of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together for the war; the number of them is like the sand of the seashore. And they came up on the broad plain of the earth and surrounded the camp of the saints and the beloved city, and fire came down from heaven and devoured them. And the devil who deceived them was thrown into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are also; and they will be tormented day and night to the age of the ages.

Thus will end the rebellious career of this anointed cherub.

The Prince of This World



Satan in Council by John Martin (1831)

The Scriptures reveal that there are spiritual authorities behind the human authorities mankind recognizes on the earth. These spiritual forces remain largely hidden, concealed even to the knowledge of most Christian men and women. Like puppet masters in a skillfully executed play, these angelic rulers control the drama taking place on earth from behind the scenes. Luke, the evangelist, tells us of the encounter between Christ and Satan in the wilderness at the very start of Yahshua's ministry.

Luke 4:5-8

Then the devil, taking Him up on a high mountain, showed Him all the kingdoms of the world in a moment of time. And the devil said to Him, "All this domain I will give You, and their glory; for this has been delivered to me, and I give it to whomever I wish. Therefore, if You will worship before me, all will be Yours." And Yahshua answered and said to him, "Get behind Me, Satan! For it is written, 'You shall worship the Lord your God, and Him only you shall serve.'"

It is noteworthy that Christ did not accuse Satan of lying. He did not declare that the devil had no authority over the nations, or that the kingdoms of this world were not his to give. Yahshua did not dispute Satan's power and authority over this world at all. The Son of God's rebuke was occasioned only by the unrighteousness of suggesting that He should bow before the creature, rather than the Creator. In numerous places throughout the gospels, we observe Christ affirming that Satan has been given ruling authority over the world.

John 12:31

Now is the judgment of this world: now shall *the prince of this world* be cast out.

John 14:30

Hereafter I will not talk much with you: for *the prince of this world* cometh, and hath nothing in me.

John 16:11

Of judgment, because *the prince of this world* is judged.

Repeatedly, Yahshua referred to Satan as “the prince of this world.” In the Greek language in which the New Testament was originally written, the word that appears in English as “prince” is “archon.” This Greek word means to be first in rank, or place. Christ was testifying that Satan occupies the chief seat of authority over this world. A question that should be answered is “How did Satan come to receive this authority?”

Some have proposed that Satan gained this authority over the world when Adam yielded his will in obedience to the serpent in the garden of Eden. There is some truth to this. In the following words, the apostle Paul declares a spiritual principle that is at work in the creation.

Romans 6:16

Do you not know that when you present yourselves to someone as slaves for obedience, you are slaves of the one whom you obey...

When Adam chose to obey Satan rather than God, he consigned himself, and all who would be born of his seed, to subjugation to Satan. Yahweh had given to man sovereign authority over the earth. The terrestrial world with all that grew out of its soil, all that moved upon its surface, all that swam in the seas, and all that flew in the heavens, was placed under the authority of man.

Genesis 1:26

Then God said, “Let Us make man in Our image, according to Our likeness; and let them rule over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the sky and over the cattle and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth.”

Genesis 2:15

Then Yahweh God took the man and put him into the garden of Eden to cultivate it and keep it.

This world was placed under the dominion of the man. Yet man did not keep it. By yielding himself to obey the beast, rather than subduing the beast and ruling over it, man came to be ruled by another. Adam’s sovereignty over this world was forfeit. Adam became a slave to sin, and the creation fell under the curse of sin and death. The Bible tells us that Satan holds the power of death, and by exercise of this power he has held humanity captive through fear.

Hebrews 2:14-15

Since then the children share in flesh and blood, [Yahshua] likewise also partook of the same, that through death He might render powerless him who has the power of death, that is, the devil; and might deliver those who through fear of death were subject to slavery all their lives.

Some Bible translations render this statement in the past tense as if to say that Satan “had” the power of death. In the Greek, however, the word denotes a present, ongoing, action. Young’s Literal Translation of the Bible provides the following interpretation.

Hebrews 2:14

That through death he might destroy him *having* the power of death - that is, the devil...



Satan continues to yield the power of death in this world, and by it he keeps multitudes in bondage through fear of death. The Christian's victory is NOT that Satan can no longer touch his/her life, for Satan has killed untold millions of Christ's disciples who ended their lives as martyrs. Our victory is that we no longer have any need to fear death. The apostle Paul declared in another place:

Philippians 1:21-24

For to me, to live is Christ, and to die is gain. But if I am to live on in the flesh, this will mean fruitful labor for me; and I do not know which to choose. But I am hard-pressed from both directions, having the desire to depart and be with Christ, for that is very much better; yet to remain on in the flesh is more necessary for your sake.

The Christian who has lived their life in obedience to God, pursuing a course of righteousness in this world, has nothing to fear in death. Indeed, the person who has lived their life as an overcomer in Christ has much to look forward to.

Romans 8:18

For I consider that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory that is to be revealed in us.

In Hebrews 2:14, where it speaks of Satan having the *power* of death, the Greek word translated as "power" is "kratos." E.W. Bullinger, in *The Companion Study Bible*, defines "kratos" in the following manner.

***Kratos**=strength (as exerted); power put forth with effect, and in government: from which we have the English [word] theocracy, government by God; aristocracy, government by the best; democracy, government by the people.*

The "cracy" portion of each of these English words is derived from the Greek "kratos." We see in each of these words there is a relationship to government and authority. Satan has the governmental authority of death on this planet. I do not say that he has authority of "life and death," for Satan is not

a life-giver. He can only destroy that which God has animated and imbued with life.

Satan's power to enslave men is closely related to his authority to take life away from humanity. This power is broken in Christ, for Yahshua demonstrated that death is not an end. What Satan kills, God is able to animate again. The Son of God though slain, rose again to newness of life, a life that Satan can nevermore touch.

Acts 2:24

"And God raised Him up again, putting an end to the agony of death, since it was impossible for Him to be held in its power."

The grave could not hold the Son of God. Neither can it hold those who are born again of Christ's seed. Though it is appointed to all men "once to die," the Christian has the great hope of being raised again to an immortal life.

I Corinthians 15:52-57

In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trumpet; for the trumpet will sound, and the dead will be raised imperishable, and we shall be changed. For this perishable must put on the imperishable, and this mortal must put on immortality. But when this perishable will have put on the imperishable, and this mortal will have put on immortality, then will come about the saying that is written, "Death is swallowed up in victory. O death, where is your victory? O death, where is your sting?" The sting of death is sin, and the power of sin is the law; but thanks be to God, who gives us the victory through our Lord Yahshua Christ.

If Adam had not sinned in the garden, presenting himself to obedience to Satan, he would not have known death and Satan would not hold the power of death over mankind. Yahweh warned Adam not to eat of the forbidden fruit:

Genesis 2:17

"For in the day that you eat from it you shall surely die."

There is a popular song by the singer Billy Joel that states, "Only the good die young." This is not true in an absolute sense, but it does seem this way at times. In this age we see that wicked men are given the rule, wealth, fame, and glory of this world. Satan rewards those who are his servants by giving them those material things that pertain to this terrestrial realm. King Solomon lamented about the unfairness of life, for it seemed that the wicked prospered, while the righteous suffered.

Ecclesiastes 7:15

I have seen everything during my lifetime of futility; there is a righteous man who perishes in his righteousness, and there is a wicked man who prolongs his life in his wickedness.

Asaph, a Levite and singer in the time of King David, also pondered this phenomena. It seemed an evil thing to him that the wicked should prosper in this world while the righteous should be afflicted.

Psalms 73:3-16

For I was envious of the arrogant, as I saw the prosperity of the wicked. For there are no pains in their death; And their body is fat. They are not in trouble as other men; Nor are they plagued like mankind. Therefore pride is their necklace; The garment of violence covers them. Their eye bulges from fatness; The imaginations of their heart run riot. They mock, and wickedly speak of oppression; They speak from on high. They have set their mouth against the heavens, and their tongue parades through the earth... And they say, "How does God know? And is there knowledge with the Most High?" Behold, these are the wicked; And always at ease, they have increased in wealth. Surely in vain I have kept my heart pure, and washed my hands in innocence; For I have been stricken all day long, and chastened every morning... When I pondered to understand this, it was troublesome in my sight.

This world is truly an unjust place, for it is ruled over by the prince of darkness. He has corrupted all his ways. He rewards those who are wicked while persecuting the righteous. Such is the perverted condition of spiritual rule in this world that the apostle Paul declared, "If we have hoped in Christ in this life only, we are of all men most to be pitied" (I Corinthians 15:19). Paul knew much of suffering and injustice. He was frequently delivered over to punishments by the rulers of the nations, men who were given power by the prince of this world. Even as Pilate derived his authority from Satan to crucify Christ, so too did those who beat, scourged, and imprisoned the apostle Paul derive their authority from Satan. Yet, of this world authority this same apostle declares an astounding truth.

Romans 13:1

Let every person be in subjection to the governing authorities. For there is no authority except from God, and those which exist are established by God.

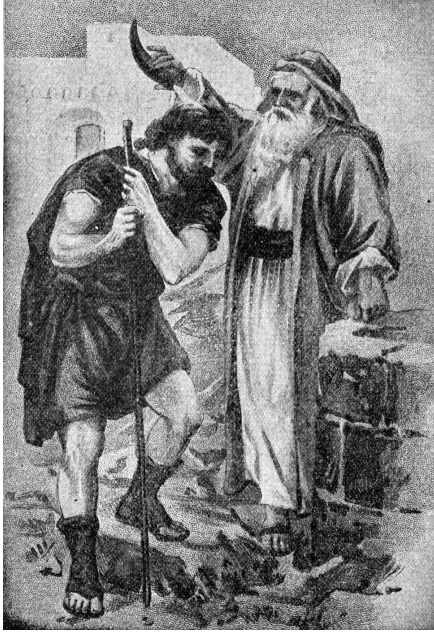
The apostle goes on to describe the purpose for which governors are given authority by God.

Romans 13:3-4

Do you want to have no fear of authority? Do what is good, and you will have praise from the same; for it is a minister of God to you for good. But if you do what is evil, be afraid; for it does not bear the sword for nothing; for it is a minister of God, an avenger who brings wrath upon the one who practices evil.

Yahweh has ordained authority to encourage the righteous and to punish the wicked. We know, however, that the rulers of this world frequently do just the opposite. Each ruler will give an account for the manner in which he exercised his authority. If they have upheld justice and righteousness they will receive praise from Yahweh. If they have acted corruptly, they will be punished. Nevertheless, they remain God's authority until such a time as Yahweh deposes them.

Accepting that these words of the apostle are true, it must be conceded that Satan's authority over this world is established by God. This is what I testified in an earlier chapter when I compared the career of King Saul to that of Satan. It was Yahweh who instructed the prophet Samuel to pour the oil of anointing over the head of Saul and declare him to be the first king of Israel. Saul was established by God. His authority existed because Yahweh had ordained it.



Samuel Anoints Saul as King

We observed that Saul's authority did not end when he began to act wickedly. Out of jealousy Saul attempted to kill David on multiple occasions. Saul slaughtered an entire village of priests. Saul took the wife of David and gave her to another man. Saul consulted with a medium. Saul failed to carry out the commandments of Yahweh when he was instructed to destroy a wicked people and all they possessed. Nevertheless, in the very midst of Saul's career of evil, David refused to lift his hand against Saul, for he recognized him as God's anointed.

This is a profound matter, and one that few Christians understand today. Satan occupies a position of authority that is not only recognized by God, but that was granted to him by God. Satan's authority is not solely the result of Adam bowing to him. Satan has been from the beginning an anointed cherub. He was created to occupy a very high office and has been entrusted with great authority. I do not doubt that the specific authority Yahweh entrusted to Satan pertained to his rule over the earth long before the time of Adam. (I will provide some scriptural evidence of this momentarily.)

Mankind knows very little of Satan's career before he became conceited and fell into sin. Humanity's first encounter with this anointed cherub was in the garden of Eden when he approached the man and the woman through the persona of the serpent. At that time Satan had already corrupted his ways. He came to tempt the man and woman to turn away from obedience to God and to transgress Yahweh's commandment.

Although Satan seeks to masquerade as an angel of light, and his human servants disguise themselves as workers of righteousness, his rule is one of darkness and evil. Nevertheless, Satan's rule and authority continues by the will of God. Like King Saul after judgment was pronounced upon him by the prophet Samuel, Satan stands condemned and the just reward for his evil deeds is assured. At this time the judgment has not yet been executed. Satan continues in his evil reign, promoting rebellion against God, rewarding wickedness, and persecuting the righteous. He knows, however, that the day

of judgment is fast approaching. Seeing that his time is shortened, Satan's vehemence is stirred to a greater rebellion against Yahweh, and his wrath is directed toward those who are servants of righteousness.

Revelation 12:12, 17

Woe to the earth and the sea, because the devil has come down to you, having great wrath, knowing that he has only a short time... And the dragon was enraged with the woman, and went off to make war with the rest of her offspring, who keep the commandments of God and hold to the testimony of Yahshua.

Do we not see in the governments of this world that the righteous are oppressed? Even in America, there is a growing antipathy toward those who keep the commandments of God and hold to the testimony of Yahshua. We are seeing Christian business owners characterized as bigots, and haters, because they agree with God that marriage is to be between a man and a woman and that homosexuality is sin. Similarly, those who defend life in the womb are labeled as radicals and placed on government watch lists.

Most Christians are blind to the ruling power behind the wicked policies of human governments. Many in America see nothing beyond the man who sits in the White House. They do not perceive that this man is the chosen servant of Satan, for it is Satan who gives the nations of the world to those whom he pleases.

Revelation 13:2

And the dragon (Satan, the devil) gave him his power and his throne and great authority.

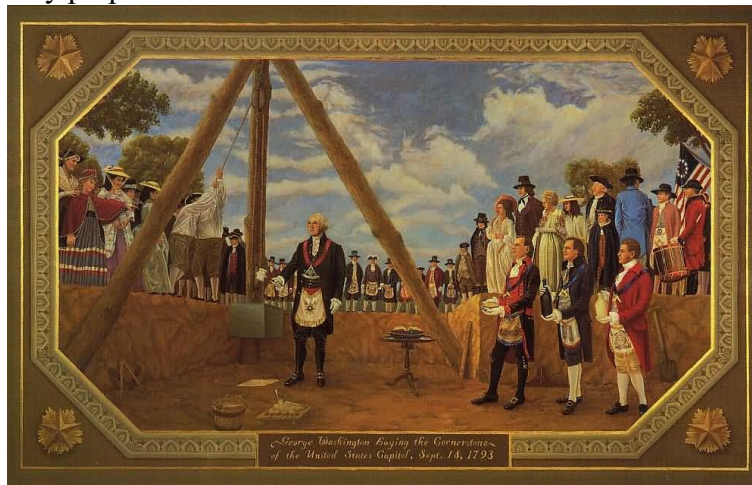


In the series *Dragon Flood* it was shown that America was founded by men under the inspiration of Lucifer. These men were predominantly Freemasons. The Headquarters of the American Revolution was the Green Dragon Tavern in Boston, owned by Freemasons. A Masonic lodge occupied the upper story of this building. The men who planned and carried out The Boston Tea Party were members of St. Andrew's Lodge of Freemasonry which met at the Green Dragon.

It was shown in that writing that every government building in Washington, D.C. was initiated with a Masonic cornerstone laying ceremony. This involved, in every instance as far back as George Washington, the offering of corn, oil, and wine, following the pattern of the Baal offerings of the Old Testament.

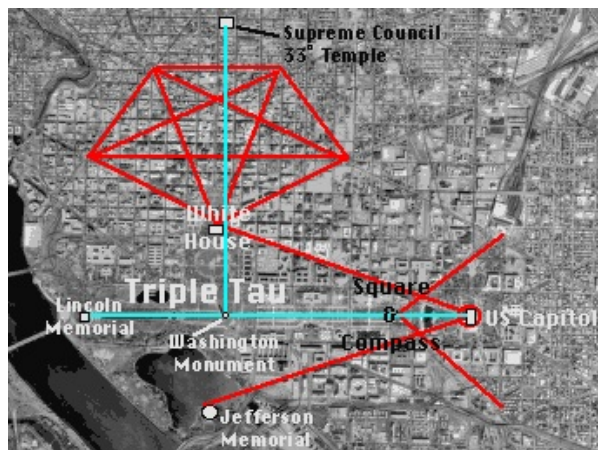
Hosea 2:8

For she did not know that I gave her corn, and wine, and oil, and multiplied her silver and gold, which they prepared for Baal.



George Washington in Masonic Attire at the Cornerstone Laying Ceremony for the U.S. Capitol

The capital of the nation, Washington, D.C., was laid out according to occult designs by Freemasons. The White House, the home of the President, is located with specific design to show forth the Luciferian control of the nation and the influence of Freemasonry as its guiding light.



Washington, D.C. Occult Street Plan

Note that the bottom point of the pentagram rests upon the White House. Thirteen blocks above the White House is the House of the Temple, the headquarters of Freemasonry in all of North America.

When one sees that this pentagram is actually a representation of Satan, they can discern the darkness of the governmental system in America.



There has always been a duality to the governments of this world. There are the human rulers that men recognize, and there are the spiritual forces of wickedness in high places that remain unseen. When we come to discern this duality, we are better able to understand why certain passages of Scripture speak at one moment of a human ruler, and at the next moment of an angelic authority. The two passages from Scripture that have traditionally been understood to be references to Satan (Ezekiel 28 and Isaiah 14) manifest this dual nature.

As the students of the Scriptures read over these two passages they observe that some things are plainly written of a human ruler. Other things are written of an angelic power. Then there are statements that apply equally to both. Some have erred by focusing on the statements that pertain to man and concluding that these passages have nothing to say of Satan. Others err in the other direction. As Christians we are admonished to “rightly divide the word of truth.”

It is actually a common feature of Hebrew poetry for a single passage to alternate between the subjects of its speech without giving any notice that a change has taken place. We find this occurring in some of the Messianic prophecies of the Old Testament, such as the following.

Psalms 22:1-18

To the Chief Musician. Set to "The Deer of the Dawn." A Psalm of David.

My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me? Why are You so far from helping Me, and from the words of My groaning? O My God, I cry in the daytime, but You do not hear; And in the night season, and am not silent. But You are holy, enthroned in the praises of Israel. Our fathers trusted in You; They trusted, and You delivered them. They cried to You, and were delivered; They trusted in You, and were not ashamed. But I am a worm, and no man; A reproach of men, and despised by the people. All those who see Me ridicule Me; They shoot out the lip, they shake the head, saying, “He trusted in the Lord, let Him rescue Him; Let Him deliver Him, since He delights in Him!” But You are He who took Me out of the womb; You made Me trust while on My mother's breasts. I was cast upon You from birth. From My mother's womb you have been My God. Be not far from Me, for trouble is near; For there is none to help. Many bulls have surrounded Me; Strong bulls of Bashan have encircled Me. They gape at Me with their mouths, like a raging and roaring lion. I am poured out like water, and all My bones are out of joint; My heart is like wax; It has melted within Me. My strength

is dried up like a potsherd, and My tongue clings to My jaws; You have brought Me to the dust of death. For dogs have surrounded Me; The congregation of the wicked has enclosed Me. They pierced My hands and My feet; I can count all My bones. They look and stare at Me. They divide My garments among them, and for My clothing they cast lots.

There are portions of this Psalm of David that stand as the testimony of David. When David writes, “Our fathers trusted you; They trusted, and you delivered them,” he is writing that which is true of his own experience and that of his forebears. Yet this Psalm switches back and forth between that which pertains to David, and that which pertains to the promised Messiah who would one day appear. There are things in this Psalm that David never experienced, but which pertain clearly to the Son of God. It was on the cross that Yahshua uttered the words, “My God, My God, why have you forsaken Me!” While Yahshua was being crucified, the priests and rulers of the people jeered and said, “He trusted in the Lord, let Him rescue Him; Let Him deliver Him, since He delights in Him!” The Roman soldiers divided Christ’s garments between them, and for His clothing they cast lots. These are things that David never experienced.



At the same time, there are portions of this Psalm that apply equally to David and to the Messiah. It could be truly stated of both that they were “A reproach of men, and despised by the people.” Both experienced times when the congregation of the wicked surrounded them. The man or woman who would correctly understand this Psalm must distinguish between those words that pertain to a man; those that pertain to the Messiah; and those that pertain to both.

When reading the passages from Ezekiel 28 and Isaiah 14 we must make similar distinctions. Some parts pertain to a man, some to Satan, and some can be applied equally to both. It should not be surprising that even as David was King in Jerusalem and served as a type of Christ, that the King of Babylon should serve as a type of Satan. Zion and Babylon have always stood as opposites. The former represents the rule of God while the latter the rule of Satan. Even as David patiently endured much suffering while looking forward in faith to the promises of God, demonstrating much of the character of the Son of God, so too did the proud, cruel rulers of Tyre and Babylon demonstrate much of the character of Satan.

As you read through the following passage of Scripture, see if you can identify that which pertains to man, that which pertains to an angelic being, and those statements that might equally apply to both.

Ezekiel 28:1-19

The word of Yahweh came again to me saying, “Son of man, say to the prince of Tyre, ‘Thus says

Yahweh God, "Because your heart is lifted up and you have said, 'I am a god, I sit in the seat of gods, in the heart of the seas'; Yet you are a man and not God, although you make your heart like the heart of God - Behold, you are wiser than Daniel; There is no secret that is a match for you. By your wisdom and understanding you have acquired riches for yourself, and have acquired gold and silver for your treasures. By your great wisdom, by your trade you have increased your riches, and your heart is lifted up because of your riches - Therefore, thus says Yahweh God, 'Because you have made your heart like the heart of God, therefore, behold, I will bring strangers upon you, the most ruthless of the nations. And they will draw their swords against the beauty of your wisdom and defile your splendor. They will bring you down to the pit, and you will die the death of those who are slain in the heart of the seas. Will you still say, "I am a god," in the presence of your slayer, although you are a man and not God, in the hands of those who wound you? You will die the death of the uncircumcised by the hand of strangers, for I have spoken!' declares Yahweh God!"

Again the word of Yahweh came to me saying, "Son of man, take up a lamentation over the king of Tyre, and say to him, 'Thus says Yahweh God, "You had the seal of perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty. You were in Eden, the garden of God; Every precious stone was your covering: The ruby, the topaz, and the diamond; The beryl, the onyx, and the jasper; The lapis lazuli, the turquoise, and the emerald; And the gold, the workmanship of your settings and sockets, was in you. On the day that you were created they were prepared. You were the anointed cherub who covers, and I placed you there. You were on the holy mountain of God; You walked in the midst of the stones of fire. You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created, until unrighteousness was found in you. By the abundance of your trade (or slander) you were internally filled with violence, and you sinned; Therefore I have cast you as profane from the mountain of God. And I have destroyed you, O covering cherub, from the midst of the stones of fire. Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty; You corrupted your wisdom by reason of your splendor. I cast you to the ground; I put you before kings, that they may see you. By the multitude of your iniquities, in the unrighteousness of your trade (or slander), you profaned your sanctuaries. Therefore I have brought fire from the midst of you; It has consumed you, and I have turned you to ashes on the earth in the eyes of all who see you. All who know you among the peoples are appalled at you; You have become terrified, and you will be no more.'"

In this prophecy of Ezekiel there is a line of demarcation that occurs at the phrase "*Again the word of Yahweh came to me saying.*" That which precedes this line is obviously written of a human ruler, while that which follows this line is written of an angelic ruler. There are portions of both passages that could apply to man and angel, for the character of these rulers was the same. Nevertheless, we see that the first portion of the prophecy identifies a man.

*"you are a **man** and not God... Will you still say, "I am a god," in the presence of your slayer, although you are a **man** and not God?"*

In the latter portion of this passage we see that a heavenly being is the focus of the prophecy.

*"You were the anointed **cherub** who covers... I have destroyed you, O covering **cherub**, from the midst of the stones of fire."*

There are statements recorded in the latter passage that cause some to stumble, for there are things

spoken of this anointed cherub that we see recorded nowhere else in the Bible. When was Satan cast to the ground and put before kings? When did God turn Satan to ashes in the eyes of all who see him, and when were the people appalled upon seeing Satan judged? From the time of Adam's creation we do not find any record of Satan being judged in this manner.

There are some Bible scholars who believe these phrases refer to Satan's appearance upon the original earth that pre-dated Adam. Some have suggested that the first earth was in many ways like the re-created earth in which Adam was placed. There was on the earth a pre-Adamic race. There was a wide variety of animals that dwelt on the land, in the seas, and flew in the air, among which were the dinosaurs whose fossils are found throughout the planet. There was even a garden of Eden on that original earth. All of these things perished when Satan rebelled against Yahweh and warfare ensued in the heavens. It is further suggested that Satan subverted some members of this pre-Adamic race, while conquering others. This would explain statements such as the following lines from Isaiah 14.

How the oppressor has ceased, and how fury has ceased!

Yahweh has broken the staff of the wicked, the scepter of rulers which used to strike the peoples in fury with unceasing strokes, which subdued the nations in anger with unrestrained persecution.

You have been cut down to the earth, you who have weakened the nations!

Those who see you will gaze at you, they will ponder over you, saying, "Is this the one who made the earth tremble, who shook kingdoms, who made the world like a wilderness and overthrew its cities, who did not allow his prisoners to go home?"

This passage from Isaiah is addressed to "the king of Babylon," yet there are portions of it that could not be applied to a human ruler. In the midst of this prophecy we find the following words:

How you have fallen from heaven, O star of the morning, son of the dawn! You have been cut down to the earth, you who have weakened the nations! But you said in your heart, "I will ascend to heaven; I will raise my throne above the stars of God, and I will sit on the mount of assembly in the recesses of the north. I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High."

I do not believe it is wise to be dogmatic about these matters, for when we make mention of the pre-Adamic earth we find that the Bible does not speak explicitly, or in great depth, of these things. We are left to discern what we can from the often enigmatic proclamations of prophets and seers. Nevertheless, there are some things that we can accurately deduce from the testimony of the Scriptures. We know that the angels were created prior to the earth being formed, for we are told that "the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy" when God laid its foundations (Job 38:7). We know that Satan fell prior to mankind being created, for his first appearance to man in the garden of Eden is as a cunning deceiver.

It is also right to reconsider some orthodox beliefs. We should ask where demons, or unclean spirits come from. It is often assumed by Christians that demons are fallen angels, but we must ask whether

this is true. Watchman Nee in *The Mystery of Creation*, and G.H. Pember in *Earth's Earliest Ages*, suggest that demons are members of a pre-Adamic race on the original earth who joined with Satan in his rebellion. When Yahweh judged these rebellious creatures, their punishment was that they were disembodied. That is to say, their flesh was destroyed and they were left as wandering spirits without a home. This is a great source of vexation to these creatures, which explains why demons are always seeking another body to inhabit.

Matthew 12:43-45

“Now when the unclean spirit goes out of a man, it passes through waterless places, seeking rest, and does not find it. Then it says, ‘I will return to my house from which I came’; and when it comes, it finds it unoccupied, swept, and put in order. Then it goes, and takes along with it seven other spirits more wicked than itself, and they go in and live there; and the last state of that man becomes worse than the first.”

When Christ cast out the legion of demons from the man at Gadara, the demons begged permission to enter into a herd of swine. To be left without a body to inhabit is unbearable to them.

These same men argue that angels, including fallen ones, have their own bodies and do not need to inhabit others. They may do so on special occasions at need, such as when Satan entered Judas, or when he appeared to Adam and Eve in the form of the serpent, but we read elsewhere that Satan and his angels have their own ethereal bodies. The fallen angels are able to take on human form and cohabit with women as recorded in the sixth chapter of Genesis. That angels can assume human form is revealed in numerous places throughout the Bible. In Genesis we read of the angels Yahweh sent to Sodom and Gomorrah, and how they were mistaken as men so that the Sodomites wanted to have sexual relations with them. In the New Testament the apostle Paul writes:

Hebrews 13:2

Do not neglect to show hospitality to strangers, for by this some have entertained angels without knowing it.

The angel Gabriel spoke of angelic members of Satan's forces withstanding him in the book of Daniel. We read of Satan appearing before Christ in the wilderness and tempting Him. We also read of Satan and his angels warring with the archangel Michael and his angels in the book of Revelation. Satan and his angels have their own bodies, and are able to appear as men in the same way as the holy angels. A case could be made that demons, also referred to as unclean spirits, are quite distinct from fallen angels.

Where many have likely become confused in conflating Satan and his fallen angels with demons is that in many of our popular English Bibles, the Greek words “diabolos” and “daimon” are both translated as “devil” or their plural form as “devils.” These are very different Greek words. A careful study of these words will also show that diabolos is ALWAYS used as a reference to Satan, and is NEVER used as a reference to an unclean spirit. Similarly “daimon” is ALWAYS used as a reference to a demon, or unclean spirit, and is NEVER used as a reference to Satan, or to a fallen angel. By rendering both of these words into English as “devil(s)” confusion has resulted.

I have tested the claim that angels and demons are separate entities. I have looked up every reference to the Greek words for angels, devils, demons, and unclean spirits and I have not found a single instance that would demonstrate that fallen angels and demons are the same thing. Furthermore, the Bible speaks much of the *appearance* of angels, both in the heavens and on earth, but it never speaks of demons as being visible. Demons are always described as spirits whose presence can be discerned only through their activity.

These facts lend credibility to the suggestion that demons are members of a pre-Adamic race that were disembodied as punishment for their rebellion against God. Nevertheless, there is very little evidence to substantiate this matter, and I do not deem it prudent to speak confidently about such things.

There is other evidence and additional arguments presented in favor of the view that Satan was originally given dominion of the first earth, and that it was here that he appeared in his glorious array as a holy angel before his fall.

“Thus says Yahweh God, ‘You had the seal of perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty. You were in Eden, the garden of God; Every precious stone was your covering: The ruby, the topaz, and the diamond; The beryl, the onyx, and the jasper; The lapis lazuli, the turquoise, and the emerald; And the gold, the workmanship of your settings and sockets, was in you. On the day that you were created they were prepared. You were the anointed cherub who covers, and I placed you there.’”

Satan’s first appearance to Adam and Eve in the garden is as the serpent. He had already fallen into sin and taken on a heart of rebellion at that time. It is therefore the conclusion of some that the description above given by the prophet Ezekiel pertains to the original earth and the original garden, both of which were made “formless and void and covered in darkness” when Yahweh judged the first rebels. The earth lay in this calamitous state for an unspecified period of time until God began to re-create that which had been destroyed.

Some do not understand why God would permit Satan to be loosed after he had already proven himself to be a rebel. Yet, the Bible tells us that God will do so again in the future. He will cast Satan down and imprison him for a season, but then the devil will be loosed again whereupon he will immediately set about leading the nations in rebellion against Yahweh.

Revelation 20:7-8

And when the thousand years are completed, Satan will be released from his prison, and will come out to deceive the nations which are in the four corners of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together for the war.



Although it may be inexplicable to man why God would let this rebel angel loose, and why Satan would be permitted so many opportunities to foment rebellion among Yahweh's creation, we must concede that since he will be imprisoned and released in the future, he may well have been imprisoned and released in the past. Solomon declared:

Ecclesiastes 1:9-11

That which has been is that which will be, and that which has been done is that which will be done. So, there is nothing new under the sun. Is there anything of which one might say, "See this, it is new"? Already it has existed for ages which were before us. There is no remembrance of earlier things; And also of the later things which will occur, there will be for them no remembrance among those who will come later still.

At the beginning of this chapter we asked how Satan came to gain authority over this earth. Why does this "anointed cherub" have authority over the kingdoms of this earth? It seems probable that this world was placed under Satan's dominion from ages long past, before he fell into sin. Even as Saul was anointed as the first king of Israel, it is possible that Satan was appointed as the first regent of the earth, and that like Saul, his appointment preceded his transgression.

Satan's fall into sin and rebellion has had a devastating effect upon this globe. Nevertheless, Yahweh has borne patiently with the injustice and wickedness of the prince of this world. In His mercy and grace, God has provided for the redemption of mankind, as well as for the creation to be set free from its slavery to corruption. Yahweh has entrusted to His firstborn Son the responsibility of reconciling all things, whether in heaven or on earth, back to Himself (Colossians 1:20). Yahshua came to destroy the works of the devil (I John 3:8). Christ's reign will be complete when He has rectified all the evil and wickedness of Satan, restoring the creation to a perfect harmony with its Creator (I Corinthians 15:25-28).

The rebellion of Satan against God began in former ages, ages concerning which Yahweh has given us scant information. The restoration of all things will not be complete until more ages have past.

Just before Christ's crucifixion there was a remarkable exchange of words between the Father and the Son.

John 12:27-31

"Now My soul has become troubled; and what shall I say, 'Father, save Me from this hour'? But for this purpose I came to this hour. Father, glorify Your name." There came therefore a voice out of heaven: "I have both glorified it, and will glorify it again." The multitude therefore, who stood by and heard it, were saying that it had thundered; others were saying, "An angel has spoken to Him." Yahshua answered and said, "This voice has not come for My sake, but for your sakes. Now judgment is upon this world; now the prince of this world shall be cast out."

The Scriptures paint a picture of a world that has long been under the dominion of the prince of this world. Even as Absalom, the beautiful son of King David slandered his father in an attempt to wrest the rule of the kingdom to himself, Satan has slandered Yahweh. Satan, as a covering cherub should have glorified the name of Yahweh, but he has done just the opposite. We are promised, however,

that the name of Yahweh will be glorified once again.

Perhaps in David's reaction to the transgression of Absalom we may gain some insight into the heart of God. David wept grievously when it was told to him that his son had been slain. David knew that his son was a rebel. He knew his son had defiled his wives openly. David knew that Absalom had slandered his reputation and spoken falsely to others. Nevertheless, David experienced deep grief at the death of his son.

The prophet Ezekiel, who has given us so much information about this fallen cherub who rules over this world, has also recorded for us the following words of God.

Ezekiel 33:11

"Say to them, 'As I live!' declares Yahweh God, 'I take no pleasure in the death of the wicked, but rather that the wicked turn from his way and live. Turn back, turn back from your evil ways! Why then will you die?'"

Surely David manifested the heart of God when it was reported to him that King Saul, Saul's sons, and his servants, were slain on Mount Gilboa. Although Saul was an oppressor of the people, a persecutor of the righteous, a man given to great selfishness and jealousy; although Yahweh had pronounced judgment upon him, the words of the prophet Ezekiel are true. Yahweh took no pleasure in Saul's death. It was a righteous thing for David to lament the fall of this once great king.

II Samuel 1:17-27

Then David chanted with this lament over Saul and Jonathan his son, and he told them to teach the sons of Judah the song of the bow; behold, it is written in the book of Jashar. "Your beauty, O Israel, is slain on your high places! How have the mighty fallen! Tell it not in Gath, proclaim it not in the streets of Ashkelon; Lest the daughters of the Philistines rejoice, lest the daughters of the uncircumcised exult. O mountains of Gilboa, let not dew or rain be on you, nor fields of offerings; For there the shield of the mighty was defiled, the shield of Saul, not anointed with oil. From the blood of the slain, from the fat of the mighty, the bow of Jonathan did not turn back, and the sword of Saul did not return empty. Saul and Jonathan, beloved and pleasant in their life, and in their death they were not parted; They were swifter than eagles, they were stronger than lions. O daughters of Israel, weep over Saul, who clothed you luxuriously in scarlet, who put ornaments of gold on your apparel. How have the mighty fallen in the midst of the battle! Jonathan is slain on your high places. I am distressed for you, my brother Jonathan; You have been very pleasant to me. Your love to me was more wonderful than the love of women. How have the mighty fallen, and the weapons of war perished!"

If you have ever known a son or a daughter who once walked in righteousness, a child whose life was pleasant to you, yet this child turned aside to wickedness and great evil, you will realize that there is no pleasure in seeing judgment executed upon them. You may bear long with them, hoping that they will repent. They may be beaten with many stripes in hope that they will turn away from evil. When all attempts at reconciliation have been exhausted, and nothing remains but to hand the child over to death, there can be only grief in the heart of the parent. Bitterly did David weep for Absalom.

II Samuel 18:33

And the king was deeply moved and went up to the chamber over the gate and wept. And thus he said as he walked, "O my son Absalom, my son, my son Absalom! Would I had died instead of you, O Absalom, my son, my son!"

Surely it must be a source of grief to Yahweh to observe this glorious cherub, once full of wisdom and perfect in beauty, fall into such darkness. Heaven undoubtedly mourns that one who occupied such a high office, being blameless from the day he was created, should fall into such great iniquity, to behave as a rebel and a slanderer toward the holy Creator.

The Serpent Seed Doctrine



In the *Gospel of Philip*, an early Gnostic writing, and in the Zohar, the main literary source for the teachings of Kabbalah, there is found a teaching that is commonly referred to as “the serpent seed doctrine.” This doctrine purports that Eve was impregnated by the serpent/Satan (or sometimes another being named Samael), when she was tempted in the Garden of Eden. This doctrine treats the Biblical account of Eve’s temptation as a mystical teaching whose actual meaning is that the serpent had sexual intercourse with the mother of all living and this resulted in a corrupt race of men. Following are quotations from the *Gospel of Philip* and the *Zohar*.

Adultery occurred first, then murder. And (Cain) was begotten in adultery, for he was the son of the serpent. Therefore he became a manslayer just like his other father (the serpent), and he killed his brother (Abel).

[Source: *Gospel of Philip*, verse 46]

Two beings [Adam and Nachash] had intercourse with Eve, and she conceived from both and bore two children. Each followed one of the male parents, and their spirits parted, one to this side and one to the other, and similarly their characters. On the side of Cain are all the haunts of the evil species; from the side of Abel comes a more merciful class, yet not wholly beneficial - good wine mixed with bad.

[Source: *Zohar Bereshith*, 36b]

A single ancient copy of the Gnostic *Gospel of Philip* written in the Coptic language of Egypt exists. It was discovered in a cave at Nag Hammadi, Egypt. It has been dated to the 3rd century A.D.. This book was bound into a single codex (book) along with the Gnostic *Gospel of Thomas*. The Gnostics were/are considered a heretical sect of Christianity. They believed that knowledge (Greek “Gnosis”) was the key to becoming a perfected man. The Gnostics departed from Biblical truth in many of their teachings. In this same copy of the *Gospel of Philip*, we find that Mary Magdalene is declared to be the consort, or wife, of Jesus, and that He loved her more than all of His disciples. Following is an English translation of one of the passages from this Gnostic writing.

As for the Wisdom who is called 'the barren,' she is the mother of the angels. And the companion of [the saviour was Mar]y Ma[gda]lene. [Christ loved] M[ary] more than [all] the disci[ples, and used to] kiss her [softly] on her [hand]. The rest of [the disciples were offended by it and expressed disapproval]. They said to him "Why do you love her more than all of us?" The Saviour answered and said to them, "Why do I not love you like her? When a blind man and one who sees are both together in darkness, they are no different from one another. When the light comes, then he who sees will see the light, and he who is blind will remain in darkness.

The words in brackets denote where there are gaps in the text of this ancient manuscript due to it suffering some decay over the centuries. Some others have translated this passage to read that Jesus used to kiss Mary Magdalene on the lips. Whatever the missing words were, this is clearly a false and heretical teaching. Other passages in this false Gospel identify without question that it was Mary Magdalene who is being written of here, for she is called the “koinonos” of Christ, a word that is used elsewhere in this writing to indicate a wife.

There were three who always walked with the Lord: Mary, his mother, and her sister, and Magdalene, the one who was called his companion. His sister and his mother and his (koinonos) were each a Mary.

[Source: *ibid*]

The Gospel of Philip uses cognates of koinônos and Coptic equivalents to refer to the literal pairing of men and women in marriage and sexual intercourse, but also metaphorically, referring to a spiritual partnership...

[Source: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gospel_of_Philip]

The *Zohar* is similarly a source of much deviant Biblical teaching. It is actually a set of books that provide commentary on the Torah, the first five books of the Old Testament. Along with the text from the Torah the *Zohar* supplies many mystical interpretations of the Scripture passages. The claimed origin of this Kabbalist writing is one of intentional deception and false attribution.

The Zohar first appeared in Spain in the 13th century, and was published by a Jewish writer named Moses de Leon. De Leon ascribed the work to Shimon bar Yochai ("Rashbi"), a rabbi of the 2nd century during the Roman persecution who, according to Jewish legend, hid in a cave for thirteen years studying the Torah and was inspired by the Prophet Elijah to write the Zohar...

Modern academic analysis of the Zohar, such as that by the 20th century religious historian Gershom Scholem, has theorized that De Leon was the actual author. The view of non-Orthodox Jewish denominations generally conforms to this latter view, and as such, most non-Orthodox Jews have long viewed the Zohar as pseudepigraphy and apocrypha while sometimes accepting that its contents may have meaning for modern Judaism.

[Source: <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Zohar>]

The fact that the Zohar was found by one lone individual, Moses de Leon, taken together with the circumstance that it refers to historical events of the post-Talmudical period, caused the authenticity of the work to be questioned from the outset. There is a story told about how after the death of Moses

de Leon, a rich man of Avila, named Joseph, offered the widow, who had been left without means, a large sum of money for the original from which her husband had made the copy; and she then confessed that her husband himself was the author of the work. She had asked him several times, she said, why he had chosen to credit his own teachings to another, and he had always answered that doctrines put into the mouth of the miracle-working Simeon ben Yohai would be a rich source of profit. Incredible as this story seems, it at least proves that shortly after its appearance the work was believed by some to have been written entirely by Moses de Leon.

[Source: <https://www.jewishvirtuallibrary.org/jsource/Judaism/Zohar.html>]

The claim that Shimon bar Yochai was inspired by the prophet Elijah to write the *Zohar* is not one that any Christian should take seriously. Furthermore, the *Zohar* contains many unorthodox and heretical interpretations of the Scriptures. Kabbalists (initiates into the mystical teachings of Judaism) accept the *Zohar* as being of divine origin. The word “Kaballah” means “tradition.” However, when applied to those who are students of the *Zohar* and other Jewish mystical writings, the term is generally understood to mean alternative, or unorthodox tradition.

It is worth noting that each of these writings that serve as sources for the serpent seed doctrine are of very doubtful and deceptive origin. Neither the Gnostic *Gospel of Philip*, or the *Gospel of Thomas*, were written by the New Testament men that their names refer to. Similarly, the *Zohar*, which was unknown until the 13th century when a Spanish Jew had it published, was not written by a Rabbi of the 2nd century, nor was it inspired by Elijah. It has been, and continues to be, a common practice of deceivers to supply false and lying attributions to the origins of literary works. Even as Joseph Smith claimed that the angel Moroni led him to the golden plates upon which were written the *Book of Mormon*, so too have men from antiquity sought to ascribe legitimacy to deceiving texts by lying about their original authorship. This brings all that is taught in these pseudepigraphal (falsely attributed) writings into reproach. That these books abound with false and heretical teachings does not commend them as sources for Biblical understanding. The honest man should not look to the company of liars and deceivers to receive insight into the word of God.

What is the Serpent Seed Doctrine?



The serpent seed doctrine exists in variant forms today. It remains a foundational doctrine of Jewish Kabbalists, and has crossed over to an increasing extent in recent years into Christianity. The teachings of Jewish mysticism have gained some traction in recent years as numerous celebrities have embraced this system of belief. Among those are/were Elizabeth Taylor, Madonna, Gwyneth Paltrow,

Demi Moore, Ashton Kutcher, Paris Hilton (who has now evidently returned to the Roman Catholic faith), Britney Spears, Mick Jagger, Rosie O'Donnell, and others. The influence of so many celebrities embracing the teachings of Kaballah has helped open a doorway for its beliefs and doctrines to become more widely known.

Not all Christians who have embraced doctrines found among the Gnostics and Kabbalists have directly studied the writings that serve as source texts for these ideas. Over time as ideas become promulgated, people lose connection with the source from which these teachings derived. They may have heard of the serpent seed doctrine from another Christian, who heard it from another Christian, but the trail eventually leads back to Gnostic or Kabbalist teachings.

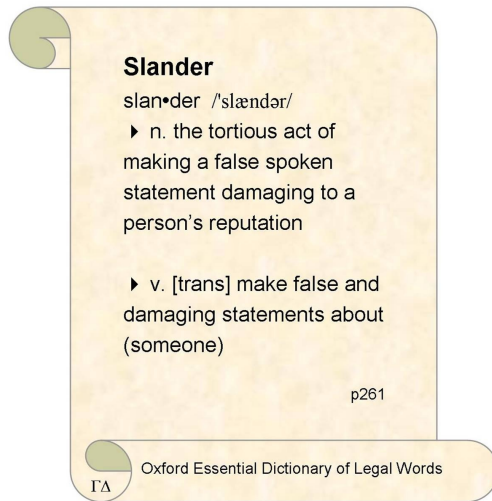
In my ministry I have noted an increase of Christians who have embraced, or are considering, the serpent seed doctrine. William Branham, a Pentecostal minister who was very active in the 1940's up until his death in a car crash in 1965, was one of the better known men who promoted this doctrine. Since Branham's death, Arnold Murray of Shepherd's Chapel has become one of the leading advocates of this doctrine. There are additionally, many lesser known teachers of this doctrine, many of whom have websites where this teaching is disseminated. One of these men whom people often mention when writing to me is Bob Schlenker who has *The Open Scroll* website and blog.

What all of these teachings share in common is the belief that the Serpent/Satan/Samael had sexual intercourse with Eve in the Garden of Eden and that shortly thereafter Adam also had sexual intercourse with Eve. She became pregnant by both beings simultaneously, a rare occurrence that is known as heteropaternal superfecundation, and she consequently gave birth to twins. This alters the traditional Biblical narrative significantly, for no longer are Cain and Abel understood to be brothers born consecutively through the union of Adam and Eve. Cain is declared to be the seed of the serpent and Abel the seed of Adam.

Anyone familiar with the account of Adam and Eve's temptation by the serpent in the Garden of Eden will recognize that the serpent seed doctrine is at great variance with what is recorded in the book of Genesis. To persuade someone to accept this doctrine, the person promoting it must convince another person that the meaning of various words in the Genesis account mean something other than the normal sense that a reader would derive from the text. For example, when the Bible says that the serpent "beguiled," or "deceived" Eve, the teacher of the serpent seed doctrine suggests that the word should actually be understood to mean "sexually seduced." When Eve admits that she "did eat" the fruit of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, we are to understand that she actually was saying that she "had sexual intercourse."

In some versions of this doctrine, the tree of knowledge is taken to be a symbol of Satan, and that Eve eating of the tree is merely a mystical way of describing her having intimate relations with the serpent/Satan. In other versions of this doctrine, some suggest that Eve's transgression was two fold, that when she said "the serpent beguiled me and I did eat," that she is saying, "the serpent sexually seduced me and afterward I also ate of the forbidden fruit." This latter version is offered to defend against the argument that if eating of the fruit means having sex with Satan, then Adam must have had sex with the serpent too, for we are told that Eve gave of the fruit to her husband and he did also eat. Some with scruples about suggesting that Adam engaged in sex with the serpent being find it

expedient to disassociate the act of eating with sex. Others, however, such as Bob Schlenker, teach that after Eve committed gross sexual sin with the serpent that Adam then engaged in anal sex with the same being.



Depending upon whether the individual identifies the serpent in the garden as a beast, or as the cherub known as the devil and Satan, another angel, or a human precursor to Adam, humanity's first forebears are charged with committing bestiality, or gross immorality with a being of "strange flesh" (Jude 7). This is just one reason that anyone contemplating this doctrine should be very cautious, testing it patiently and with the utmost care. Adam and Eve are actual historical people. They are your forebears and mine. To charge them with gross immorality of the most vile and wicked nature is slanderous if in fact the charges are not true. Yahweh takes a very dim view on slander.

Leviticus 19:16

You shall not go about as a slanderer among your people...

Proverbs 16:28

A perverse man spreads strife, and a slanderer separates intimate friends.

Psalms 15:1-3

O Yahweh, who may abide in Your tent? Who may dwell on Your holy hill? He who walks with integrity, and works righteousness, and speaks truth in his heart. He does not slander with his tongue, nor does evil to his neighbor...

Psalms 50:19-20

You let your mouth loose in evil, and your tongue frames deceit. You sit and speak against your brother; You slander your own mother's son.

Proverbs 10:18

He who conceals hatred has lying lips, and he who spreads slander is a fool.

Mark 7:21-23

"For from within, out of the heart of men, proceed the evil thoughts, fornications, thefts, murders, adulteries, deeds of coveting and wickedness, as well as deceit, sensuality, envy, *slander*, pride and foolishness. All these evil things proceed from within and defile the man."

The word "devil" in the New Testament is translated from the Greek "diabolos" which means "slanderer." Slander is of the devil. Everyone who aspires to be found pleasing to God must have no part in it. Can there be a more serious slander than to accuse a man or woman of adultery, bestiality, homosexuality, or some other gross form of immorality when they in fact did not commit such a wicked deed? For this reason, every Christian should tremble at the thought of errantly embracing and disseminating a doctrine that constitutes an egregious form of slander.

A good place to begin in seeking to establish the correct understanding of what took place in the Garden of Eden is to look at the Biblical passage that we might have in mind a coherent image of what is being described. I will not cite the entirety of the first three chapters of Genesis, but will list those verses that have direct bearing upon the fall of the man and woman in the Garden of Eden and the birth of their sons.

Genesis 1:26 - 4:3

Then God said, "Let Us make man in Our image, according to Our likeness; and let them rule over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the sky and over the cattle and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth." And God created man in His own image, in the image of God He created him; male and female He created them. And God blessed them; and God said to them, "Be fruitful and multiply, and fill the earth, and subdue it; and rule over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves on the earth." Then God said, "Behold, I have given you every plant yielding seed that is on the surface of all the earth, and every tree which has fruit yielding seed; it shall be food for you..."

And Yahweh God planted a garden toward the east, in Eden; and there He placed the man whom He had formed. And out of the ground Yahweh God caused to grow every tree that is pleasing to the sight and good for food; the tree of life also in the midst of the garden, and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil...

Then Yahweh God took the man and put him into the garden of Eden to cultivate it and keep it. And Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, "From any tree of the garden you may eat freely; but from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat from it you shall surely die."

And Yahweh God fashioned into a woman the rib which He had taken from the man, and brought her to the man. And the man said, "This is now bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh; She shall be called Woman, because she was taken out of Man." For this cause a man shall leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave to his wife; and they shall become one flesh. And the man and his wife were both naked and were not ashamed.

Now the serpent was more crafty than any beast of the field which Yahweh God had made. And he

said to the woman, "Indeed, has God said, 'You shall not eat from any tree of the garden'?" And the woman said to the serpent, "From the fruit of the trees of the garden we may eat; but from the fruit of the tree which is in the middle of the garden, God has said, 'You shall not eat from it or touch it, lest you die.'" And the serpent said to the woman, "You surely shall not die! For God knows that in the day you eat from it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil." When the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable to make one wise, she took from its fruit and ate; and she gave also to her husband with her, and he ate. Then the eyes of both of them were opened, and they knew that they were naked; and they sewed fig leaves together and made themselves loin coverings.

And they heard the sound of Yahweh God walking in the garden in the cool of the day, and the man and his wife hid themselves from the presence of Yahweh God among the trees of the garden. Then Yahweh God called to the man, and said to him, "Where are you?" And he said, "I heard the sound of You in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked; so I hid myself." And He said, "Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten from the tree of which I commanded you not to eat?" And the man said, "The woman whom You gave to be with me, she gave me from the tree, and I ate." Then Yahweh God said to the woman, "What is this you have done?" And the woman said, "The serpent deceived me, and I ate."

And Yahweh God said to the serpent, "Because you have done this, cursed are you more than all cattle, and more than every beast of the field; On your belly shall you go, and dust shall you eat all the days of your life; And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your seed and her seed; He shall bruise you on the head, and you shall bruise him on the heel."

To the woman He said, "I will greatly multiply your pain in childbirth. In pain you shall bring forth children; Yet your desire shall be for your husband, and he shall rule over you."

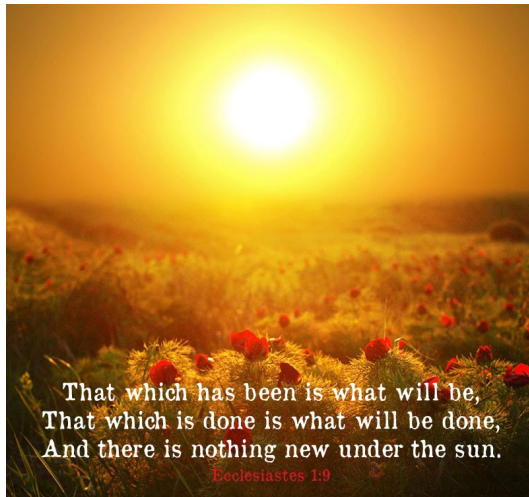
Then to Adam He said, "Because you have listened to the voice of your wife, and have eaten from the tree about which I commanded you, saying, 'You shall not eat from it'; Cursed is the ground because of you; In toil you shall eat of it all the days of your life. Both thorns and thistles it shall grow for you; And you shall eat the plants of the field; By the sweat of your face you shall eat bread, til you return to the ground, because from it you were taken; For you are dust, and to dust you shall return."

Now the man called his wife's name Eve, because she was the mother of all the living. And Yahweh God made garments of skin for Adam and his wife, and clothed them. Then Yahweh God said, "Behold, the man has become like one of Us, knowing good and evil; and now, lest he stretch out his hand, and take also from the tree of life, and eat, and live forever" - therefore Yahweh God sent him out from the garden of Eden, to cultivate the ground from which he was taken. So He drove the man out; and at the east of the garden of Eden He stationed the cherubim, and the flaming sword which turned every direction, to guard the way to the tree of life.

Now Adam had relations with his wife Eve, and she conceived and gave birth to Cain, and she said, "I have gotten a manchild with the help of Yahweh." And again, she gave birth to his brother Abel. And Abel was a keeper of flocks, but Cain was a tiller of the ground.

Here is the crux of the account of the creation of man, the beasts, the Garden of Eden, the man and woman's temptation by the serpent, their transgression, and the resulting consequences. There is nothing on the surface of this writing that would suggest that any transgression occurred other than the man and woman eating that which Yahweh had forbidden to them. The Bible, however, does very often teach through parables and figurative language, so it is appropriate to examine the passage to see if there is some other meaning suggested. It is also quite appropriate to look to the rest of the Scriptures to see if there exists testimony, patterns, or various revelations that would confirm or refute either the traditional view, or the serpent seed view of this passage.

Divine Patterns



There are a great many patterns that repeat throughout the Bible. Approximately 3,000 years ago Yahweh granted wisdom and understanding to a son of David that surpassed the wisdom of every other man save the Son of God Himself. This wise man, and king of the 12 tribes of Israel, was Solomon. Solomon wrote three books of the Old Testament, and contributed to a fourth. He spoke many proverbs, and shared the wisdom he had been granted with others. Among the revelations that Yahweh granted to Solomon was the following:

Ecclesiastes 1:9

That which has been is that which will be, and that which has been done is that which will be done. So, there is nothing new under the sun.

There are many events throughout the ages of the creation of God that repeat. The apostle Paul demonstrates a parallel between two creations of man that he refers to as "the first Adam," and "the last Adam."

I Corinthians 15:45-49

So also it is written, "The first man, Adam, became a living soul." The last Adam became a life-giving spirit. However, the spiritual is not first, but the natural; then the spiritual. The first man is from the earth, earthy; the second man is from heaven. As is the earthy, so also are those who are earthy; and as is the heavenly, so also are those who are heavenly. And just as we have borne the image of the earthy, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly.

Here we see a divine pattern. There are differences between the first Adam, and the last Adam (Christ),” but there are also great similarities. For example, Yahweh caused a deep sleep to fall upon the first Adam and then removed a remnant portion from his body to fashion a bride for Adam. As a parallel to this, we observe that the church is called “the body of Christ.” In a spiritual sense, a deep sleep has fallen over the body of the last Adam, and during this time of slumber the Father is removing a choice portion from the body of Christ to form a bride for His Son. The bride of Christ is not formed from His entire body. It will be formed of a remnant portion who will then be presented to Christ as His bride, “for many are called, but few are chosen.”

We can look for other parallels between the first Adam and the last Adam. One profound parallel is that both Adams were tempted by Satan. The temptation for both involved eating something that God had either expressly forbid them to eat, or had not given permission to eat. God told the first Adam, “From any tree of the garden you may eat freely; but from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat from it you shall surely die.” This was the precise thing that Satan tempted Adam to do. Similarly, at the beginning of Christ’s ministry He was led of the Spirit into a wilderness where He fasted for forty days and nights. At the end of forty days the Son of God hungered. At this time Satan came to Yahshua, the last Adam, tempting Him to eat.

Matthew 4:3-5

And the tempter came and said to Him, “If You are the Son of God, command that these stones become bread.” But He answered and said, “It is written, ‘Man shall not live on bread alone, but on every word that proceeds out of the mouth of God.’”

Where the first Adam failed, the last Adam triumphed. The first Adam chose to put his soulish and fleshly desires above the word of God. The last Adam chose the word of God above His desires. It is significant that the first recorded encounter of both men with Satan saw them facing a similar test. Those who embrace the interpretation set forth by the serpent seed doctrine do violence to this divine pattern.

We find a pattern again between the bride of the first Adam and that of the second. Of Eve we read:

And the woman said, “The serpent *deceived* me, and I ate.”

If we agree with the common understanding that the serpent “deceived” Eve, rather than having had sexual intercourse with her, we find a clear parallel in the New Testament among those who are espoused to Christ.

II Corinthians 11:2-4

For I am jealous for you with a godly jealousy; for I betrothed you to one husband, that to Christ I might present you as a pure virgin. But I am afraid, lest as the serpent *deceived* Eve by his craftiness, *your minds should be led astray* from the simplicity and purity of devotion to Christ. For if one comes and preaches another Yahshua whom we have not preached, or you receive a different spirit which you have not received, or a different gospel which you have not accepted, you bear this beautifully.

The apostle Paul in this passage uses the phrase “your minds... be led astray” to give definition to what occurred with Eve when she was “deceived.” Eve had been delivered a word of instruction from God, but the serpent beguiled her. He deceived the woman so that she believed the lie that came from his tongue, rather than manifesting a simple and pure faith in God.

We find a direct parallel to what we have just observed between the two Adams. The first Adam failed, while the last Adam triumphed. Similarly, the first bride failed, falling into deception, but there will be a choice portion of the body of the last Adam that will triumph, having overcome the deceiver.

Revelation 12:11

“And they overcame him because of the blood of the Lamb and because of the word of their testimony, and they did not love their life even to death.”

(For more on this subject, see the book titled *The Remnant Bride*.) Once, more, if we embrace the serpent seed doctrine, we do violence to this pattern for Satan is not attempting to have sex with the bride of Christ. He is seeking to deceive her.

Matthew 24:24

“For false Christs and false prophets will arise and will show great signs and wonders, so as to mislead, if possible, even the elect.”

Over and over we find the apostles exhorting the body of Christ with the words “Do not be deceived” (I Corinthians 6:9, 15:33, Galatians 6:7, James 1:16, etc.). Satan would attempt to deceive the bride of the last Adam in the same way that he deceived the bride of the first Adam. He appealed to the same weakness in Eve as he does with the church.

I John 2:16

For all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh and the lust of the eyes and the boastful pride of life, is not from the Father, but is from the world.

Genesis 3:6-7

When the woman saw that the tree was good for food (the lust of the flesh), and that it was a delight to the eyes (the lust of the eyes), and that the tree was desirable to make one wise (the boastful pride of life), she took from its fruit and ate; and she gave also to her husband with her, and he ate.

As Solomon stated, there are many events that repeat in the ages of the creation. In essence, Yahweh continues to take men around the same mountain until they respond correctly to some trial or temptation. The same tempter, comes with the same temptation and deception, until Yahweh finds a perfect (spiritually mature) response from His creation. Where the first Adam failed, the last Adam has triumphed. Where that remnant portion taken from the body of the first Adam to form his bride fell to deception, the remnant portion of the body of the last Adam will walk in truth and obedience.



Divine Patterns

The pattern continues as we look at Adam's firstborn son. In the 4th chapter of Genesis we are told that Cain became jealous of his brother Abel for God had regard for Abel's offering, but not for Cain's. In his anger, Cain slew his brother Abel, becoming the first murderer.

When the last Adam came, the firstborn of the Father, He demonstrated an entirely different mind and behavior. The last Adam did not come to destroy men's lives, but to save them (Luke 9:56). The son of the first Adam, when asked by God where his brother Abel was, responded by saying, "Am I my brother's keeper?" The last Adam demonstrated that humanity was called to be their brother's keeper. It was Christ who uttered the golden rule "Do unto others as you would have them do unto you." He also declared that the two greatest commandments were "to love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, mind, and strength, and to love your neighbor as yourself."

The Son of God laid down His life on the cross that others might live, whereas Cain murdered his brother. There can be no more extreme opposites than are bound up in the words "murderer" and "Savior."

To fit the pattern, however, we must not compare Christ to Cain, for the last Adam is a parallel/opposite of the first Adam. We must compare the firstborn sons of the last Adam (Christ) to the firstborn son of the first Adam. The firstborn sons of Christ are the overcomers who will attain to the first resurrection. These will be the first to enter into resurrection life in Christ.

Revelation 20:6

Blessed and holy is the one who has a part in the first resurrection; over these the second death has no power, but they will be priests of God and of Christ and will reign with Him for a thousand years.

What will be the character of the firstborn sons of the last Adam? Their character will be the same as their Father, from whose seed they issued forth.

Romans 8:29

For whom He foreknew, He also predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son...

Christ is not only called our brother, but He is called our Father.

Isaiah 9:6

For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, *The everlasting Father*, The Prince of Peace.

I Peter 1:23

For you have been born again not of seed which is perishable but imperishable, that is, through the living and abiding Word of God.

The Word of God is the Son. John tells us that “the Word was made flesh and dwelt among us.” By His seed we are made sons.

Isaiah 53:10-11

Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, *he shall see his seed*, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand. He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied...

KJV

Isaiah prophesied that Yahshua, the last Adam, would see His seed and be satisfied by that which the travail of His soul had produced.

John 12:24

“Truly, truly, I say to you, unless a grain of wheat falls into the earth and dies, it remains by itself alone; but if it dies, it bears much fruit.”

Those born again of the Spirit of Christ are His seed. They have His nature within them. His nature is that of a selfless Savior. All who walk after His Spirit will lay down their lives for others. They will not be manslayers. They will be man-savers.

Luke 9:54-56

And when His disciples James and John saw this, they said, “Lord, do You want us to command fire to come down from heaven and consume them?” But He turned and rebuked them, and said, “You do not know what kind of spirit you are of; for the Son of Man did not come to destroy men's lives, but to save them.”

Through the first man Adam, came transgression resulting in death to all men. Through the last Adam came obedience resulting in life for all men. The bride of the first Adam was deceived and led astray from truth and faith in God. The bride of the last Adam will walk in truth and manifest a sincere and pure faith in God. The firstborn of the first Adam was a murderer, a man-slayer, but the firstborn of the last Adam will be man-savers. They will lay down their lives that others might live.

II Corinthians 4:11-12

For we who live are constantly being delivered over to death for Yahshua's sake, that the life of

Yahshua also may be manifested in our mortal flesh. So death works in us, but life in you.

Once more we see that if we adopt the serpent seed doctrine the divine pattern is broken. If Cain, the man-slayer, is not the firstborn son of the first Adam, then he cannot serve as a counterpart to the firstborn sons of the last Adam who lay down their lives that others may live.



Another pattern we observe in the opening chapters of Genesis reveals the goodness of God as a Father. Yahweh cannot be charged with negligence, inattentiveness, or an absence of care and love toward His creation, especially toward man. The Bible reveals that Yahweh takes no delight in sin, or in punishing mankind. His heart is that mankind would walk in righteousness in order that they would not suffer the just penalty that results from evil behavior.

Ezekiel 18:23

“Do I have any pleasure in the death of the wicked,” declares Yahweh God, “rather than that he should turn from his ways and live?”

Lamentations 3:31-33

For the Lord will not reject forever, for if He causes grief, then He will have compassion according to His abundant lovingkindness. For He does not afflict willingly, or grieve the sons of men.

We see throughout the Bible that Satan must get permission to tempt, or afflict the people of God. Satan had to request permission from God to sift Peter as wheat (Luke 22:31). Had God not granted permission, Satan could not have tested Peter. Similarly, we observe that God had placed protection around Job, and Satan had to get permission to touch the man. In granting permission, Yahweh always set limits to what Satan can do.

Job 1:9-12

So Satan answered Yahweh and said, "Does Job fear God for nothing? Have You not made a hedge around him, around his household, and around all that he has on every side? You have blessed the work of his hands, and his possessions have increased in the land. But now, stretch out Your hand and touch all that he has, and he will surely curse You to Your face!" And Yahweh said to Satan, "Behold, all that he has is in your power; only do not lay a hand on his person." So Satan went out from the presence of Yahweh.

In Paul's letter to the church in Corinth, he declares a very precious truth to the people of God. He shares with them that God will never permit them to be tempted or tested beyond their ability to walk through the trial victoriously. Yahweh always sets limits on the testing of His people, for He does not desire that they fail in obedience to Him.

I Corinthians 10:13

For no temptation (no trial regarded as enticing to sin), [no matter how it comes or where it leads] has overtaken you and laid hold on you that is not common to man [that is, no temptation or trial has come to you that is beyond human resistance and that is not adjusted and adapted and belonging to human experience, and such as man can bear]. But God is faithful [to His Word and to His compassionate nature], and He [can be trusted] not to let you be tempted and tried and assayed beyond your ability and strength of resistance and power to endure, but with the temptation He will [always] also provide the way out (the means of escape to a landing place), that you may be capable and strong and powerful to bear up under it patiently.

[Amplified Bible]

It would be contrary to the nature and character of God for Him to grant Satan permission to tempt the first man and woman, His offspring, without first forewarning them of the test and what obedience was required of them. The Bible reveals that God was not deficient in this regard, unless one accepts the serpent seed doctrine. On the first two occasions of temptation and sin in the Bible, we find that Yahweh spoke to mankind, declaring to them His will, and the danger of their falling short of it.

Genesis 2:16-17

And Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, "From any tree of the garden you may eat freely; but from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat from it you shall surely die."

Genesis 4:5-7

Cain became very angry and his countenance fell. Then Yahweh said to Cain, "Why are you angry? And why has your countenance fallen? If you do well, will not your countenance be lifted up? And if you do not do well, sin is crouching at the door; and its desire is for you, but you must master it."

In the first instance Yahweh declared to the man that eating from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil was forbidden to him and would cause grievous harm if he transgressed. In the second He spoke to the firstborn son of Adam and warned him about his need to rule over anger. Yahweh did not want mankind to transgress. He did not want them to be caught unaware by temptation. He was careful to speak to them before they sinned about the temptation they would face.

If the serpent seed doctrine be true, then Yahweh has been very negligent. Nowhere is it recorded that He warned either the man or the woman that Satan would enter into the garden and attempt to sexually seduce Eve, or to commit gross sexual immorality with the man. Surely Satan had to get permission to tempt the man and woman just as he was required to do with Job and with Peter. God, knowing what trial Adam and Eve would face would have spoken to them, making plainly known to them what constituted obedience and disobedience. There is no mention anywhere of Yahweh warning Adam and Eve of the sin of adultery, bestiality, or gross sexual immorality with another

being. This itself protests loudly against the notion that they were tempted, and sinned, in this way.

Evidence From Context

The next argument that I would set forth in refutation of the serpent seed doctrine is that of context. Much of the doctrine rests upon a specific interpretation of words. These are interpretations that the context does not support.

For example, it is argued that the word used to describe the serpent having “deceived,” or “beguiled” Eve may also convey the meaning of “to seduce.” In the Genesis account the Hebrew word used is “nasha.” *Strong’s Concordance* provides the following definition.

nasha' (naw-shaw'); a primitive root; to lead astray, i.e. (mentally) to delude, or (morally) to seduce:

We see that one of the possible meanings of this word is “(morally) to seduce.” This word appears 16 times in the Old Testament, and it is never used in the sense of sexually seducing someone. Examples of its common usage are found in the following verses.

II Kings 18:29

Thus says the king: 'Do not let Hezekiah **deceive** (nasha) you, for he shall not be able to deliver you from his hand...

Isaiah 19:13

The princes of Zoan have become fools; The princes of Noph are **deceived** (nasha); They have also deluded Egypt...

Jeremiah 37:9

Thus says Yahweh: “Do not **deceive** (nasha) yourselves, saying, ‘The Chaldeans will surely depart from us,’ for they will not depart.”

In none of these occurrences, or any of the other Bible verses in which this Hebrew word occurs, is the idea of sexually seducing someone the appropriate meaning. Therefore, if one concludes that the word means sexually seduced in Genesis 3:13, they cannot argue that the word itself demands such an interpretation. Those who seek an understanding of the meaning of this word would do far better to look to the context of the passage in which it is found. The natural sense of the statement “the serpent deceived me and I did eat” is that the action of eating from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil was the result of the serpent misleading Eve. The serpent led Eve astray. To “lead astray” is the first definition that James Strong gives for this word, and it is the sense in which the word is used throughout the Old Testament.

In the New Testament, the Greek word used to describe the serpent’s actions toward Eve in deceiving her is *exapatao*.

*exapatao (ex-ap-at-ah'-o); from NT:1537 and NT:538; to seduce wholly:
KJV - beguile, deceive.*

It should be noted, that the word “seduce” does not imply sexual seduction. The word seduce means “to persuade to do something inadvisable.” People can be seduced to a great variety of inadvisable actions. People can be seduced sexually, but this is not the only activity to which people are seduced. In the New Testament, this word occurs only seven times in six verses. If we do not embrace the notion that Eve was sexually seduced by the serpent, there are no instances in which this word is employed to mean “sexually seduced.” Following are all seven occurrences of the word.

Romans 7:11

For sin, taking occasion by the commandment, **deceived** (exapatao) me, and by it killed me.

Romans 16:18

or those who are such do not serve our Lord Jesus Christ, but their own belly, and by smooth words and flattering speech **deceive** (exapatao) the hearts of the simple.

I Corinthians 3:18

Let no one **deceive** (exapatao) himself.

II Corinthians 11:3

But I fear, lest somehow, as the serpent **deceived** (exapatao) Eve by his craftiness, so your minds may be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.

II Thessalonians 2:3

Let no one **deceive** (exapatao) you by any means; for that Day will not come unless the falling away comes first, and the man of sin is revealed...

I Timothy 2:14

And Adam was not **deceived** (exapatao), but the woman being **deceived** (exapatao), fell into transgression.

It should be noted that those who suggest that the word means “to seduce sexually,” and who teach that Adam also had sex with the serpent, will be faced with a great contradiction in their employment of this word. In the last verse above we are told that “Adam was not exapatao.” If the word means “sexually seduced” then this should end the argument at once, for Paul states that “Adam was not exapatao.”

We have further contextual evidence from the last verse above that argues for the proper understanding of this word meaning “deceived,” rather than “sexually seduced.” We have to look at the preceding verses to see why the apostle Paul has made this statement. It is observed that he is giving evidence and arguments to support the apostolic instruction that women are not to teach men.

I Timothy 2:12-14

And I do not permit a woman to teach or to have authority over a man, but to be in silence. For Adam was formed first, then Eve. And Adam was not deceived, but the woman being deceived, fell into transgression.

There is a logical link between a woman being more prone to deception than man and her being charged to restrain herself from attempting to teach or usurp authority over a man. It would not be prudent to make teachers of those who are the most susceptible to deception. If we interpret this word to mean sexual seduction, then the passage loses its meaning.

Again, those who teach the serpent seed doctrine have often argued that the act of eating from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil is a metaphor for having sex. They point to verses such as the following to support this claim.

Proverbs 30:20

This is the way of an adulterous woman: She eats and wipes her mouth, and says, "I have done no wrong."

In another place Solomon writes the following about the adulterous woman and those who are enticed by her.

Proverbs 9:17-18

Stolen water is sweet; And bread eaten in secret is pleasant. But he does not know that the dead are there, that her guests are in the depths of Sheol.

We do see that there are a few instances in the Bible where eating and drinking are used as metaphors of sexual intercourse. That they are so linked is not unexpected, for even as a man has an appetite for food, he has an appetite for sex. Both may be abused, being satiated in unrighteous ways. We would be quite wrong, however, to assume that all Biblical references to eating, or even the majority of them, are intended as metaphors of sexual gratification. The Hebrew word "akal" that is rendered as "eats" in Proverbs 30:20 and as "eat" in Genesis chapter 3, is used predominantly throughout the Old Testament to speak of the consumption of food, the consuming nature of fire, or something similar. Doing a quick perusal of the occurrences of this Hebrew word, it appears that in less than a dozen of its 809 occurrences is the word used in a metaphorical sense to speak of sexual intercourse. Therefore, there can be no argument for its being used in Genesis chapter 3 in this way based upon its most common meaning. Again, we would do better to look to the context of Genesis to determine its meaning.

Following is every occurrence of the Hebrew word "akal" up to and including Adam and Eve's confession of eating of the forbidden fruit.

Genesis 2:16-17

And Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, "Of every tree of the garden you may freely *eat* (akal); but of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not *eat* (akal), for in the day that you *eat* (akal) of it you shall surely die."

Genesis 3:1-6

Now the serpent was more cunning than any beast of the field which the Lord God had made. And he said to the woman, "Has God indeed said, 'You shall not *eat* (akal) of every tree of the garden?'" And the woman said to the serpent, "We may *eat* (akal) the fruit of the trees of the garden; but of the

fruit of the tree which is in the midst of the garden, God has said, 'You shall not *eat* (akal) it, nor shall you touch it, lest you die.'" Then the serpent said to the woman, "You will not surely die. For God knows that in the day you *eat* (akal) of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil." So when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, that it was pleasant to the eyes, and a tree desirable to make one wise, she took of its fruit and *ate* (akal). She also gave to her husband with her, and he *ate* (akal).

When we look at the context of the first chapters of Genesis, we can see plainly that the trees in the Garden of Eden were given to man for food. Yahweh instructed the man to eat freely of all of the trees, except one. Yahweh was not using a figure of speech to instruct them about sexual intercourse. He was plainly speaking of the trees being provided to them for a source of food.

Genesis 1:29

Then God said, "***Behold, I have given you*** every plant yielding seed that is on the surface of all the earth, and ***every tree which has fruit yielding seed; it shall be food for you...***"

Genesis 2:9

And out of the ground ***Yahweh God caused to grow every tree that is pleasing to the sight and good for food; the tree of life also in the midst of the garden, and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.***

The context of these passages does not support a metaphorical understanding of eating as a symbol of sexual intercourse. If we understand that eating of the tree denotes sexual intercourse, then what did God mean when He told the man and woman that they could eat of every tree, save one? Surely, He was not giving them license to fornicate.

Some who have not encountered the arguments of those who promote the serpent seed doctrine may declare, "Does not Genesis 4:1 clearly settle the matter? How has the serpent seed doctrine gotten by this very plain statement of Cain's paternity?"

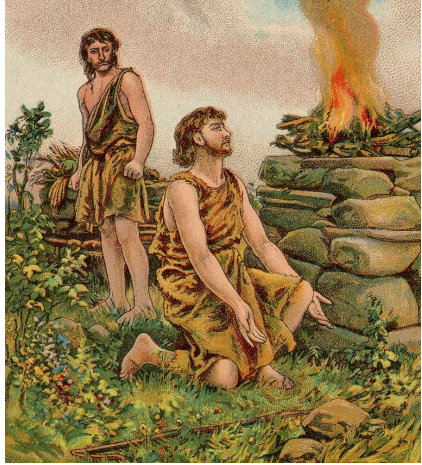
Genesis 4:1

Now Adam had relations with his wife Eve, and she conceived and gave birth to Cain, and she said, "I have gotten a manchild with the help of Yahweh."

How can anyone possibly conclude that Cain is the offspring of Eve having intercourse with the serpent if the Bible plainly states that "Adam had relations with his wife Eve, and she conceived and gave birth to Cain"? Indeed, this is a question I asked myself when I first encountered this doctrine. Yet, those who espouse the serpent seed doctrine have an alternative explanation for this verse. They concatenate the verse above with the verse that follows.

Genesis 4:2

And again, she gave birth to his brother Abel. And Abel was a keeper of flocks, but Cain was a tiller of the ground.



Although the natural understanding of this verse is that after Eve gave birth to Cain, she had relations with her husband again and gave birth to a second son, those who teach the serpent seed doctrine see something else in these words. They suggest that verse two can be understood to mean that after birthing Cain Eve continued to bear and brought forth his twin brother Abel.

To those familiar with the importance the Bible places upon the firstborn, and the way the Scriptures speak of twin sons in other passages, the claim that Cain and Abel were twins is difficult to embrace. When twins are born to important Bible characters, the fact is clearly noted.

Genesis 25:21-26

And Isaac prayed to Yahweh on behalf of his wife, because she was barren; and Yahweh answered him and Rebekah his wife conceived. But the children struggled together within her; and she said, "If it is so, why then am I this way?" So she went to inquire of Yahweh. And Yahweh said to her, "Two nations are in your womb; And two peoples shall be separated from your body; And one people shall be stronger than the other; And the older shall serve the younger." When her days to be delivered were fulfilled, behold, there were twins in her womb. Now the first came forth red, all over like a hairy garment; and they named him Esau. And afterward his brother came forth with his hand holding on to Esau's heel, so his name was called Jacob; and Isaac was sixty years old when she gave birth to them.

Those who teach the serpent seed doctrine envision a struggle between the serpent's seed born of Eve and Adam's seed born of Eve that is far greater and enduring than the struggle between Jacob and Esau. If this doctrine were true, and Cain and Abel were born as twins by two different fathers, I do not doubt that there would be much more spoken of it than we find recorded about Jacob and Esau. Yet, there is not even the mention that Cain and Abel were born as twins. There is no wrestling in the womb. There is no battle for ascendancy to see who would be the first one born.

Again, in the same book of Genesis we read of Tamar, the daughter-in-law of Judah giving birth to twin sons.

Genesis 38:27-30

And it came about at the time she was giving birth, that behold, there were twins in her womb.

Moreover, it took place while she was giving birth, one put out a hand, and the midwife took and tied a scarlet thread on his hand, saying, “This one came out first.” But it came about as he drew back his hand, that behold, his brother came out. Then she said, “What a breach you have made for yourself!” So he was named Perez. And afterward his brother came out who had the scarlet thread on his hand; and he was named Zerah.

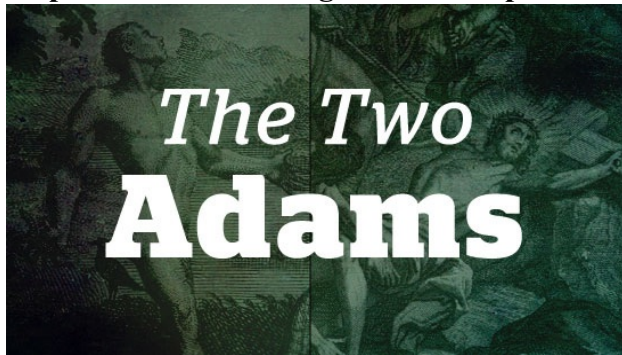
The only argument given in favor of Cain and Abel being twins is that the Bible does not explicitly say they were not. This is an argument from silence, and it is extremely weak. The silence itself speaks against the fact that they were twins, for twin sons have garnered much comment in the pages of the Scriptures. This is a fact that the apostles of the New Testament have not overlooked.

Romans 9:10-13

And not only this, but there was Rebekah also, when she had conceived twins by one man, our father Isaac; for though the twins were not yet born, and had not done anything good or bad, in order that God's purpose according to His choice might stand, not because of works, but because of Him who calls, it was said to her, “The older will serve the younger.” Just as it is written, “Jacob I loved, but Esau I hated.”

Surely, if Eve had given birth to twin sons, and they had different fathers, one of whom was Satan, there would be abundant testimony in both the Old and New Testaments to corroborate this fact. Yet there is not a word.

Scriptures that Stand Against the Serpent Seed Doctrine



Let me move on to address a number of Scriptures that argue against the claims of the serpent seed doctrine. A key passage is found in Paul's discourse to the Romans about the origins of sin. Paul argues that all mankind were made sinners through the transgression of the one man Adam. Because all humanity was in Adam's loins as his seed when he sinned, all men were made sinners. This apostolic argument is null and void if Eve gave birth to two lines of men that arose from two distinct paternal lines. Instead of all being made sinners by the one man Adam, the argument would have to be stated that all were made sinners through Adam and the serpent/Satan. This, however, is NOT what the apostle wrote.

Romans 5:12

Through ***one man*** sin entered into the world...

Romans 5:16

For on the one hand the judgment arose from *one transgression*...

Romans 5:17

By *the transgression of the one*, death reigned through *the one*...

Romans 5:18

Through *one transgression* there resulted condemnation to all men...

Romans 5:19

Through the *one man's disobedience* the many were made sinners...

If you do not understand how this teaching of the apostle Paul completely refutes the serpent seed doctrine, I encourage you to not hasten over these words. The serpent seed doctrine claims that Eve had sexual intercourse with the serpent in the garden. This doctrine suggests that Adam had intercourse with his wife soon after the serpent, when no more than a few days had passed. Both the seed of the serpent and the seed of Adam bore fruit, producing Cain from the serpent and Abel from Adam. If Cain indeed came from the serpent, and not from Adam, then Cain's descendants were not made sinners through the transgression of Adam, for they are not of Adam's seed. Consequently, the apostle Paul would be mistaken to declare that through one transgression and the one man's disobedience there resulted condemnation to all men.

One of the arguments put forth to support the serpent seed doctrine is that Genesis chapter 6 describes fallen angels (bene ha elohim - sons of God), cohabiting with the daughters of men (Adam), and giving birth to great men of renown.

Genesis 6:1-4

Now it came about, when men (ha adam) began to multiply on the face of the land, and daughters were born to them, that the sons of God saw that the daughters of men (ha adam) were beautiful; and they took wives for themselves, whomever they chose... The Nephilim (fallen ones) were on the earth in those days, and also afterward, when the sons of God came in to the daughters of men (ha adam), and they bore children to them. Those were the mighty men (ha giborim) who were of old, men (iysh) of renown.

The serpent seed argument suggests that since other fallen angels could procreate with women, that Satan could certainly procreate with Eve. I certainly do not dispute that Satan *could* procreate with a woman, but the Bible does not say that He did. It particularly does not say that he consorted with Eve. Again, the argument for Satan and Eve cohabiting is made from silence. Because the Bible does not specifically say that Satan cannot procreate with a woman, and because it does not say he did not procreate with Eve, then those promoting this doctrine say that it must be allowed that it could have happened. I disagree wholeheartedly. We cannot derive doctrines from the silence of the Bible. The Bible contains no statement that the earth is not made of jelly beans, but this does not mean that we must allow that it may be made of jelly beans. We could create doctrines from every vain, profane, obscene, or ridiculous thing that entered our minds if we used the silence of the Bible to argue for what may have occurred.

Those who suggest that Satan committed the same transgression as the angels in Genesis chapter 6 also have another hurdle to overcome. The Bible declares that Yahweh considered the transgression of the angels who sinned in this manner to be of such an egregious nature that He did not wait until the day of judgment to punish them. We are told that He has bound them in chains of darkness until the judgment of the great day.

Jude 6-7

And the angels who did not keep their proper domain, but left their own abode, He has reserved in everlasting chains under darkness for the judgment of the great day; as Sodom and Gomorrah, and the cities around them in a similar manner to these, having given themselves over to sexual immorality and gone after strange flesh, are set forth as an example, suffering the vengeance of age-lasting fire.

II Peter 2:4-10

For if God did not spare angels when they sinned, but cast them into hell and committed them to pits of darkness, reserved for judgment... and if He condemned the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah to destruction by reducing them to ashes, having made them an example to those who would live ungodly thereafter... then the Lord knows how to rescue the godly from temptation, and to keep the unrighteous under punishment for the day of judgment, and especially those who indulge the flesh in its corrupt desires and despise authority.

The testimony of the Bible declares that the angels who sinned in this manner committed gross immorality. They went after “strange flesh” even as the men of Sodom and Gomorrah committed indecent acts. These were beings of corrupt desires who despised authority, and they have reaped the consequences of their wicked deeds. How then would Satan have escaped the same judgment had he done the same thing? Indeed, Satan’s action would have been the most egregious of all, for the serpent seed doctrine suggests that he was the first angelic being to sexually cohabit with a woman, and his action would have corrupted the entire human race, for Eve is the mother of all living.

The Bible tells us that God is no respecter of persons. He would not pass over Satan for such an egregious offense while casting other angels into pits of darkness. No! Satan would be there right along with them had he committed such an offense. Additionally, if the angels cohabiting with women produced giants and men of renown, would not Cain be named among the Nephilim? Would he not have been the greatest of all? Yet, there is no testimony of Cain being anything other than an ordinary man.

The advocates of the serpent seed doctrine also have to arrive at some explanation to support their contention that the descendants of Satan and Eve exist to this day. How did they survive the flood of Noah’s day? Some who teach the serpent seed doctrine argue that the flood of Noah’s day was local, not global. They suggest that in saying the whole world was destroyed in the flood that God meant the world of man, but not the descendants of Satan. This belief is easily refuted.

Genesis 6:13, 17

Then God said to Noah, “***The end of all flesh*** has come before Me; for the earth is filled with violence because of them; and behold, I am about to destroy them with the earth... And behold, I, even

I am bringing the flood of water upon the earth, *to destroy all flesh in which is the breath of life, from under heaven; everything that is on the earth shall perish.*”

Genesis 7:21-23

And all flesh that moved on the earth perished, birds and cattle and beasts and every swarming thing that swarms upon the earth, and all mankind; of all that was on the dry land, all in whose nostrils was the breath of the spirit of life, died. Thus He blotted out every living thing that was upon the face of the land, from man to animals to creeping things and to birds of the sky, and they were blotted out from the earth; and only Noah was left, together with those that were with him in the ark.

These verses are quite clear. No possibility is allowed for any living creature on the earth to have survived other than Noah, and those with him on the ark. This, of course, is a difficult Scriptural obstacle to get around, so some suggest that the bloodline of Satan was carried in the wives of Noah’s daughter-in laws. This too does not stand up to scrutiny, for Yahweh made a covenant with Noah and his descendants. He pronounced a blessing and fruitfulness on the children brought forth by those who found safety in the ark. Yahweh would not speak a blessing upon the descendants of Satan.

Genesis 9:1-9

And God blessed Noah and his sons and said to them, “Be fruitful and multiply, and fill the earth... And as for you, be fruitful and multiply; Populate the earth abundantly and multiply in it.” Then God spoke to Noah and to his sons with him, saying, “Now behold, I Myself do establish My covenant with you, and with your descendants after you...”

It hardly seems coincidental that Noah was instructed to take seven of every clean kind of animal with him on the ark, and that Noah carried seven people with him (his wife, his three sons, and their three wives). Of the unclean animals he was commanded to take them by twos (Genesis 7:2). This fact does not support the contention that Noah took the unclean descendants of Satan with him on the ark. It is unreasonable to suggest that God would begin over with mankind by populating the earth with the descendants of the Nephilim, or of the serpent’s seed.

Wrapping Up

Some who hold to the serpent’s seed doctrine have used it to justify racial prejudice. Arnold Murray claims that the Jews, or those masquerading as Jews, are the descendants of the serpent and Eve, a people he calls “the Kenites.” Murray has a television and radio broadcast and is heard on 225 stations, an audience that some have numbered in the millions. Murray has links to the Christian Identity movement, a loose affiliation of churches and organizations with a white supremacy agenda. His 1958 minister’s license was signed by two white supremacists (Murray is in his 80s). Among adherents of the Christian Identity movement, Cain is viewed as the first Jew, which according to their doctrine means he, and the Jews, are descended from Satan.

I am not suggesting that Arnold Murray is a white supremacist (he does have a small number of black members in his church). He disavows racism, other than demonizing Kenites. Murray will not come right out and say Kenites are Jews, though he has made many statements that demonstrate this to be

his belief. Murray says it was the Kenites that crucified Christ, and in one audiotope sermon titled *Demons* he says of the Kenites, "*Why do you think their own Talmud is the filthiest piece of literature ever written? Because they're at home with it. They love it. It's their cup of tea. It's Satan's cup of tea.*" Such statements link the Jews with those he calls Kenites, the seed of Satan.

The Aryan Nations, and the Ku Klux Klan, both white supremacy groups, also hold to the serpent seed doctrine. This by itself does not disprove the doctrine, but it should cause Christians to carefully scrutinize what is being taught and why it holds an appeal to the soul of some men.

The claim that the Jews are the offspring of Satan cohabiting with Eve is usually based upon a misapprehension of certain Scriptures where men of evil hearts and actions are accused of being sons of Satan. Rather, than understanding the statements in the spiritual sense in which they were intended, adherents of the serpent seed doctrine claim they are to be understood in the literal sense. They neglect the passages where the matter is plainly explained.

John 8:37-44

"I know that you are Abraham's offspring; yet you seek to kill Me, because My word has no place in you. I speak the things which I have seen with My Father; therefore you also do the things which you heard from your father." They answered and said to Him, "Abraham is our father." Yahshua said to them, "If you are Abraham's children, do the deeds of Abraham. But as it is, you are seeking to kill Me, a man who has told you the truth, which I heard from God; this Abraham did not do. You are doing the deeds of your father." They said to Him, "We were not born of fornication; we have one Father, even God." Yahshua said to them, "If God were your Father, you would love Me; for I proceeded forth and have come from God, for I have not even come on My own initiative, but He sent Me. Why do you not understand what I am saying? It is because you cannot hear My word. ***You are of your father the devil,*** and you want to do the desires of your father. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. Whenever he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own nature; for he is a liar, and the father of lies."

Christ's meaning is very well established from the context. He acknowledged that the Jews were the natural offspring of Abraham, yet their actions were not those of Abraham, for he was a righteous man of faith. Their actions were those of Satan. When Christ testified that the Jews' were children of the devil, He was speaking words that were spiritual.

The Jews often misconstrued Yahshua's words in this way, for their hearts were darkened, and they were spiritually dull of hearing. We can compare this passage to another one found in the Gospels where the Jews were equally offended at Christ's words, taking them in a literal sense when His meaning was spiritual.

John 6:53-64

Yahshua therefore said to them, "***Truly, truly, I say to you, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink His blood, you have no life in yourselves. He who eats My flesh and drinks My blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up on the last day. For My flesh is true food, and My blood is true drink. He who eats My flesh and drinks My blood abides in Me, and I in him.*** As the living Father sent Me, and I live because of the Father, so he who eats Me, he also shall live because

of Me. This is the bread which came down out of heaven; not as the fathers ate, and died, he who eats this bread shall live forever.” These things He said in the synagogue, as He taught in Capernaum. Many therefore of His disciples, when they heard this said, ***“This is a difficult statement; who can listen to it?”*** But Yahshua, conscious that His disciples grumbled at this, said to them, “Does this cause you to stumble? What then if you should behold the Son of Man ascending where He was before? It is the Spirit who gives life; the flesh profits nothing; ***the words that I have spoken to you are spirit and are life.***”

If we fail to discern when a statement is intended to be understood literally, and when its meaning is spiritual, we will err greatly. Have not the Roman Catholics greatly erred in their understanding of the words above as they hold to the doctrine of transubstantiation? They believe that in the sacrament of the Eucharist that the wafer and wine are more than a symbol of Christ, but become the real, living flesh and blood of the Savior. This is how heresies are established. Men, failing to “rightly divide the word of truth,” fall short of identifying accurately that which is spiritual speech, and that which is literal.

One day all men will have an opportunity to meet their first forebears. The lives of Adam and Eve are often viewed as some distant myth. Even those who recognize them as historical figures often see only the brief account of their transgression in the garden. Yahweh did not demonize them. Quite the contrary. He provided coverings for their nakedness, and He promised that a seed would come forth from the woman who would one day crush the serpent’s head. Eve bore many more children than Cain, Abel, and Seth, for we read in Genesis the following:

Genesis 5:4-5

Then the days of Adam after he became the father of Seth were eight hundred years, and he had other sons and daughters. So all the days that Adam lived were nine hundred and thirty years, and he died.

We are not provided any further Biblical account of the life of Adam and Eve, but we are given glimpses of their character. When Eve bore her firstborn son Cain, she declared, “I have gotten a manchild with the help of Yahweh.” Such a statement is insightful. There is no hint of Adam and Eve being angry, bitter, or rebellious at the judgment that befell them when they sinned. Although Eve surely knew great pain in childbirth, for that was part of the curse spoken upon her, she gave praise to Yahweh for helping her to bring forth a man into the world. It seems quite reasonable that she continued bearing children for hundreds of years, and had vast experience as a mother, a wife, and a homemaker.

It is difficult to imagine what a man could accomplish, and learn, when his lifespan exceeds nine centuries. I think the primitive ideas that many hold in their minds about Adam and his life and attainments is quite deficient. I am sure we could all learn much from this man who experienced the pristine creation before the fall, and knew so well the loss suffered when all things fell under the curse of sin. We should guard against uttering reproaches, reviling, or slandering those to whom honor is due.

It is difficult for many to comprehend, but we were “in Adam” when he sinned. The claim that we would have acted differently if faced with the same temptation is unjustly made and indefensible. We

were present when Adam sinned. We are in a very real sense Adam. This is the seed principle that Paul spoke of in the following passage.

Hebrews 7:9-10

And, so to speak, through Abraham even Levi, who received tithes, paid tithes, for he was still in the loins of his father when Melchizedek met him.

Abraham was the father of Isaac who was the father of Jacob who was the father of Levi. Yet Paul states that what Abraham did, Levi did, for he was in the loins of his great grandfather when he paid tithes to Melchizedek. It is by virtue of this same seed principle that the righteousness of Christ, His death on the cross, and resurrection to new life are credited to those who are born of His seed. Because we were “in Christ” as His seed, all His works are credited to us. Similarly, because we were “in Adam” his works are also our works.

Those who defame their first forebears with profane and obscene charges of gross immorality and going after strange flesh are in fact slandering themselves. This is the point that Christ was making to the Jews when He said:

Matthew 23:29-31

“Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you build the tombs of the prophets and adorn the monuments of the righteous, and say, ‘If we had been living in the days of our fathers, we would not have been partners with them in shedding the blood of the prophets.’ Consequently you bear witness against yourselves, that you are sons of those who murdered the prophets.”

Brothers and sisters, we were there when Adam and Eve transgressed in the garden. Their sin was our sin, and it was serious, for they turned away from God to become servants to their appetites and to the beast nature. Yet, we can be thankful that they did not do the things that the advocates of the serpent seed doctrine charge them with. Let us not add to our shame by slandering our own parents, and charging them with vile wickedness that they did not commit.

Creation by the Numbers



"Numbers constitute the only universal language." Nathanael West

"Nature's great book is written in mathematics." Galileo

"Mathematics is a more powerful instrument of knowledge than any other that has been bequeathed to us by human agency." Descartes

Whatever you think about the quotations above, it is an inescapable fact that the creation was formed with great mathematical precision. Galileo declared that mathematics is the language in which nature's book is written. If anything, the famed astronomer is guilty of understatement. Yahweh not only has fashioned the heavens and the earth with a remarkable degree of mathematical precision and order, He also uses numbers to communicate spiritual truth.

Numbers in the Bible are not random. They are associated with ideas. Numbers in Scripture are utilized consistently to demonstrate a type of coded communication. Those who understand their meaning are able to recognize the divine design that has chosen certain numbers in specific associations. Patterns that are recognized in this way guide the reader to further insight into the message God is communicating through His word.

An example of a number being associated with a specific idea is observed in the number twelve. Yahweh has chosen this number to communicate an idea of "divine election and perfected government." Jacob had twelve sons who became the fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel. Yahshua chose twelve men to be His disciples and to serve as apostles to establish the first foundations of the church. In the book of Revelation we read of the overcomers who stand with the Savior on Mount Zion. These overcomers will rule and reign with Christ during the millennial period. Their number is given as 144,000 - 12,000 from each of the twelve tribes of Israel. This repetition of the number twelve is not mere coincidence. Yahweh has determined that this number convey the idea of election and government.

Another profoundly significant number invested with divine meaning is seven. In the very first

chapter of the Bible we learn that the creation “week” consisted of seven days. The first six days were full of creative activity and on the seventh day God rested. This seven day “week” has remained pervasive throughout man’s history as a basic unit of counting time. Whether men are Christian, or non-believers; whether they regard the Bible as divine truth, or nothing more than fable and superstition, the week of seven days is observed by all. The number seven continues to be featured prominently to the last book of the Bible. In Revelation we read of seven churches, seven stars, seven angels, seven lampstands, seven spirits of God, seven seals, seven horns, seven eyes, seven trumpets, seven peals of thunder, seven thousand people who perish in an earthquake, a dragon with seven heads and on his heads seven crowns, seven plagues, seven golden bowls containing the wrath of God, and seven mountains. Only the naive could dismiss the number seven as bearing no particular significance to God.

The number seven is intrinsically tied to this present creation of the earth. In the book *Number in Scriptures*, E.W. Bullinger provides insight into the profound significance of numbers throughout the creation. He remarks on the fact that the number seven is linked to a divine chronology of events.

CHRONOLOGY

The first natural division of time is stamped by the Number seven. On the seventh day God rested from His work of Creation.

When He ordained the ritual for Israel which should show forth His work of Redemption, seven is again stamped upon it in all its times and seasons. The seventh day was the holy day; the seventh month was specially hallowed by its number of sacred festivals; the seventh year was the Sabbatic year of rest for the land: while 7 x 7 years marked the year of Jubilee (Lev 25:4,8)...

God's dealings with His people have to do with actual duration of time rather than with specific dates; and we find that His dealings with Israel were measured out into four periods, each consisting of 490 (70 times 7) years. Thus:—

The 1st. From Abraham to the Exodus.

The 2nd. The Exodus to the Dedication of Temple.

The 3rd. From the Temple to Nehemiah's return.

The 4th. From Nehemiah to the Second Advent.

It is clear that these are periods of duration having regard only to Israel, and to Jehovah's immediate dealings with them. For in each one there is a period of time during which He was not immediately governing them, but in which His hand was removed, and His people were without visible tokens of His presence with them.

You can see how Bullinger arrived at the calculation of these four periods of time in his book. http://philologos.org/_eb-nis/chap01.htm#2 Bullinger continues to demonstrate how the number seven is stamped upon other aspects of this present creation.

NATURE

We see the same law at work in various departments of nature. Sometimes one number is the dominant factor, sometimes another. In nature seven is found to mark the only possible mode of classification of the mass of individuals which constitutes the special department called science. We give the seven divisions, with examples from the animal and vegetable kingdoms. The one specimen of an animal (the dog) and one specimen of a flower (the rose).



I.	KINGDOM	Animal	Vegetable
II.	SUB-KINGDOM	Vertebrata	Phanerogamia
III.	CLASS	Mammalia	Dicotyledon
IV.	ORDER	Carnivora	Rosiflorae
V.	FAMILY	Canidae	Rosaciae
VI.	GENUS	Dog	Rosa
VII.	SPECIES	Spaniel	Tea-rose

PHYSIOLOGY

offers a vast field for illustration, but here again the grand impress is seen to be the number seven. The days of man's years are "Three-score years and ten" (7x10). In seven years the whole structure of his body changes: and we are all familiar with "the seven ages of man."

There are seven Greek words used to describe these seven ages, according to Philo:—

1. *Infancy (paidion, child).*
2. *Childhood (pais boy).*
3. *Youth (meirakion, lad, stripling).*
4. *Adolescence (neaniskos, young man).*
5. *Manhood (aner, man).*
6. *Decline (presbutes, old man).*
7. *Senility (geron, aged man).*

The various periods of gestation also are commonly a multiple of seven, either of days or weeks.

With INSECTS the ova are hatched from seven half-days (as the wasp, bee, etc.); while with others it is seven whole days. The majority of insects require from 14 (2x7) to 42 (6x7) days; the same applies to the larva state.

With ANIMALS the period of gestation of—

The mouse is 21 (3x7) days.

The hare and rat, 28 (4x7) days.

The cat, 56 (8x7) days.

The dog, 63 (9x7) days.

The lion, 98 (14x7) days.

The sheep, 147 (21x7) days.

With BIRDS, the gestation of—

The common hen is 21 (3x7) days.

The duck, 42 (6x7) days.

With the Human species it is 280 days (or 40x7).

Bullinger remarks on another number that pervades the creation. It is the number 3.

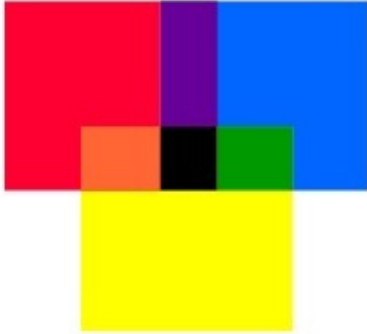
It is not always seven, however, which is the predominant factor in physiology or natural history.

In the case of the BEE, it is the number three which pervades its phenomena—

- *In three days the egg of the queen is hatched.*
- *It is fed for nine days (3x3).*
- *It reaches maturity in 15 days (5x3).*
- *The worker grub reaches maturity in 21 days (7x3).*
- *And is at work three days after leaving its cell.*
- *The drone matures in 24 days (8x3).*
- *The bee is composed of three sections,— head and two stomachs.*
- *The two eyes are made up of about 3,000 small eyes, each (like the cells of the comb) having six sides (2x3).*
- *Underneath the body are six (2x3) wax scales with which the comb is made.*
- *It has six (2x3) legs. Each leg is composed of three sections.*
- *The foot is formed of three triangular sections.*
- *The antennae consist of nine (3x3) sections.*
- *The sting has nine (3x3) barbs on each side.*

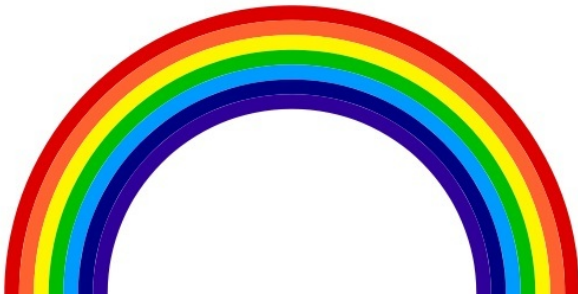
Is this design, or is it chance? Why should it be the number three instead of any other number? No one can tell. We can only observe the wondrous working of supernatural laws, and admire the perfection of design...

It is most impressive when it is observed that sound and color (light) are marked by both the numbers three and seven. In music we find that all sound is naturally divided into three octaves of seven notes each (Do, Re, Mi, Fa, Sol, La, Ti). In the realm of light we find that all colors can be formed from three primary colors (Red, Blue, Yellow)



Primary Colors

The visible spectrum of light that the human eye can see is often observed in the rainbow. The colors of the rainbow appear as seven in number. In school they taught us to remember these colors by imagining the discover of this phenomena as being named ROY G. BIV (Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Blue, Indigo, Violet).



ROY G. BIV

One might ask why God should choose to stamp the creation with the numbers three and seven? What is the significance of these numbers? The answer leads back to what the Bible reveals of the nature of God. There are three numbers that are peculiarly found in descriptions of God. These numbers are one, three, and seven.

One

Deuteronomy 6:4-5

“Hear, O Israel! Yahweh is our God. Yahweh is *one*!”

Three

Matthew 28:19

“Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of *the Father* and *the Son* and *the Holy Spirit*...”

Seven

Revelation 4:5

And there were seven lamps of fire burning before the throne, which are *the seven Spirits of God*.

It appears that Yahweh chose to imbue the creation with those same attributes and numbers that are characteristic of His own being. Consider that Christ, the visible manifestation of the invisible God, is called both “the Word of God,” and “the Light of the world.” Since the Son of God is compared to that which is both heard and seen, it is fitting that both sound and light should be marked with the numbers one, three, and seven. When we listen to a song, we may say we heard one song, yet the musical tones of that song can be broken down to its constituent seven notes in three octaves. When we observe the colors of the rainbow displayed across the heavens, we may say that we saw one rainbow, yet the rainbow can be subdivided to seven distinct colors, and all colors visible to the eye of man can be formed of three primary colors. Thus, all that mankind can hear and see is peculiarly stamped with the numbers of God.

Man himself is marked by these same numbers. This is to be expected, for Yahweh Elohim said, “Let us create man in Our Image, after Our likeness.” I am one man. Yet I am comprised of three distinct parts.

I Thessalonians 5:23

Now may the God of peace Himself sanctify you entirely; and may your *spirit* and *soul* and *body* be preserved complete...

The spirit, soul, and body of man can be further divided into seven constituent parts.

Spirit:

Conscience

Intuition

Communion

Soul:

Cognition (Mind)

Volition (Will)

Emotion

Body:

Body (Sensory life)

As we look throughout the Scriptures we find that Yahweh has repeated this same pattern in manifold ways. The Temple and the Tabernacle were both divided into three sections. There was the Outer Court (corresponding to man’s body), The Inner Court (corresponding to man’s soul), and the Holy of Holies (corresponding to man’s spirit). These three areas of the Temple and Tabernacle also relate to the three members of the Godhead: Christ/The Outer Court; The Holy Spirit/The Inner Court; God the Father/The Holy of Holies.

Inside the Temple we also find a remarkable item that reveals further the divine numbers one, three, and seven. This is the Golden Candlestick.



Moses was given a commandment by Yahweh to form the candlestick of a single piece of “beaten gold.” Thus the body of the candlestick was formed all of one piece. The body of the candlestick is representative of the Son of God. His body was also beaten, yet He was pure and holy like refined gold. The candlestick was fashioned into seven individual branching candles. The candlestick did not hold wax candles as we think of them today. Rather, it burned the pure, beaten oil derived from the crushed flesh of the olive. The olive oil was poured into the hollow candlestick and each branch was lit. The oil represents the Holy Spirit. Oil is used to signify anointing throughout the Bible, and John refers to the Holy Spirit as the “anointing” (I John 2: 20, 27). The flames represent the seven spirits of Yahweh.

In the candlestick we clearly see the numbers one, three, and seven. We may say truly that there is only one candlestick. Yet the one candlestick has three distinct parts. It has the body of gold. It has the holy oil. It also has the flame (for our God is a consuming fire). In the book of Revelations we see that Christ is walking among the seven candlesticks representing the seven churches of Asia Minor. It is fitting that the candlestick should serve both as a symbol of God, as well as the people of God. Yahweh has determined that His people should be conformed to His image and likeness.

I will give but one more example of how Yahweh has used these three numbers in the Scriptures. The feasts of Yahweh are three in number. They are the Feast of Passover, the Feast of Pentecost, and the Feast of Tabernacles (Sukkot). Just like these other examples, these three feasts are further divisible into seven, for both Passover and Tabernacles are three part events.

Passover

Feast of Passover

Feast of Unleavened Bread

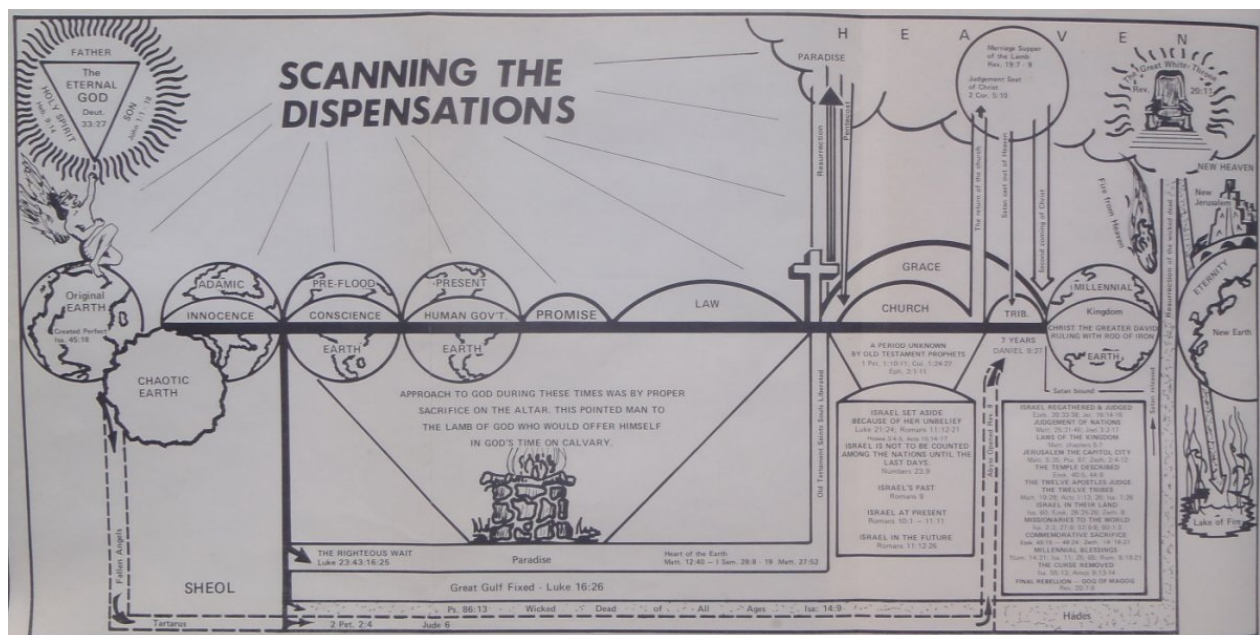
Feast of Firstfruits

Tabernacles
Feast of Trumpets
Day of Atonement
Feast of Tabernacles

Observing that Yahweh has established this pattern of numbers in the creation to denote that which is full and complete, is there a similar testimony to be observed in the earth? After all, man's flesh was formed of the dust of the earth. Should we not then expect to find the numbers one, three, and seven to have as clear an association to the earth as it does to humanity? The answer is a resounding "Yes!"

I first came across this tertiary (three fold) and septenary (seven fold) design of the earth when I was in my early twenties. A sister of mine was attending LeTourneau College (now LeTourneau University) in Texas. This is an engineering school founded by a Christian man. I remember my sister saying, “I don’t care if I get a Bachelor of Science, or a Bachelor of Arts, as long as I get a bachelor.” My sister was single at the time, and LeTourneau’s student body was about 90% male. She was successful in her aim, marrying an engineering student from the College.

More important to this study, however, is that my sister's curriculum included Bible classes. An Old Testament Survey course she took was taught by a man by the name of Kenneth F. McKinney. Mr. McKinney had written a book titled *Scanning the Plan*. My sister showed me the book, and I soon acquired a copy for myself. Mr. McKinney taught the Ruin/Restoration view of Genesis, also known as "the Gap Theory." Inside the cover of the book was a fold out banner showing the seven stages of the earth, and displaying three separate creations of the earth.



If, and only if, one adopts the ruin/restoration doctrine of Genesis do we find that the earth conforms to the divine pattern we have observed where that which Yahweh creates is stamped with the numbers one, three, and seven. Following are the three creations of the earth as set forth in the Scriptures.

The First Earth

Genesis 1:1

In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.

This is the first earth which was created before the fall of Satan. It is the earth of the dinosaurs and other pre-Adamic creatures. This earth was destroyed when Satan rebelled and was cast down. This first earth suffered catastrophic judgment, becoming formless, void, and covered in darkness.

The Second Earth

The second earth is the one we now live on. Its creation, or rather “restoration,” began in Genesis 1:3 as Yahweh said “Let there be light.” With this declaration God began to remove the curse upon the original earth and to fashion things anew, culminating in the creation of Adam on day six. This present earth will be destroyed by fire, as the apostle Peter prophesied.

II Peter 3:7, 10

But by His word the present heavens and earth are being reserved for fire, kept for the day of judgment and destruction of ungodly men... But the day of the Lord will come like a thief, in which the heavens will pass away with a roar and the elements will be destroyed with intense heat, and the earth and its works will be burned up.

The Third Earth

Revelation 21:1

Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth; for the former heaven and the former earth passed away, and there is no longer any sea.

There is a parallel in these three earths to mankind that I would draw the reader’s attention unto. In a sense, the first two earths were a single entity, for the first earth that was judged by God was not annihilated, or done away with. It was merely made formless, void and covered in darkness. Yet, the third earth is a completely new earth, and in a true sense it can also be called the second true earth, and the last earth.

I find in this a remarkable parallel to Adam and his descendants, and to “the last Adam” who is Christ. Like the first earth, Adam was created blameless. However, Adam rebelled against God, fell into sin, and suffered judgment. The condition of the first earth under judgment bears a remarkable likeness to Adam and his descendants under judgment. Adam was created to bear the likeness and image of God, but this likeness was lost and no longer attainable after Adam sinned. In this regard, Adam became formless, having lost the form of God. There was no man born of Adam who could say, “If you have seen me you have seen God.” The first man to be able to speak these words in truth was Christ. He alone had the form of God.

Adam was also void. That is to say, he was empty. Mankind was created to be a temple of the Holy

Spirit. This purpose was left unfulfilled due to the sin of Adam. It would not be until AFTER Christ died on the cross and rose again that the Holy Spirit would be given to indwell humanity. Until Christ, the Holy Spirit had been “with” many men and women, but it would only be after Pentecost when the Holy Spirit descended that He would be “in” men and women.

John 14:16-17

“And I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Helper, that He may be with you forever; that is the Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive, because it does not behold Him or know Him, but you know Him because *He abides with you, and will be in you.*”

Due to Adam’s sin, mankind also became darkened in their understanding.

Ephesians 4:17-18

This I say therefore, and affirm together with the Lord, that you walk no longer just as the Gentiles also walk, in the futility of their mind, being darkened in their understanding, excluded from the life of God...

Thus, man’s condition was that he too was formless, void, and covered in darkness. There came a time, however, when God began to move to re-create the earth under judgment. The first thing He had to do was to send light upon the earth, for it had been sealed up in darkness.

Genesis 1:3

Then God said, “Let there be light”; and there was light.

Similarly, in order to redeem mankind Yahweh had to begin by sending him light.

John 12:44, 46

And Yahshua cried out and said, “I have come as light into the world, that everyone who believes in Me may not remain in darkness.”

Each of the six days of the re-creation of the earth in Genesis chapter one finds its spiritual correspondence in mankind and is set forth in the Gospels. I have set forth the parallel between the days of the reformation of the earth and the re-birth of man in the book [*The Mark of the Beast*](#) as well as in the teaching titled [*The Seven Days of Man*](#). I will not repeat that information here, but would point out that the second earth is intended by God to serve as a parable for regenerated man. Those who are born again of the Spirit of Christ are said to be “new creations” even as we consider the earth that was reformed beginning in Genesis 1:3 to be a new creation.

II Corinthians 5:17

Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; old things have passed away; behold, all things have become new.

NKJV

In actuality, however, regenerated man is the Adamic man re-born. We still inhabit the same bodies in which sin is present, but light has now come, and the presence of God is making all things new for

us. Similarly, in the second earth we find that light returned, but there was still evil present among the creation, for the serpent was in the Garden, and Satan was actively seeking to lead humanity into sin.

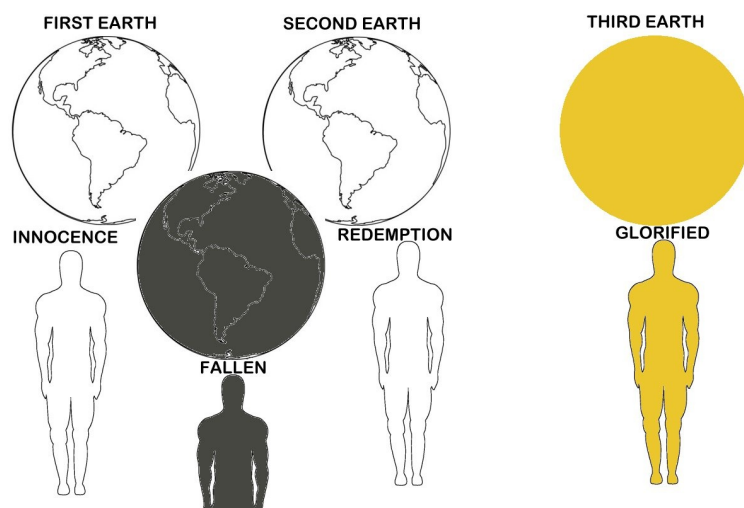
As Christians we live an existence that parallels the second earth. There is warfare present in our members between good and evil, light and darkness. This condition cannot continue forever, even as this present earth, even when it is under the rule of Christ as it will be in the Millennial period, cannot continue in its present form. A complete and final end must be made to sin, darkness, and evil.

Peter tells us that this present heaven and earth are being reserved for fire. They must be consumed. This will be a far more thorough judgment than what occurred in Genesis 1:2 when the earth was made formless, void, and sealed in darkness. This present physical world must be completely done away with. Similarly, these mortal bodies that know sin and death must also be destroyed in order than we might receive new glorified bodies that will no longer no sin or death.

I Corinthians 15:53-54

For this perishable must put on the imperishable, and this mortal must put on immortality. But when this perishable will have put on the imperishable, and this mortal will have put on immortality, then will come about the saying that is written, “Death is swallowed up in victory.”

The third and last earth which has no seas and no darkness is symbolic of the final and glorious state of man. Seas represent death throughout the Scripture. When the Israelites crossed through the sea after departing Egypt, the apostle Paul states that they were “baptized into Moses” (I Corinthians 10:1-2). Baptism is symbolic of dying and being resurrected to new life. When we go under the water we die. When we come back up out of the water it is symbolic of entering into new life. The last earth cannot have any seas, for there will be no death. Similarly, mankind must lay aside these mortal and corruptible bodies and put on that which is immortal and incorruptible.



The illustration above shows the three creations of the earth and man. There is the first man Adam in his innocence. He corresponds to that first earth that was before the fall of Satan and prior to sin entering the creation.

There is the fallen man. He finds his correspondence to the earth after sin. Everything is formless, void, and covered in darkness.

We then see redeemed man, those who are new creations in Christ. This new creation man finds his correspondence to the earth that has been created anew in Genesis 1:3 and following. It is the earth we now live on, and the condition of this man is observed in those who have been born again of the Spirit of Christ and have become partakers of the divine nature. Nevertheless, these ones find that sin still dwells in their flesh. Death is still at work in the physical body.

Finally, we see the glorified man who has laid aside the body made of dust and has received a new immortal and incorruptible body. This man finds his correspondence in the new earth that will appear after this present earth is consumed in fire. It is an earth without seas, without death, without sin. All is radiant, glorious, righteous and holy.

At this time, there is only one man who has arrived at this final, glorious state. That man is Yahshua the Messiah. He has passed through death into life. Death no longer has any hold over Him. He is never to die again. The apostle Paul refers to Christ as “the last Adam” and the last earth serves as a symbol of His glorious condition. This glorified condition is also the promised future condition of those who have been born again of the Spirit of Christ, and who are putting the flesh to death.

I John 3:2-3

Beloved, now we are children of God, and it has not appeared as yet what we shall be. We know that, when He appears, we shall be like Him, because we shall see Him just as He is. And everyone who has this hope fixed on Him purifies himself, just as He is pure.

How then do we complete the divine numerical pattern by identifying seven distinct divisions of the earth’s existence? Kenneth F. McKinley, in his book *Scanning the Plan*, breaks down the three creations of the earth into seven subsidiary states.

(1) Original Earth

“In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth” (Genesis 1:1). This earth was created prior to sin’s appearance. Satan had not yet fallen, and the heavens and earth were at peace.

(2) Chaotic Earth

“But the earth became formless and void and darkness was upon the face of the deep” (Genesis 1:2). This is the earth after the fall of Satan. The length of time which the earth lay under this judgment is not known. Being sealed in darkness, this was likely a period in which the earth was covered in ice, corresponding with evidence of an ancient ice age.

(3) Adamic Earth

“Then God said, ‘Let there be light’” (Genesis 1:3). This is the re-created earth as described in Genesis chapters one and two, before the fall of man. The earth is a paradise. There is no rain, but a mist arose from the ground to water the earth (Genesis 2:6). Mankind has not sinned, but Satan is present upon the earth.

(4) Pre-Flood Earth

“Cursed is the ground because of you; In toil you shall eat of it all the days of your life. Both thorns and thistles it shall grow for you; And you shall eat the plants of the field by the sweat of your face...” (Genesis 3:17-19). This is the earth after Adam sinned. Sin and death have now entered the creation. The earth no longer gives forth abundantly.

(5) Present Earth

This is the earth after the flood of Noah. It is an earth under human government. After the flood Yahweh shortened man's life span from a thousand years to one hundred-twenty years (Genesis 6:3). This present state of the earth will continue until the millennial reign of Christ.

(6) Millennial Earth

“Blessed and holy is the one who has a part in the first resurrection; over these the second death has no power, but they will be priests of God and of Christ and will reign with Him for a thousand years” (Revelation 20:6). During this period Satan will be bound. Christ will reign upon the earth with His overcoming saints. Sin and death will still be present, but greatly mitigated.

Isaiah 65:20

There shall no more be in it an infant who lives but a few days, or an old man who dies prematurely; for the child shall die a hundred years old, and the sinner who dies when only a hundred years old shall be [thought only a child, cut off because he is] accursed.

(Amplified Bible)

After a thousand years Satan will be loosed and war and judgment will result once more. The present earth will be consumed with fire. Then will come the third and final creation of the earth, which will also be the seventh state of the earth.

(7) New Earth

There will be no sea on the new earth. Seas represent death, and death will be no more. These seven states of the earth conform to the septenary (seven fold) design which God has imprinted upon the creation.

It is apparent that in each of these seven stages of the earth that a significant change has occurred. The creation cannot be complete until it fulfills the divine numerical design. Even as the Creator has revealed Himself in the numbers one, three, and seven, so too must the earth, and the man who was formed from the dust of the earth, bear this same imprint. All that is full and complete is marked by these numbers.

Consider how this divine pattern is broken when one rejects the ruin/restoration doctrine of Genesis

chapter one. We are left with only two distinct creations of the earth, and there are only five distinct states of the earth. The numbers two and five are not used by Yahweh to denote the perfection and completeness of the creation.

By itself, the evidence I have presented here of the mathematical pattern Yahweh has designed into His creation is insufficient to establish, or prove doctrine. Yet, when such a profound pattern is observed as one studies the Scriptures, it can serve as one more affirmation of the truth.

Yahweh's Calendar

SPRING

Luni-solar Calendar with Feast Days

First Month	Second Month	Third Month
1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th	1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th	1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
2 3 4 5 6 7 8	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
9 10 11 12 13 14 15	9 10 11 12 13 14 15	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
16 17 18 19 20 21 22	16 17 18 19 20 21 22	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
23 24 25 26 27 28 29	23 24 25 26 27 28 29	23 24 25 26 27 28 29
30* 16th = Day of First Fruits	30	30

SUMMER

* Please note: Not all months will have 30 days. Some months will only have 29 days.

Fourth Month	Fifth Month	Sixth Month
1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th	1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th	1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
2 3 4 5 6 7 8	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
9 10 11 12 13 14 15	9 10 11 12 13 14 15	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
16 17 18 19 20 21 22	16 17 18 19 20 21 22	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
23 24 25 26 27 28 29	23 24 25 26 27 28 29	23 24 25 26 27 28 29
30* The 30th day is called Translation Day	30	30

FALL

Seventh Month	Eighth Month	Ninth Month
1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th	1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th	1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
2 3 4 5 6 7 8	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
9 10 11 12 13 14 15	9 10 11 12 13 14 15	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
16 17 18 19 20 21 22	16 17 18 19 20 21 22	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
23 24 25 26 27 28 29	23 24 25 26 27 28 29	23 24 25 26 27 28 29
30	30	30

WINTER

Tenth Month	Eleventh Month	Twelfth Month
1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th	1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th	1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
2 3 4 5 6 7 8	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
9 10 11 12 13 14 15	9 10 11 12 13 14 15	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
16 17 18 19 20 21 22	16 17 18 19 20 21 22	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
23 24 25 26 27 28 29	23 24 25 26 27 28 29	23 24 25 26 27 28 29
30	30	30

Color Key:

New Moon Day **Seventh-day Sabbath** **Feast of Passover** **Day of Atonement**
 Interim Days of Unleavened Bread **Last day of U.L. Bread Feast Sabbath**
Feast of Pentecost **Feast of Trumpets** **Interim feast days of Feast of Tabernacles**
High Sabbath - **First day of Feast of Unleavened Bread & Feast of Tabernacles**

The 30th day is called Translation Day and is a lunar cycle completion day

* Please note: Not all months will have 30 days. Some months will only have 29 days.

The study of the early foundations of human history and this present creation would be incomplete if it did not include an examination of the celestial testimony that Yahweh wrote upon the immense canvas of the heavens. It is a message placed where all mankind and the angels can read it. In this present age the heavenly constellations are viewed with great disdain by the church. Christians have been taught to associate the constellations of the zodiac with pagan astrology. To many believers, looking to the stars to discern a divine message is considered as great of an evil as consulting a medium, or participating in a seance. The majority of Christians today have been taught that the practice of star-gazing to receive a divine message has its origins in idolatrous religions.

The rejection of Yahweh's heavenly message provides evidence of how little most Christians study the Scriptures to discern truth for themselves. Many, having heard their pastor, or some Christian teacher, warn against paying heed to occult astrology and horoscopes, have been all too willing to relegate the entire field of celestial signs and messages to Satan's domain. This constitutes an imprudent overreaction to Satan's corruption of a mode of communication that Yahweh originated. Rejecting celestial signs and messages is an untenable position to adopt from a purely Biblical perspective.

Christians exhibit a mental contradiction when they annually recount the story of the magi who were informed of the birth of the King of the Jews by their observations of the heavens, while at the same time condemning the practice of receiving divine messages from the stars. In the Gospels we read of the wise men seeing the Messiah's star announcing His birth. Acting upon the celestial revelation, these wise men traveled to Jerusalem, ultimately arriving at the home where Joseph and Mary dwelt with the young Messiah in Bethlehem.

Matthew 2:1-2, 10-12

Now after Yahshua was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, behold, magi from the east arrived in Jerusalem, saying, “Where is He who has been born King of the Jews? For we saw His star in the east, and have come to worship Him...” And when they saw the star, they rejoiced exceedingly with great joy. And they came into the house and saw the Child with Mary His mother; and they fell down and worshiped Him; and opening their treasures they presented to Him gifts of gold and frankincense and myrrh. And having been warned by God in a dream not to return to Herod, they departed for their own country by another way.

Here we have worshipers of the Son of God bowing prostrate before Him and presenting gifts of great value and significance. Not only are we informed that these wise men from the East rightly discerned the heavenly message announcing the birth of God’s Son, but they afterward received further communication from God in a dream, informing them of the treachery of King Herod, and advising them to take another route on their return journey. It is readily apparent that Yahweh spoke to these learned men of the East through the stars even as He did through a dream. There is NOTHING in this account that would condemn the practice of looking to the heavens for divine messages.



Star of Bethlehem, 1890, Sir Edward Burne-Jones

If this passage were an isolated account, and there were no more Scriptural references to Yahweh speaking through celestial signs, it might be viewed as an anomaly, with no endorsement of the practice implied. However, it is not an anomaly. There are many passages that speak of the role of the stars and constellations being used as a divine message board by Yahweh. Not only was the first coming of the Messiah announced by signs in the heavens, but Yahshua has informed His disciples that His second coming to the earth will be preceded by a similar testimony in the heavens.

Luke 21:25-28

“And there will be signs in sun and moon and stars and upon the earth, dismay among nations in perplexity at the roaring of the sea and the waves, men fainting from fear and the expectation of the things which are coming upon the world; for the powers of the heavens will be shaken. And then they will see the Son of Man coming in a cloud with power and great glory. But when these things begin to take place, straighten up and lift up your heads, because your redemption is drawing near.”

Even as there were signs in the heavens announcing the birth of the King of the Jews, there will be heavenly signs announcing the time of His return. The sun and moon and stars serve as Yahweh's appointed messengers. The wise men from the East understood this and accurately read the divine message while King Herod and the Jewish religious leaders were ignorant of the fact that the birth of their long awaited Messiah, the most anticipated event in all of Jewish history, was occurring in their day.

It should not seem strange that Yahweh would use the stars to speak to mankind. There is a profound correlation made between stars and messengers in the Bible. We begin to see this as we observe that the angels of God are often associated with the stars of the heaven.

Job 38:6-7

"On what were [the earth's] bases sunk? Or who laid its cornerstone, when the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy?"

"The sons of God" (bene ha elohim) is a reference to the angelic hosts. They were present at the creation of the earth. These sons of God are also called "morning stars." In this passage from the book of Job we read of the stars "singing" and "shouting for joy." Both "singing" and "shouting for joy" are forms of communication, something most people do not associate with stars.

In the New Testament, the Greek word used to describe these heavenly messengers is "angelos." This Greek word that is rendered into English as "angel," literally means "a messenger." We see this meaning affirmed in the word "evangelist" which is defined as "a messenger of good news." In the New Testament angelos is oftentimes translated as "messenger," whether heavenly or terrestrial.

Matthew 11:9-10

"But what did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I say to you, and more than a prophet. For this is he of whom it is written: 'Behold, I send My *messenger* (angelos) before Your face, who will prepare Your way before You.'"

In these words, Yahshua describes John the Baptist as an "angelos," a messenger. The correlation between an "angelos" and a star is further revealed in the book of Revelation as the Son of God is figured as holding seven stars in His right hand.

Revelation 1:20

"As for the mystery of the seven stars which you saw in My right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: *the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches*, and the seven lampstands are the seven churches."



Star of Bethlehem - Close Up, Sir Edward Burne-Jones

Some translations render the word “angels” here as “messengers.”

Revelation 1:20

As to the hidden meaning (the mystery) of the seven stars which you saw on My right hand and the seven lampstands of gold: ***the seven stars are the seven angels (messengers)*** of the seven assemblies (churches) and the seven lampstands are the seven churches.

[Amplified Bible]

Revelation 1:20

The seven stars are the messengers of the seven assemblies, and the seven lampstands are the seven assemblies.

[The New Testament: An Expanded Translation by Kenneth S. Wuest]

Revelation 1:20

The secret of the seven stars that thou hast seen upon my right hand, and the seven golden lamp-stands: ***the seven stars are messengers of the seven assemblies***, and the seven lamp-stands that thou hast seen are seven assemblies.

[Young’s Literal Translation]

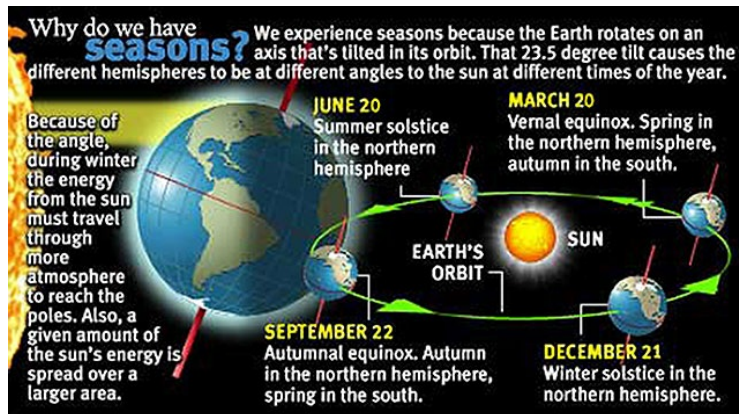
It is demonstrably proven by the Scriptures that stars are intended to be viewed as divine messengers. The utilization of stars and other heavenly bodies as divine messengers is established from the very first chapter of the Bible.

Genesis 1:14-18

Then God said, “Let there be lights in the expanse of the heavens to separate the day from the night, and let them be for signs, and for seasons, and for days and years; and let them be for lights in the expanse of the heavens to give light on the earth”; and it was so. And God made the two great lights, the greater light to govern the day, and the lesser light to govern the night; He made the stars also. And God placed them in the expanse of the heavens to give light on the earth, and to govern the day and the night, and to separate the light from the darkness; and God saw that it was good.

There is a mystery contained in these words whose depths need to be plumbed. Many Bible teachers

when discoursing on this passage from Genesis, comment on the divine role the heavenly bodies serve as they mark the annual seasons and passage of months and years. Although much more is indicated by this passage, it is certainly true that Yahweh determined that the lights in the heavens should serve as a sort of divine calendar. The passage above states that the lights in the heavens are “for seasons.” We recognize that the angle at which the earth faces the Sun changes over the course of a year. This results in distinct seasons being observed on the earth.



The Hebrew word translated as “seasons” in the passage above is “moed.” A common mistake is made due to the fact that we are reading an English translation of a book originally written in ancient Hebrew. The mistake is in assuming that the Hebrew word translated as “seasons” is referring to the four seasons of the year that we know as winter, spring, summer and fall. The Hebrew word “moed” actually means an “appointed time.”

The feasts of God are collectively called “moedim.” Three times a year, on dates prescribed by God, all Israel was required to gather at the place appointed to observe the feasts. The dates were based upon Yahweh’s divine calendar. We can see the relationship between the moon and Yahweh’s calendar and appointed times in the following verses.

Psalms 104:19

You made the moon to mark the [moedim], and the sun knows when to set.

Isaiah 66:23

“And it shall be from new moon to new moon and from sabbath to sabbath, all mankind will come to bow down before Me,” says Yahweh.

If we were to state the verse above in modern vernacular we might say, “from month to month and from week to week, all mankind will come to bow down before Me.” The new moon marked the beginning of the month for the Jews. This was Yahweh’s design for a calendar. The English word month is derived from an ancient Germanic word meaning “moon.” The time it takes for the moon to go through all of its phases and return to the same point is 29.53 days. Because the lunar cycle does not perfectly match the solar day, the month prescribed by Yahweh may be either 29 or 30 days in length.



The first day of every month is referred to in Hebrew as Rosh Chodesh. Rosh Chodesh means “head of the month” and it occurs on the first sighting of the new moon over Israel. You can note on the calendar above that the days of the week are numbered, rather than named. Yahweh did not assign names to the days of the week such as Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, etc.. These names are pagan in origin, the days of the week being named after a specific god that was honored during each consecutive 24 hour period. The beginning of this practice was ancient Babylon. The Babylonians recognized five planetary bodies, as well as the sun and moon. Each one of these planetary bodies were named after gods.

It is easy to recognize the name of the moon in Monday, and the Sun in Sunday. The other five days of the week which correlate to planets and their associated gods bear different names depending upon the nation, language and century in which the calendar was in use. Four of the five names for the days of the week have come down to us in English through Norse or Teutonic mythology. The fifth bears a Roman name.

- Tuesday - Tiws’ Day, Tyr - God of War. One of the sons of Woden. (Corresponds to the Roman god **Mars**.)
- Wednesday - Woden’s Day - The chief Teutonic deity. (Corresponds to the Roman god **Mercury**.)
- Thursday - Thor’s Day - Hammer wielding god of thunder and lightning. (Corresponds to the Roman god **Jupiter**.)
- Friday - Frige’s Day, Freya - Wife of Woden, and goddess of beauty and love (Corresponds to the Roman goddess **Venus**.)
- Saturday - Saturn’s Day - The Roman God **Saturn**.

For obvious reasons, Yahweh eschewed the use of such names, referring to each day of the week solely by its numeric value. This is true even of the Sabbath, for the word Sabbath (shabbat) in Hebrew means “seventh.”

Yahweh’s appointed calendar for His people has always been a Lunar calendar. It seems significant that Yahweh would force men to look up toward the heavens to determine what time it is. Yahweh desires mankind to remember that the creation runs according to a divine calendar of events. Yahweh has appointed times and seasons for mankind. Every event upon this earth is running according to a heavenly timetable, a divine plan of the ages. It is important for Christians to recognize this truth. Nothing can hinder God’s calendar, or speed it up. There is a time appointed for all things under the

Sun.

Isaiah 46:9-10

“Remember the former things long past, for I am God, and there is no other; I am God, and there is no one like Me, declaring the end from the beginning and from ancient times things which have not been done, saying, 'My purpose will be established, and I will accomplish all My good pleasure.'”

Isaiah 48:3

“I declared the former things long ago and they went forth from My mouth, and I proclaimed them. Suddenly I acted, and they came to pass.”

Before Adam was formed, even before the stars were set in their courses, Yahweh established by His own counsel a divine plan of the ages. He saw the end from the beginning and appointed times for every event, culminating in the reconciliation of the entire creation back to Himself through His Son Yahshua.

Ephesians 3:8-11

Unto me—the less than least of all saints, was given this favour, unto the nations, to announce the glad-message of the untraceable riches of the Christ, and to bring to light—what is the administration of the sacred secret which had been hidden away from the AGES in God, who did all things create: In order that now, unto the principalities and the authorities in the heavenlies, might be made known, through means of the assembly, the manifold wisdom of God,— According to a plan of the ages which He made in the anointed Jesus our Lord.

(Rotherham's Emphasized Bible)

There is a profound precision to the calendar of God. The exactness of events that occur on Yahweh's timetable is observed everywhere throughout the Scriptures. The Israelites wandered for forty years in the wilderness, and Yahshua was tested for forty days in the wilderness at the beginning of His ministry. The Israelites came up from Egypt at the appointed time, on the night of the first Passover. This occurred 430 years to the day from the time they first entered Egypt.

Exodus 12:40-41

Now the time that the sons of Israel lived in Egypt was four hundred and thirty years. And it came about at the end of four hundred and thirty years, to the very day, that all the hosts of Yahweh went out from the land of Egypt.

The first three kings of Israel, and the only three to rule over the entire twelve tribes, each in turn ruled for forty years and then died.

Acts 13:21

And then they asked for a king, and God gave them Saul the son of Kish, a man of the tribe of Benjamin, for forty years.

I Kings 2:11

And the days that David reigned over Israel were forty years...

II Chronicles 9:30

And Solomon reigned forty years in Jerusalem over all Israel.

Similarly, we see that Joseph, David and Yahshua were all 30 years of age when they began their ministry.

Genesis 41:46

Now Joseph was thirty years old when he stood before Pharaoh, king of Egypt.

II Samuel 5:4

David was thirty years old when he became king...

Luke 3:23

And when He began His ministry, Yahshua Himself was about thirty years of age...



The design of God's plan bears a greater precision than a Swiss made watch. The stars serve as the jewels in Yahweh's heavenly chronometer, marking the precise moment of every event established by divine fiat. It was Yahweh who determined that there should be 14 generations to divide each of His great works among His chosen people.

Matthew 1:17

Therefore all the generations from Abraham to David are fourteen generations; and from David to the deportation to Babylon fourteen generations; and from the deportation to Babylon to the time of Christ fourteen generations.

Before Adam was formed of the dust of the earth, Yahweh had already set a star in motion that would appear at a precise moment to announce the birth of the Seed of the woman who would redeem mankind from their sins.

Galatians 4:4

But when the fulness of the time came, God sent forth His Son...

Truly the stars and heavenly bodies are given for much more than to mark seasons as most men understand seasons. They were established to declare the “appointed times” of Yahweh. Only One with all power, Who has a will that cannot be resisted, could establish the course of the stars of the heavens to mark events that would not occur until thousands of years later. This knowledge should give great confidence to the faithful servants of God. No matter how much Satan boasts and wicked men prosper, Yahweh has set a limit to their activity. The day has been established when Yahshua will return to rule upon the earth. The minute has been established when every knee will bow, and every tongue confess that Yahshua the Christ is Lord to the glory of God the Father.

Despite the great pride and swelling words of Satan, he recognizes that he is operating on borrowed time. The book of Revelation announces the following.

Revelation 12:12

"For this reason, rejoice, O heavens and you who dwell in them. Woe to the earth and the sea, because the devil has come down to you, having great wrath, knowing that he has only a short time."

Before Satan ever rebelled, Yahweh had established a limit to the time of his insurrection. The day of Satan's judgment was determined from the beginning of Yahweh's plan of the ages. It will not delay. Christ announced during His time on earth that the very hour and day of His return are known to the Father, yet disclosed to no one. That hour hastens forward, and will not delay.

Hebrews 10:37

For yet in a very little while, He who is coming will come, and will not delay.

The remarkable characteristic of Yahweh's creation that sets it apart from the works of men and angels, is its irresistible character. There is an appointed time for everything. The clock of God, just like the starry heavens above, never loses a second, nor does it run fast. It is always right on time.

We have observed that the calendar Yahweh delivered to His people to mark the time of events established by His will follows the template of a lunar calendar. Each month begins with a new moon and goes through one complete lunar cycle. God has pegged His moedim, His appointed times, to precise dates on this calendar.

Exodus 12:2

“This month shall be the beginning of months for you; it is to be the first month of the year to you.”

Numbers 9:2-3

Now, let the sons of Israel observe the Passover at its *appointed time* (moed). On the fourteenth day of this month, at twilight, you shall observe it at its *appointed time* (moed); you shall observe it according to all its statutes and according to all its ordinances.

There is a great preciseness to the times established by God. Note that for the Passover Yahweh identified the month, the day, and even the hour of day (at twilight) in which the Passover is to be observed. The hour and day and year in which the Son of God was offered up as the Passover Lamb to secure the life of mankind was similarly set to occur at the precise time determined by Yahweh

from the very creation of the earth.

Revelation 13:7

And they shall worship him, all who dwell upon the earth, [everyone] whose name does not stand written in the scroll of the life [the scroll] belonging to the Lamb who has been slain [in the mind and purpose of God] since the time when the foundations of the universe were laid...

[The New Testament: An Expanded Translation by Kenneth S. Wuest]

Because Yahweh established a plan of the ages, and His good will shall prosper with no one to turn it back, He is able to show forth by signs and parables the length of time between the formation of the first Adam and the appearing of the Last Adam who will come to establish His kingdom upon the earth. The time between these two events is revealed in the seven days of creation. A key to understanding Yahweh's prophetic timetable is declared in the following Scripture verses.

Psalms 90:4

For a thousand years in Your sight are like yesterday when it passes by...

II Peter 3:8

But do not let this one fact escape your notice, beloved, that with the Lord one day is as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day.

It should be obvious to any reasoning child of God that Yahweh did not need six days to create the earth as it is described in the opening chapter of Genesis. Yahweh did not need as much as six minutes. He could have created all things as they exist today in no time at all. He is omnipotent. There is no limit to His power and wisdom. He chose six days because it conformed to a specific pattern established in His own mind that He devised to show forth His mighty works among the creation.

Exodus 20:11

For in six days Yahweh made the heavens and the earth, the sea and all that is in them, and rested on the seventh day...

The Scriptures declare that when Christ returns He will set up His kingdom upon the earth. In that day the earth will know rest.



Isaiah 65:25

"The wolf and the lamb shall graze together, and the lion shall eat straw like the ox; and dust shall be the serpent's food. They shall do no evil or harm in all My holy mountain," says Yahweh.

The rule of Christ is described as "the millennial kingdom," for it shall last for a thousand years.

Revelation 20:6

Blessed and holy is the one who has a part in the first resurrection; over these the second death has no power, but they will be priests of God and of Christ and will reign with Him for a thousand years.

Peter has told us that one day with God is as a thousand years. The seventh day is holy in the sight of God. It is a day of rest. This seventh day corresponds to the millennial rule of Yahshua. It comes after six days of humanity's existence on the earth. Six thousand years from the creation of Adam the Lord must return and establish His rule upon the earth. That hour is near at hand, for Yahshua appeared the first time, born of a virgin, 4,000 years after Adam was created. It has now been 2,000 years since Yahshua ascended to the Father. We stand at the end of 6,000 years of human history. The 6th day of mankind is coming to a close, and the 7th day is about to begin.

It is an important matter in the sight of God for His people to recognize the times in which they live. Yahshua chided the Jews for failing to recognize the time of their visitation by the Son of God.

Matthew 16:2-4

He answered and said to them, "When it is evening, you say, 'It will be fair weather, for the sky is red.' And in the morning, 'There will be a storm today, for the sky is red and threatening.' Do you know how to discern the appearance of the sky, but cannot discern the signs of the times?"

Luke 19:41-44

And when He approached, He saw the city and wept over it, saying, "If you had known in this day, even you, the things which make for peace! But now they have been hidden from your eyes. For the days shall come upon you when your enemies will throw up a bank before you, and surround you, and hem you in on every side, and will level you to the ground and your children within you, and they will not leave in you one stone upon another, because you did not recognize the time of your visitation."

Brothers and sisters, if we would live in readiness as wise men and women, knowing that the return of the Lord is near at hand, we must look to that heavenly calendar that Yahweh set before us to give us knowledge of His appointed times. Providing a detailed discussion on the heavenly signs being observed at this hour is beyond the scope of this book. The intent of this chapter is to declare that the heavenly luminaries were established by Yahweh for this purpose. Wise men will continue to look to the heavens to discern the days in which they live and the acts of God that must be accomplished during their lives.

STELLAR PROPHECY

The Feast Days were not the only moedim whose proper time was announced by the lights Yahweh arranged in the heavens. It was previously noted that the appointed time for the birth of the Son of God was announced by a specific star whose message wise men from the East understood and acted upon. Similarly, we are told that the return of the Lord will be announced by signs in the sun, moon, and stars (Luke 21:25).

Astrology is a form of divination. Divination is defined as “*the practice of seeking knowledge about the future, or about the unknown, through supernatural means.*” A patient consideration of the meaning of this word will reveal that there are both lawful and unlawful forms of divination. By lawful, I mean practices of which Yahweh approves. The relationship between the word “divination” and the word “divine,” which denotes something from, or like God, is readily evident. A diviner in

ancient days was considered to be a person who was able to communicate with the gods, or with a specific god.

Communication with Yahweh, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, is a very good thing. Communication with false gods is an evil thing. Yahweh forbid the practice of idolatry among those who worshiped Him. In contrast, devotion to Yahweh was encouraged. If Christians are able to distinguish between idolatrous worship and worship of Yahweh, they are also able to distinguish between the various forms of lawful and unlawful divination.

Prophecy is a form of divination. It is a supernatural means of obtaining knowledge about the future or about hidden things that a person could not comprehend through their natural senses. The Bible is filled with accounts of men and women who prophesied about events to come. This is a form of divination that is found in the New Testament as well as in the Old.

Acts 11:27-30

Now at this time some prophets came down from Jerusalem to Antioch. And one of them named Agabus stood up and began to indicate by the Spirit that there would certainly be a great famine all over the world. And this took place in the reign of Claudius. And in the proportion that any of the disciples had means, each of them determined to send a contribution for the relief of the brethren living in Judea. And this they did, sending it in charge of Barnabas and Saul to the elders.

In this Scripture we see an example of lawful divination. What makes this type of supernatural communication lawful is that Yahweh is the initiator of it. The Holy Spirit speaking through God's prophets made known what was to come. The Bible also provides accounts of unlawful divination.

Acts 16:16-18

And it happened that as we were going to the place of prayer, a certain slave-girl having *a spirit of divination* met us, who was bringing her masters much profit by fortunetelling. Following after Paul and us, she kept crying out, saying, "These men are bond-servants of the Most High God, who are proclaiming to you the way of salvation." And she continued doing this for many days. But Paul was greatly annoyed, and turned and said to the spirit, "I command you in the name of Yahshua Christ to come out of her!" And it came out at that very moment.

Similar encounters occurred in the life of Christ as demons began to speak through those they possessed, declaring Yahshua to be the Son of God.

Mark 1:23-26

And just then there was in their synagogue a man with an unclean spirit; and he cried out, saying, "What do we have to do with You, Yahshua of Nazareth? Have You come to destroy us? I know who You are - the Holy One of God!" And Yahshua rebuked him, saying, "Be quiet, and come out of him!" And throwing him into convulsions, the unclean spirit cried out with a loud voice, and came out of him.

Notice that in both cases the unclean spirits spoke truth. Paul was indeed "a bond-servant of the Most High God," and Yahshua is "the Holy One of God." Nevertheless, what these spirits were doing was

unlawful in God's sight. They had not been sent by God to prophesy these messages. Lawlessness is the condition of being out from under authority. It is doing or speaking something of one's own initiative, rather than being subject to the rule of God.

These spirits, and the people they were speaking through, were prophesying. I am certain that the servant girl who was bringing much profit to her masters was declaring many amazing things about people that proved to be true. At times this may have included speaking about future events in a person's life that would come to pass. The Bible reveals that evil spirits can impart supernatural information to people in imitation of the work of the Holy Spirit. This in no way negates the legitimacy of prophecy and words of knowledge as divine gifts bequeathed to the body of Christ.

I Corinthians 12:8-11

For to one is given the word of wisdom through the Spirit, and to another the word of knowledge according to the same Spirit; to another faith by the same Spirit, and to another gifts of healing by the one Spirit, and to another the effecting of miracles, and to another prophecy, and to another the distinguishing of spirits, to another various kinds of tongues, and to another the interpretation of tongues. But one and the same Spirit works all these things, distributing to each one individually just as He wills.

Like Agabus, those individuals who lawfully use the gifts are able to bring much benefit to the people of God. We would err if we were to condemn all supernatural words of prophecy within the body of Christ simply because Satan has a counterfeit gift. Sadly, many who proclaim to be Christians are prophesying under the influence of unclean spirits. For this reason, discernment must be exercised among Christians. We are commanded to "test the spirits"

I John 4:1

Beloved, do not believe every spirit, but test the spirits to see whether they are from God; because many false prophets have gone out into the world.

There are many pastors, churches, and entire denominations that reject the gift of prophecy among the body of Christ. Doctrines have been embraced that declare the gifts of the Spirit to have ended when the Bible was canonized. This rejection of prophecy is not in accordance with the mind of Christ. If a famine were to occur in our day, as it did in the days of Barnabus and Saul, the Bible would not inform us of it, but the Spirit of Christ speaking through a gifted prophet could. The Bible was never intended to be a replacement for the Spirit of Christ. It is just one more means by which the Holy Spirit communicates the mind of God to mankind. Christians should value the Scriptures while being careful not to quench the Spirit by refusing to let Him speak through other means.

I Thessalonians 5:19-20

Do not quench the Spirit; do not despise prophetic utterances.

Those who reject the gift of prophecy among the body of Christ are quenching the Spirit. They are effectually saying, "We will not permit the Spirit of Christ to communicate to us through this means. We will only allow the Spirit to speak to us through the Scriptures." In the same way, Christians who reject the starry hosts as a form of divine communication are quenching the Spirit. Out of fear for

Satan's counterfeit, they reject the voice of God as it speaks through the heavens.

Psalms 19:1-4

The heavens are telling of the glory of God; And their expanse is declaring the work of His hands. Day to day pours forth speech, and night to night reveals knowledge. There is no speech, nor are there words; Their voice is not heard. Their utterance has gone out through all the earth, and their words to the end of the world.

Christians need to be discerning. Divination is not an all or nothing proposition. Accepting that Yahweh speaks to mankind through the sun, moon, and stars does not necessitate that the individual accept Satanic forms of astrology. The corollary to this truth is that rejecting the unlawful practice of astrology does not necessitate that a Christian reject God's voice in the heavens. The magi embraced God's voice in the heavens and they were informed of the birth of the Savior of mankind. Yahweh spoke to these same wise men through a dream, warning them not to return to Herod, but to go home another way.



Having God communicate through the stars, and through a dream, may seem atypical to many Christians, but they are both common modes of communication that Yahweh regularly employs. The Bible is filled with examples of God speaking through the stars, through dreams, through visions, through signs and wonders, through angels, and through prophets. Those who would reject these forms of divine communication do injury to themselves, and to those whose lives they influence.

Yahweh is a great communicator. The Son of God is called "the Word made flesh" (John 1:14). A word is the basic unit of communication. Christ is the ultimate expression of God. He fully disclosed the Father to mankind. Although Christ has now ascended to the Father, He continues to speak. He has sent forth His Spirit to open the minds of men to understand the speech of God. This speech may come through the reading of the Scriptures, but it may also come through other ways.

Hebrews 1:1-2

God, after *He spoke long ago to the fathers in the prophets in many portions and in many ways*, in these last days has spoken to us in His Son...

Job 33:14-16

Indeed God speaks once, or twice, yet no one notices it. ***In a dream, a vision of the night***, when sound sleep falls on men, while they slumber in their beds, then He opens the ears of men, and seals their instruction...

If you will accept that God speaks through visions, dreams, and words of prophecy, then you should accept that God will communicate profound and specific things through the heavens as well. Speaking of the hour in which we now live, Yahweh declared the following through the prophet Joel:

Joel 2:28-31

“And it will come about after this that I will pour out My Spirit on all mankind; And your sons and daughters will prophesy, your old men will dream dreams, your young men will see visions. And even on the male and female servants I will pour out My Spirit in those days. ***And I will display wonders in the sky and on the earth, blood, fire, and columns of smoke. The sun will be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and awesome day of Yahweh comes.***”

Cast away dreams, cast away visions, cast away prophecy, cast away God’s messages through the heavens: The result will be that you will render yourself deaf and blind to the Spirit of God.

Isaiah 42:18-20

“Hear, you deaf! And look, you blind, that you may see. Who is blind but My servant, or so deaf as My messenger whom I send? Who is so blind as he that is at peace with Me, or so blind as the servant of Yahweh? You have seen many things, but you do not observe them; Your ears are open, but none hears.”

As I have been studying this subject of God speaking through the heavenly bodies, I have purposely chosen to read what people are saying who oppose this form of divine speech. It is wise to hear all sides of a matter. Oftentimes those who are cheerleaders of some truth manifest too much exuberance. There is a temptation to go beyond the revelation that has been given to them, or too speak with confidence where caution is due. As a Bible teacher I am aware of the danger of transgressing in this matter. I have erred at times, and had to later retract some statement that was imprudently uttered. James spoke of the need to guard our speech.

James 3:1-2

Let not many of you become teachers, my brethren, knowing that as such we shall incur a stricter judgment. For we all stumble in many ways. If anyone does not stumble in what he says, he is a perfect man, able to bridle the whole body as well.

I am not yet a “perfect man,” but I am desirous of making consistent progress toward conformity to the image of Christ. I have found that patient consideration of alternative, or antagonistic views on a matter, is one way in which I can discern pitfalls and errors in a subject and avoid an excess of enthusiasm that has led some to stray into error. The Bible recommends the practice of hearing all sides of an issue before forming a judgment.

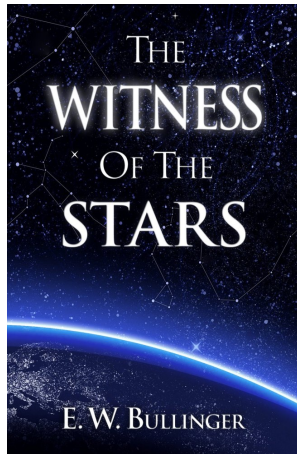
Proverbs 18:13

He who gives an answer before he hears, it is folly and shame to him.

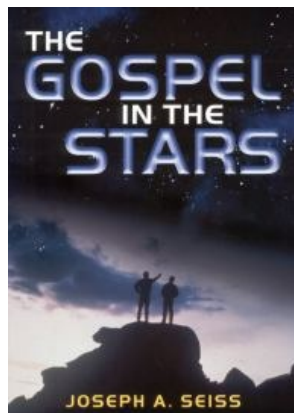
Proverbs 18:17

The first to plead his case seems just, until another comes and examines him.

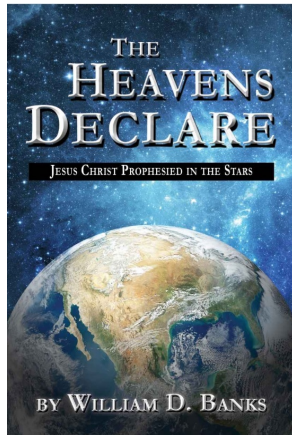
I do not know where I first heard a teaching on the Gospel in the stars, it may have been E.W. Bullinger's book *The Witness of the Stars*.



It was some years back that I first looked into this subject and I acquired and read three books in close succession. The other two books were *The Gospel in the Stars* by Joseph A. Seiss and *The Heavens Declare...* by William D. Banks. The oldest of the three books was written by Seiss in 1882.



Bullinger's book was published a decade later. William Bank's book is more recent, having been published in 1985.



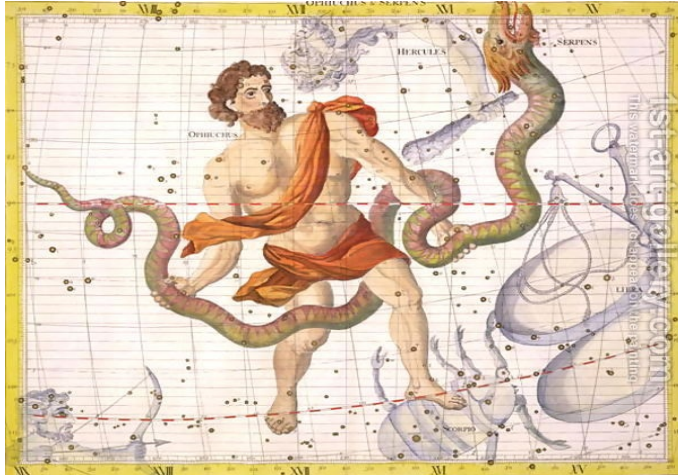
All three of these books present a nearly identical testimony of the constellations of the zodiac having an ancient origin that was intended to serve as a prophecy of the redemption of man as they described the work of Jesus Christ/Yahshua the Messiah. Some of the constellations lend themselves quite readily to this understanding. It is easy to see in Virgo the promise of God that the Seed of the woman would one day crush the head of the serpent, Satan. Virgo is understood to serve as a direct corollary to the prophecy of Isaiah.

Isaiah 7:14

“Therefore Yahweh Himself will give you a sign: Behold, a virgin will be with child and bear a son, and she will call His name Immanuel.”



The constellation Leo brings to mind the references to Christ as “the lion of the tribe of Judah” (Revelation 5:5). Although they are not among the 12 major constellations of the zodiac, there are numerous constellations in the heavens representing a dragon or a serpent. Among them are Draco, Hydra, and Serpens whose coils seem to interweave themselves throughout the starry testimony.



Ophichus and Serpens

There are multiple images of mighty men who are struggling against various beasts, whether it be Orion, Ophiuchus, Hercules, Perseus, or others, they all in some way can be related to the labors of Christ to destroy the works of Satan, that great dragon and serpent of old, in order to free mankind from sin and death.

The three books named paint a remarkably consistent testimony of the Gospel in the heavens. In them, all twelve constellations of the zodiac, and their 36 associated decans (minor constellations) are in various ways demonstrated to be part of a larger testimony that God had set in the heavens to foretell the conflict between Christ, the Seed of the woman, and Satan, the serpent. From the birth of the Son of God in Virgo to the triumph and reign of Christ in Leo, and in all of the constellations in between, it is declared by these authors that not only the constellations, but the names of the individual stars, give assent to God's plan of redemption for a fallen creation.

In reading these three books, it was apparent that one reason for the great similarity of testimony between them is due to all three authors drawing heavily upon the research of Frances Rolleston (1781-1864) whose book *Mazzaroth: or the Constellations* was published in the year 1862 (Note: some sources vary on the original date of publication, but only slightly.). In his book, William Banks provides the following biographical information on Frances Rolleston.

Anyone who approaches the study of the ancient names of the stars, will soon become aware of the great debt owed to an amazing lady, Frances Rolleston. It was she who devoted over fifty years of her life to the compilation of a massive series of notes which was published under the title "Mazzaroth - The Constellations" in 1863, when she was in her 80's.

Miss Rolleston was a scholar in every sense of the word. She was a classicist, a linguist, and one who worked and consulted with many of the most educated people in England during the 1800's. She also corresponded with many other experts from around the world.

Frances was a gifted student who became deeply committed to her studies and began diligently studying Hebrew in 1818 and continued as a student through 1835. She read daily from the original

Hebrew Scriptures even after completing her formal study of the language. Among her other exceptional accomplishments were the following: she studied Latin and Greek doing her own translations of Homer, and other Greek poetry ("just to keep my hand in"); she also mastered French, Egyptian (Coptic and Hieroglyphics); the Semitic root languages of Arabic, Syriac, Aramaic, Sanscrit, and Chaldee; and became an authority on the origin and roots of language...

In addition Frances was a charitable person. When she heard of the plight of the American Negroes in 1811, she became actively involved in working for their emancipation at that very early date. She remained quite concerned and later sent aid for the "15000 [sic] negroes left masterless and destitute by this dreadful [Civil] war." She regularly visited the elderly and needy in her own area...

When Frances was only nine, she overheard part of a funeral service which made a lasting impression on her and shaped the course of her life. The passage which she heard quoted was, "I know my Redeemer liveth." This became her theme and remained so in her final hours.

At the time of her death in her late 80's (Joseph's note: she was either 82 or 83 years old at her death, rather than her "late 80's"), she was excited about working on a new edition of "Mazzaroth." It was to include a new find, seven zodiacs from India, "none older than Abraham, from the Ancient Chaldean astronomy in Sanscrit."

Even at the end of her life Miss Rolleston had things in proper perspective. This fact is evident in the closing statement of an 1862 letter to a colleague in the United States, "... what concerns you and me is, be ye ready, for ye know not in what hour your Lord cometh."

[Source: Preface to *The Heavens Declare...*, William D. Banks]

These are words of high praise for this woman, both for her scholarship and her character. He does not cite the source of his information on Miss Rolleston's life, and since he was writing his own book more than a century after her death, he could not have had personal knowledge of her. It is very likely Mr. Banks drew his information from the biographical book published by Caroline Dent in 1867, three years after Miss Rolleston's death. The book is titled *Letters of Miss Frances Rolleston of Keswick*. It consists primarily of the personal correspondence that Miss Rolleston carried on throughout the course of her life, with some brief commentary by Caroline Dent. The book is available freely on Google Books and runs to more than 600 pages in length.

books.google.com/books?id=mNMxAQAAMAJ

In this book there is a letter written to a Mr. Henry Crowther in the year 1830 in which Frances Rolleston shares her excitement about her study of the subject of the zodiac and its Biblical references. It provides a concise summary of many of the apparent links she saw between the heavenly constellations and the Biblical account of man's redemption.

My Dear Henry...

I am now so engaged on a subject I think I must have mentioned to you, that I can scarcely think of anything else. You have heard me say that I was persuaded that the signs of the Zodiac were all

emblems to the glory of Messiah, rather than to the nonsense usually attached to them. I have been following up the inquiry, and have interested several men of learning and piety on the subject. We are discussing in what form to bring it forward. All the languages of Babel are required in evidence, but as I chiefly desire to interest young persons with the results, what shall we do with the tongues? Some say notes, some say an appendix stating the facts in plain English. So I will try how the theory appears to you, without the abundant evidence belonging to it, which every day accumulates.

Tradition and internal evidence agree in attributing the origin of astronomy to a time about 5500 years ago, and a place between forty and fifty degrees of north latitude. Tradition goes yet further, and by Josephus names Seth, the son of Adam, as its originator and traces it through Abraham to the Egyptians and Chaldees, from them to Persia and India, etc.. Refer to the prophecy recorded as given to Adam, the seed of the woman shall bruise the serpent's head, but the serpent shall bruise his heel... Sacrifice also was instituted, and no doubt explained; and Enoch, who prophesied of the day of Judgment, evidently had further revelations than those. I find it generally allowed by ancient writers that the sign of Aries had a sacred, design, and mystical meaning, and was often considered to be the sacrificial Lamb; such I hold it, "The Lamb slain from the foundation of the world," the promised Lamb of God. In Taurus you find the first Cherubic head, the Bull's; in Gemini, the Man's, also explaining the double nature of the expected Messiah; in Cancer the Eagle, still existing in the Egyptian Zodiacs of Esne and Dendera; in Leo, the fourth, the Lion; as you will find them in Ezekiel, chap. 1st. These heads are considered as typical of the Triune God, in union with the human nature: the Bull, from a Hebrew word signifying far and clear sightedness, symbolizes omniscience; the Eagle, from its rapid flight, Omnipresence (see Job xxxix. 3); the Lion, Omnipotence. Virgo was in all ancient spheres a woman nursing an infant, and holding an ear of corn in her hand, which to all nations spoke His name, the Seed. Albumazar, an Arabian astronomer of the ninth century, says, speaking of Virgo, "This infant is by the Hebrews called Issa, the Savior, whom the Greeks call Christ." The next sign, Libra, was formerly the crown, and called the house of propitiation; justification by the Messiah was expressed by a man bearing the scales. In Scorpio is a man bearing a serpent, and with his foot on the head of a scorpion; called in ancient Egyptian (it is supposed) the house of preservation or deliverance. Sagittarius, a figure with two faces, a man's and a lion's, with the body of a horse, the type of swiftness ("Behold, I come quickly," etc.), the scorpion stinging the horse's heel; anciently called the station of loving-kindness. The Messiah's attribute of arrows will occur to you, but you will not divine that, in pronouncing arrow in Hebrew and other ancient tongues, they recalled the first name by which He was announced, Shiloh. Capricornus, anciently the house of sacrifice, where the victim, "hind of the morning," is escaping from the mouth of Leviathan, a type of death and the power of Satan. Aquarius, house of benefits or gifts; the risen Messiah pouring out the gifts of the Holy Spirit, under the appointed type of water. Pisces, two fishes, above united by a band, which also holds the Leviathan bound below, [typifies] the union of the Jewish and Gentile churches (fish meaning multitude, congregation) and the final binding of the adversary Satan...

Now the proof of all this would fill a volume. I wish you would think it over, and make every objection that occurs to you, and point out where proof seems wanted. Every constellation, except those not visible in Chaldea and northward, is also a memorial of a prophecy of Him who was to come, the Desire of Nations; I will give you those to consider when I hear what you say to these. I find the study most devotional, and opening Scripture to me daily. "The heavens declare the glory of God," most

magnificently when so viewed.

[Source: *Letters of Miss Frances Rolleston of Keswick*, Caroline Dent]

This excitement of Miss Rolleston's was exhibited in this letter more than three decades before she finally published the first edition of *Mazzaroth*. She had largely completed her study of the subject by 1840, but was prevented by her financial situation from publishing the book until near the end of her life in the early 1860s. She likely would have had the funds available, except that she was quite generous in giving alms to the needy whenever she was able.

From 1840 to the end of her life she continued to refine and perfect her material on *Mazzaroth*, a fact which is very evident from her correspondence that is preserved to this day. Miss Rolleston's presentation of the matter was convincing to many who were lovers of truth, including Joseph Seiss and Ethelbert Bullinger. Both of these men confessed the benefit they derived from Miss Rolleston's labors. Joseph Seiss lived during the same time as Frances Rolleston, though his book does not indicate that he knew her personally. He writes:

A more valuable aid to the study of the subject as treated in this volume is Frances Rolleston's "Mazzaroth: Or, the Constellations" - a book from an authoress of great linguistic and general literary attainments, whom Providence rarely favored for the collection of important facts and materials, particularly as respects the ancient stellar nomenclature. The tables drawn up by Ulugh Beigh, the Tartar prince and astronomer, about A.D. 1420, giving Arabian astronomy as it had come down to his time, with the ancient Coptic and Egyptian names, likewise the much earlier presentations, made about A.D. 850 by Albumazer, the great Arab astronomer of the Caliphs of Grenada, and Aben Ezra's commentaries on the same, are, to a considerable extent, reproduced in her book. Facsimilies of the Dendera and Esne Zodiacs are also given in the last edition (1875) of her work. And from her tables and references the writer of these Lectures was helped to some of his best information, without which this book could hardly have become what it is.

[Source: Preface to *The Gospel in the Stars*, Joseph A. Seiss]

Bullinger similarly declares his reliance upon the work of Frances Rolleston.

Some years ago it was my privilege to enjoy the acquaintance of Miss Frances Rolleston, of Keswick, and to carry on a correspondence with her with respect to her work, "Mazzaroth or, the Constellations." She was the first to create an interest in this important subject. Since then Dr. Joseph A. Seiss, of Philadelphia, has endeavored to popularize her work on the other side of the Atlantic; and brief references have been made to the subject in such books as "Moses and Geology," by Dr. Kinns, and in "Primeval Man"; but it was felt, for many reasons, that it was desirable to make another effort to set forth, in a more complete form, the witness of the stars to prophetic truth, so necessary in these last days.

To the late Miss Rolleston, however, belongs the honor of collecting a mass of information bearing on this subject; but, published as it was, chiefly in the form of notes, unarranged and unindexed, it was suited only for, but was most valuable to, the student. It was she who performed the drudgery of collecting the facts presented by Albumazer, the Arab astronomer to the Caliphs of Grenada, AD 850; and the Tables drawn up by Ulugh Beigh, the Tartar prince and astronomer, about AD 1450, who

gives the Arabian astronomy as it had come down from the earliest times.
[Source: Preface to *The Witness of the Stars*, E.W. Bullinger]



Yours very affectionately
F. Rolleston

Frances Rolleston Silhouette

(From the book *Letters of Miss Frances Rolleston of Keswick*)

With Miss Rolleston's research playing such a great role in the promotion of this particular view of the heaven's prophetic role, it is certainly warranted to delve a little deeper into her character and beliefs. One reader of the Parables Blog sent me an e-mail suggesting I read a book by Tim Warner titled *Mystery of the Mazzaroth*. I had not heard of this book, but reading the book's description on Amazon's website, my curiosity was piqued.

In 1862, Francis Rolleston published "Mazzaroth," attempting to link the Zodiac with Christianity based on similarities between phonetic sounds of Arabic star names and certain Hebrew words. Her theory has been copied and repackaged by Joseph Seiss, E. W. Bullinger, D. James Kennedy, and Chuck Missler. However, the whole basis for her theory has been thoroughly refuted by Christian apologetic ministries. Thus, all of these knockoffs of Rolleston's book have equally been soundly refuted.

"Mystery of the Mazzaroth" presents a completely new approach. Never before has the sequence of Zodiac signs been understood in light of Biblical prophecy, telling the sequential story of Israel's history and redemption. The connections between the Zodiac signs, the pagan myths associated with them, and the story of Israel are so numerous and profound, that they cannot be dismissed by any honest truth-seeker. This book will open your eyes to a powerful reason to believe that God exists, and that the Creator is the same God who appeared to Abraham.

It seemed a bit uncharitable for Mr. Warner to describe the works of Seiss, Bullinger, and others as "knockoffs of Rolleston's book." These men contributed a good deal of their own material, and in many instances supplied sources where they were absent in Miss Rolleston's book. They also labored

to present what was basically a large amalgamation of notes into a highly readable form that would hold the interest of the average reader. Despite what seemed to be a somewhat prejudiced view against Miss Rolleston's writing, and recognizing the profit to be gained by hearing multiple views on a subject, I ordered Mr. Warner's book with an interest to see how he refuted Frances Rolleston's work.

It should be noted that Tim Warner is not antagonistic to the idea of the heavens being used in a prophetic manner by God. Rather, he finds fault with Miss Rolleston's interpretation of the heavenly message and would propose an alternate account of that which God has written in the stars. I was hoping that Mr. Warner would provide links to the sources he referred to when he stated "*the whole basis for her theory has been thoroughly refuted by Christian apologetic ministries.*" I wanted to know what ministries these were, and what evidence and arguments they had to set forth.

On page 24 of *Mystery of the Mazzaroth* I found Tim Warner's refutation of Frances Rolleston's work. It was even more terse than the book description on Amazon. He writes:

"More recently, apologetics and creation ministries have debunked the work of Frances Rolleston (and with it all of the other books based on her work), showing it as non-scientific and subjective, and rightly so."

That is it! One sentence, and the labor of a lifetime is cast into the gutter. At the bottom of the page there was a link to an article written by Dr. Danny Faulkner in 2007 that is located on the *Answers in Genesis* website. I hoped the link would still be functional, for I wanted very much to read this thorough debunking of Miss Rolleston's magnum opus, a work that kept her attention for decades. I was relieved to find that the webpage was still active even though the article has a date on it of December 13, 2007. At the same time I was disappointed to see that the article was only 12 paragraphs long. How do you "thoroughly debunk" a body of information that is spread across more than 300 pages (as is the case with the book *Mazzaroth*) in only 12 paragraphs?

After reading the article on the *Answers in Genesis* website, I had to conclude that Mr. Warner was guilty of overstatement. Danny Faulkner addressed only two words out of hundreds that Frances Rolleston provided as evidence in her book. He writes:

As an example of Rolleston's methodology, consider the meaning that she found for the star Deneb, the brightest star in the constellation Cygnus. She reasoned that it was a perversion of the Hebrew dan, which means "judge." Because Hebrew scribes added marks for vowels much later, one could suppose that this is possible. However, why search for some other meaning when the traditional Arabic meaning works so well? The Arab word deneb means "tail," and it marks the tail of Cygnus. Incidentally, several other stars contain deneb as a portion of their names, and in each case they mark the tails of their respective constellations. Yet Rolleston persisted with her reinterpretation of words...

Far more problematic is the Hebrew word used for Orion. Elsewhere in the Old Testament this word is translated "fool." For instance, chesil is the word translated "fool" eight times in Proverbs 26. Thus, by the Hebrew name for him, we can see that Orion is not an individual worthy of respect and

devotion. To equate this fool with a type of Christ borders on blasphemy, and most Christians ought to find this offensive. If Rolleston had been as proficient in Hebrew as required to do word studies, then she ought to have known that the Hebrew word for Orion is the same as a “fool.”

[Source: *Answers in Genesis*, Dr. Danny Faulkner]

Whether Frances Rolleston’s suggested meanings for these two words (deneb and chesil) are correct, I am unable to tell. I am NOT an expert in ancient languages. I would say, however, that “Fool” is an unlikely meaning to associate with the constellation Orion. Orion is commonly depicted as a warrior with a club in one hand, and a lion skin draped over the other arm as if it had been slain (“Satan goes about as a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour.”) In alternate depictions, Orion has a shield in his left arm rather than a lion skin.



The word “Fool” does not fit the image of Orion. Danny Faulkner does not attempt to explain how this meaning would apply to the constellation. He seems content to cast doubt upon the meaning set forth by Frances Rolleston. Yet, if “Fool” is an altogether unbecoming descriptor for this figure in the heavens, then his argument loses its force. Another meaning must be sought.

Looking up the word “chesil” in *Strong’s Concordance*, one finds three listings for this word. Whenever the word is used to denote a constellation in the heavens, which occurs four times in the Bible (Job 9:9, 38:31, Isaiah 13:10, Amos 5:8), the entry is listed as following.

OT:3685

Keciyl (kes-eel’); the same as OT:3684; any notable constellation; specifically Orion (as if a **burly** one):

KJV - constellation, Orion.

When the word is used to denote a fool, Strong’s has a separate entry.

OT:3684

keciyl (kes-eel’); from OT:3688; **properly, fat**, i.e. (figuratively) stupid or silly:

KJV - fool (-ish).

Note that the word properly means “fat,” but an alternate and related meaning is “burly.” When the word is understood as “fat” it can figuratively mean silly or stupid. A strong, heavily muscled man can appear fat, but a far better word is burly, meaning “large and strong.” When used in this manner, the word chesil aptly describes the figure recognized as Orion. Danny Faulkner has not allowed for the possibility of a single Hebrew word holding more than one meaning. His denigration of Frances Rolleston’s work is therefore based upon a flawed argument, for words in any language can, and do, hold a variety of meanings.

To provide an example, the Hebrew word “natsar” (Strong’s #5341) conveys multiple meanings. It can denote someone who is “cunning,” or the idea of “protecting, as if hiding or concealing.” Consequently, this word is used to denote the activity of a harlot, as well as the actions of Yahweh.

Proverbs 7:10

And behold, a woman comes to meet him, dressed as a harlot and *cunning* (natsar) of heart.

Psalms 12:7

You shall keep them, O Lord, You shall *preserve* (natsar) them from this generation forever.

It would be poor logic to suggest that using a word in one place to describe the actions of a harlot and in another place to describe the action of God, “borders on blasphemy.” Toward the end of his brief writing, Dr. Faulkner shares what he believes to be a more serious objection to Frances Rolleston’s teaching that the Gospel is portrayed in the stars. His objection equally applies to Tim Warner’s alternate teaching about the message in the heavens, which makes one wonder about the prudence of Tim Warner citing this particular writing.

But there is a far more serious objection to the gospel in the stars: it contradicts biblical texts. The New Testament calls the gospel a “mystery” (1 Corinthians 2:7; Ephesians 6:19, 3:8–12; Colossians 4:3). In the New Testament, a mystery is something that was previously unknown but now is revealed to us. Romans 16:25–26 states that this mystery was hidden for long ages and was revealed through prophetic writings (that is, in the Old Testament, not in the stars). 1 Corinthians 2:8 further tells us that, if the princes of this world had known of this mystery, “they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.” 1 Peter 1:10–12 suggests that, while the prophets “searched diligently,” they failed to grasp fully the gospel before its time.

[Source: Ibid]

I agree that most men failed to “grasp” the gospel before its time. This failure of comprehension was not due to a lack of foretelling of what was to come, for the Old Testament contains a profusion of types, shadows, and plain words of prophecy concerning the suffering Savior and His ultimate triumph over Satan, sin, and death. The inability to grasp the gospel message before it was fulfilled was largely due to the great disparity in man’s thought and God’s thoughts.

Isaiah 55:8-9

“For My thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways My ways,” declares Yahweh. For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are My ways higher than your ways, and My thoughts than your thoughts.”

Men may fail to comprehend the mind of God even when He speaks to them in the plainest of speech. An example of this is observed in the following words.

Mark 9:31-32

For He was teaching His disciples and telling them, "The Son of Man is to be delivered into the hands of men, and they will kill Him; and when He has been killed, He will rise three days later." But they did not understand this statement, and they were afraid to ask Him.

There was a veil that remained over the minds of Christ's disciples. Many of the things that Christ declared to them did not make sense until after they were fulfilled. This is one function of prophecy. It is to let us know after an event occurs that God was the Author of it, and the matter was according to His plan. This is made plain in the following verses.

John 2:19-22

Yahshua answered and said to them, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up." The Jews therefore said, "It took forty-six years to build this temple, and will You raise it up in three days?" But He was speaking of the temple of His body. When therefore He was raised from the dead, His disciples remembered that He said this; and they believed the Scripture, and the word which Yahshua had spoken.

The Jewish people and their religious leaders had the plain testimony of the prophets who spoke often of the promised Messiah. Nevertheless, when they read the Scriptures a veil was over their minds, preventing them from comprehending the truth of what they were reading.

II Corinthians 3:14-16

But their minds were hardened; for until this very day at the reading of the old covenant the same veil remains unlifted, because it is removed in Christ. But to this day whenever Moses is read, a veil lies over their heart; but whenever a man turns to the Lord, the veil is taken away.

To suggest that the gospel was unknown, or undeclared, before the time of its fulfillment is an absolutely untenable position to defend. From the third chapter of Genesis we see God beginning to prophesy through words and signs that a Savior would one day come to redeem humanity and break the bonds of Satan. We see this in God's words stating that the Seed of the woman would crush the serpent's head. It is observed in the garment of animal skins that God provided as a covering for mankind's nakedness. This required an animal to be sacrificed, looking forward to the Lamb of God who is Christ one day becoming a covering for all who believe. The Gospel is seen in the Passover Lamb that was slain so that others might live. The betrayal of Christ is observed in Judah suggesting to his brothers that they sell Joseph for 20 pieces of silver, serving as a type of Judas (a Greek form of the name Judah) betraying Yahshua for 30 pieces of silver. The prophets declared that a virgin would be with child. They foretold the suffering Servant, the One who would be pierced for our transgressions. The very words of Christ on the cross were prophetically uttered by David in the Psalms centuries before the fulfillment.

Psalms 22:1-7

For the choir director; upon Aijeleth Hashshahar. A Psalm of David.

My God, my God, why hast Thou forsaken me? Far from my deliverance are the words of my groaning.... But I am a worm, and not a man, a reproach of men, and despised by the people. All who see me sneer at me; They separate with the lip, they wag the head, saying, "Commit yourself to Yahweh; let Him deliver him; Let Him rescue him, because He delights in him..." I am poured out like water, and all my bones are out of joint; My heart is like wax; It is melted within me. My strength is dried up like a potsherd, and my tongue cleaves to my jaws; And You do lay me in the dust of death. For dogs have surrounded me; A band of evildoers has encompassed me; They pierced my hands and my feet. I can count all my bones. They look, they stare at me; They divide my garments among them, and for my clothing they cast lots.

If the message of Christ being born of a virgin, living a sinless life as the spotless Passover Lamb, suffering death on a cross, and rising again remained a mystery to men and angels, it was NOT due to a lack of God foretelling these events. Rather, it was due to the unbelief and dullness of those who heard the message. Dr. Faulkner's argument is a hollow one. If God could foretell the entirety of the Gospel message through types, shadows, and words of prophecy recorded in the Old Testament, yet the Gospel be referred to as "a mystery" in the New Testament, it reasonably follows that the same message declared in the stars of the heavens could be present yet the Gospel remain a veiled testimony not comprehended by the majority of humanity. The apostle Paul argues this very point, stating that the Gospel was proclaimed, but its message was not believed.

Romans 10:14-18

How then shall they call upon Him in whom they have not believed? And how shall they believe in Him whom they have not heard? And how shall they hear without a preacher? And how shall they preach unless they are sent? Just as it is written, "How beautiful are the feet of those who bring glad tidings of good things!" However, they did not all heed the glad tidings; for Isaiah says, "Lord, who has believed our report?" So faith comes from hearing, and hearing by the word of Christ. ***But I say, surely they have never heard, have they? Indeed they have;*** "Their utterance has gone out into all the earth, and their words to the ends of the world."

In the last sentence of the Scripture above, the apostle Paul is quoting David's words from Psalm 19. Let us look at this passage again and compare it to the statement made by Paul.

Psalms 19:1-4

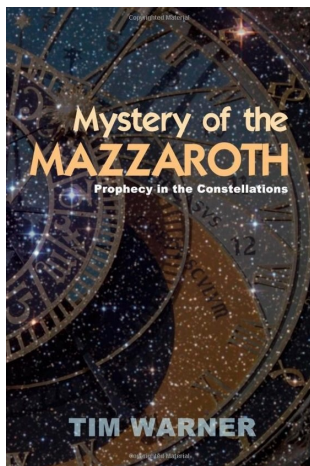
The heavens are telling of the glory of God; And their expanse is declaring the work of His hands. Day to day pours forth speech, and night to night reveals knowledge. There is no speech, nor are there words; Their voice is not heard. ***Their utterance has gone out through all the earth, and their words to the end of the world.***

Can the matter be more plainly stated than Paul has made it? He both asks and answers the question of whether the Gospel had been proclaimed to humanity before Christ came. "However, they did not all heed the glad tidings (Gospel); for Isaiah says, 'Lord, who has believed our report?...' But I say, surely they have never heard, have they? ***Indeed they have...***" Paul not only tells us that the Gospel has been proclaimed, but he provides two witnesses on the matter. He cites the prophets, among whom Isaiah was one of the chief to foretell of the coming Messiah, His suffering, and ultimate triumph, and Paul makes mention of the heavens as a second witness to the Gospel message by

reciting the 19th Psalm.

By doing so, Paul has fulfilled the mandate of the Law that all things be established by two or more witnesses. There are many prophets who foretold the coming of Messiah. Paul could have mentioned them alone to provide the requisite number of witnesses, but he goes beyond this. Paul provides two different *types* of witnesses. There is the witness of God's Spirit speaking through man, and the witness of God's Spirit speaking through the heavens.

Tim Warner has surely misstated the matter when he writes "*apologetics [sic] and creation ministries have debunked the work of Frances Rolleston (and with it all of the other books based on her work), showing it as non-scientific and subjective...*" I believe Tim meant to state that "apologists," not "apologetics," have debunked the work of Frances Rolleston. In either case, Tim Warner has exaggerated, for even as he also uses the plural word "ministries," he provides only one link to the writing of one man on one ministry's website. The only apologist Tim Warner cites is Dr. Danny Faulkner, and Dr. Faulkner is not even on staff with the creation ministry that posted his writing. He was merely a guest writer whose article was approved for posting on the *Answers in Genesis* website. Perhaps it was an over exuberance in promoting his own theory on this subject that led him to overstate the matter.



About the time Tim Warner's book came out, Dr. Danny Faulkner greatly expanded his writing that argues against the veracity of Frances Rolleston's book and those who have followed her. The *Answers In Genesis* website once more published his letter, evidently after Warner's book was published, as there is only a link to the much earlier and shorter writing of Dr. Faulkner in the book. Dr. Faulkner mentions in the expanded update to this writing that he received some objections to his previous critical work, and felt the need to expand it.

<https://answersingenesis.org/astronomy/stars/a-further-examination-of-the-gospel-in-the-stars/>

Danny Faulkner admits that he did not have access to Frances Rolleston's book when he wrote his first criticism, for *Mazzaroth* had long been out of print. Now that the book is once more readily available in print and to be read or downloaded freely online, he was able to do a much more thorough vetting of the book, and I am impressed with his scholarship in this second attempt at the writing. His second writing is all the more impressive when held up against the deficiencies of his first effort on

this topic. I would recommend strongly that anyone with an interest in this subject read Dr. Faulkner's revised and expanded writing that is dated February 6, 2013 (see the link above). It is very well written, and patiently researched, though it continues to manifest some deficiencies.

Some of the fault I find with his refutation of Frances Rolleston's work I would describe as errors of argument, or reason. For example, it is mentioned more than once that Dr. Faulkner could not find the subject of the prophetic foretelling of the Gospel in the stars in any of the Bible commentaries that he consulted. This is not surprising. I have largely avoided Bible commentaries for the past two decades as I have found them to be very shallow, and often wrong-minded, in their expositions of Scriptures. Most Bible commentaries perceive only the most elemental truths in the Scriptures. Although these elemental truths may be profound, and certainly should not be denigrated, I was so frequently met with disappointment at the lack of deeper insight by the authors of these works that I long ago stopped looking to them for answers to the deeper things of God. I am put in mind of Paul's lament to the Hebrews.

Hebrews 5:12-6:3

For though by this time you ought to be teachers, you have need again for someone to teach you the elementary principles of the oracles of God, and you have come to need milk and not solid food. For everyone who partakes only of milk is not accustomed to the word of righteousness, for he is a babe. But solid food is for the mature, who because of practice have their senses trained to discern good and evil. Therefore leaving the elementary teaching about the Christ, let us press on to maturity, not laying again a foundation of repentance from dead works and of faith toward God, of instruction about washings, and laying on of hands, and the resurrection of the dead, and eternal judgment. And this we shall do, if God permits.

Although Bible commentaries can provide useful information regarding ancient traditions and customs, geographical locations, and assorted historical data, when it comes to teaching on doctrines, they seldom rise above the level of those subjects Paul described as "elementary teaching about the Christ." It should not discourage any seeker after truth to find that a topic that is outside of the normal purview of Christianity is not addressed in the Bible commentaries. The omissions of Bible commentaries are great and varied.

Another objection I have to Dr. Faulkner's treatise is his assertion that because the testimony of the stars is "non-verbal" it must also be "non-specific." He argues that a non-verbal form of communication could only convey general information, and would lack the ability to communicate something as detailed as the Gospel of Christ. He further argues that non-verbal communication is subject to the vagaries of interpretation. He writes:

Non-verbal communication can convey information, but it lacks precision and specificity, and thus it is very easily misunderstood... Even in human interaction we frequently communicate by non-verbal means, for body language and facial expressions can convey thoughts. Unfortunately, those non-verbal communications can be tricky to interpret. We can easily misinterpret these silent messages to mean something other than what was intended. A direct verbal statement clearly is preferable to a non-verbal message, as all marriage counselors advise when they are trying to help a couple whose marriage is in trouble... For even though general revelation is everywhere, it is silent.

Even though it is available in general (to all), it only gives us general information about God, not the specific information needed to know God. The gospel is not in the stars.

An example of the type of things Dr. Faulkner suggests that the stars may legitimately express is the presence and greatness of God. A person may look at the heavens, consider their vastness, and the order that is present, and infer from this witness that there is a Creator and He possesses wisdom and power of a magnitude that far surpasses that of mankind. Dr. Faulkner does not allow for the possibility that the heavens could convey specific data, or information. Would not the revelation that the King of the Jews had been born be an example of the heavens conveying precise and specific information? Then we have the example of other passages of Scripture.

Revelation 12:1-5

And a great sign appeared in heaven: a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and on her head a crown of twelve stars; and she was with child; and she cried out, being in labor and in pain to give birth. And another sign appeared in heaven: and behold, a great red dragon having seven heads and ten horns, and on his heads were seven diadems... And the dragon stood before the woman who was about to give birth, so that when she gave birth he might devour her child. And she gave birth to a son, a male child, who is to rule all the nations with a rod of iron; and her child was caught up to God and to His throne.

This is precisely the type of very detailed information that Rolleston, Seiss, Bullinger, Banks, Warner, and others suggest that God has been conveying through the heavens from the time of the first man. As a minister who has been called to expound to the saints of God the parabolic speech that Yahweh so often employs to declare truth through non-verbal means, I find great fault with Dr. Faulkner's argument. Signs are a form of non-verbal communication and they carry within them the ability to convey very specific meaning. The Bible is filled with this type of non-verbal communication, though few in the church today are aware of its presence.

From the first book of the Bible to the very last book, Yahweh has been communicating just as much (I would say "more") through non-verbal communication as he has through the written or spoken word. The book of Revelations begins with the following words:

Revelation 1:1-2

The Revelation of Yahshua Christ, which God gave Him to **show** to His bond-servants, the things which must shortly take place; and He sent and **signified** (semaino) it by His angel to His bond-servant John, who bore witness to the **word** of God and to the testimony of Yahshua Christ, even to all that he **saw**.

The Greek word "semaino" that is translated as "signified" means "to show forth through signs." The book of Revelation is filled with images and visions that were revealed to John to show forth very detailed and specific information about things to come. There is a saying that "a picture is worth a thousand words," and this is certainly true of the book of Revelation. Many multiplied thousands of words have been written about every image that John was shown in this book.

From the first chapter of Genesis God has been speaking through means of symbolic speech, through

types and shadows. I have written volumes on the parable contained in the seven days of creation that is set forth in the first chapter of the Bible. This is where commentaries prove themselves deficient, for they see only the surface message, and do not look to the parables contained within them.

When God wanted to speak to Joseph, the son of Jacob, He showed this young man images in dreams by night.

Genesis 37:5-11

Then Joseph had a dream, and when he told it to his brothers, they hated him even more. And he said to them, "Please listen to this dream which I have had; for behold, we were binding sheaves in the field, and lo, my sheaf rose up and also stood erect; and behold, your sheaves gathered around and bowed down to my sheaf. " Then his brothers said to him, "Are you actually going to reign over us? Or are you really going to rule over us?" So they hated him even more for his dreams and for his words. Now he had still another dream, and related it to his brothers, and said, "Lo, I have had still another dream; and behold, the sun and the moon and eleven stars were bowing down to me." And he related it to his father and to his brothers; and his father rebuked him and said to him, "What is this dream that you have had? Shall I and your mother and your brothers actually come to bow ourselves down before you to the ground?" And his brothers were jealous of him, but his father kept the saying in mind.



Joseph's Dreams

The images shown to Joseph are very similar to images one might encounter in the constellations. They are simple graphics used to convey specific truth. Joseph's brothers and father understood these images to be conveying very precise information. There was no ambiguity. The communication was readily comprehensible. I must reject Dr. Faulkner's contention that non-verbal communication is incapable of conveying specific and precise information.

Where Dr. Faulkner has done a commendable job is in his explication of the names of constellations and stars. In this area he has done his research, and he documents it very well. A lack of source documentation is one of the chief complaints he had about the writing of Frances Rolleston, though he graciously acknowledges that she died before completing her work which could partially explain the absence of clear accreditation of source material in her book.

I found Dr. Faulkner's arguments about the names and meanings assigned to stars to be well reasoned.

Having read Frances Rolleston's own accounts of her struggles to arrive at the meaning of names, and having reservations in my own mind about her belief that Hebrew was the pre-Babel language of all mankind, I am very much open to questioning the names and meanings that Frances Rolleston has supplied for individual stars and the constellations.

Miss Rolleston held an unorthodox view on languages. It is apparent from the biographical work produced by Caroline Dent that Miss Rolleston had an exceptional grasp of a large number of ancient languages, but this fact does not automatically suggest that her views on the origin and transmission of languages was correct. Miss Rolleston's views are set forth in her book.

*The names are here explained on the supposition that the first language was given by the Creator to the first man, conveying ideas to the mind by sounds, as impressions of form and colour are conveyed by sight. In all languages these sounds are traceable, conveying the same ideas. In the dialects of the most ancient and earliest civilized nations they are the most recognizable: in those the most barbarous the most obscured. This primitive language appears to have been spoken by Noah, from the names given by him to his sons. **In the confusion of the lip at Babel, pronunciation, and not words or roots, were altered. This may be inferred from the presence of the Hebrew roots in the dialects of all nations.***

[Source: *Mazzaroth*, Frances Rolleston]

It is possible that the first language of man linked specific thoughts to corresponding sounds. In this sense, there would be an alphabet of sounds, each of which could be combined with other sounds to express the thoughts within a person's mind. Some years ago I came across the teaching of Jeff A. Benner on the origins of the Paleo-Hebrew alphabet. Mr Benner, quite correctly I believe, suggested that each letter of the most ancient Hebrew alphabet, referred to as Paleo-Hebrew, was in fact a pictogram. That is, each letter was drawn as an image of something commonly recognizable to those who used this language. For example, the first letter of the Hebrew alphabet, corresponding to the English letter "A" is the Aleph. It is depicted as the head of an ox.




Aleph

The graphic above indicates how this letter's representation has changed over the centuries. There is a noticeable similarity between the "Early" Paleo-Hebrew character and the "Middle" period character. However, when Israel went into Babylonian captivity they adopted the Babylonian alphabetic characters which are closer to the square script used in the Hebrew language today.

Jeff Benner has shown that each of the characters of the Hebrew alphabet (Aleph-Bet) were originally pictograms. You can see the entire list at the following link.

http://www.ancient-hebrew.org/28_chart.html

Each image, such as the ox head of the Aleph bore a meaning associated with the image. For example, Benner suggests that the ox represented strength, power, or a leader. When a person was combining letters they were actually combining the thoughts or ideas associated with the letters, in order to form a word. The word for shepherd was formed by combining the letter resh which resembled the image of a man's head, with the letter ayin that looked like a man's eye. Since a shepherd is someone who "watches" over the flock, the image of a man and an eye conveyed the idea of a man watching.

Ra-ah - 

Shepherd Written in Paleo-Hebrew

(Hebrew is read from right to left)

I read several of Jeff Benner's books, and I believe his underlying thesis regarding the origin of the Hebrew language is correct. I believe each letter in the Paleo-Hebrew alphabet is a picture that conveys a meaning. By combining pictures a person forms more complex thoughts which become words. Putting words together allows for very complex ideas to be conveyed through written or oral speech.

What Frances Rolleston seems to be suggesting is that specific sounds in man's original language were linked to ideas. This concept fits very well with Jeff Benner's premise. As an example, the letter ayin which is written as an image of a human eye is pronounced "ah." Jeff Benner suggests that it conveys an idea of watchfulness. If Yahweh instilled in the first man an innate knowledge of a primeval alphabet and speech, linking sounds with thoughts, then one can well imagine the process Adam went through when Yahweh brought all the animals before him to see what the man would call them.

Perhaps Adam studied each animal and observed characteristics of it. In a lion he might observe that it was swift and strong, or graceful and glorious, and combined sounds together that conveyed those ideas to form the name of the animal. I have no problem envisioning such a scenario occurring. I am not convinced, however, that Hebrew was man's first language. I am also unable to substantiate Miss Rolleston's suggestion that at the tower of Babel, when God confused the languages of man, that the words and roots of words were not changed, that only the pronunciation was changed.

To clarify what Miss Rolleston seems to be suggesting, consider that the Hebrew letter ayin signifies watchfulness and is produced "ah." According to her theory, or belief, all that changed at Babel was the pronunciation. Instead of saying "ah" one man might say "eesh," and another "oke." They would retain the same basic building blocks of vocabulary, but they would no longer be able to understand one another.

I am reminded of when I returned to Georgia when I was around fifteen years of age after having spent the previous 14 years in Oregon in America's Pacific Northwest. People in the Southern states such as Georgia are renowned for their accented speech. It is at times difficult for someone from a Northern state to understand the speech of someone in the South, even though they are speaking the same words. The pronunciation has changed.

One of the first things my parents had to do upon moving us to Georgia was to get my sisters, my brother, and I enrolled in school. They took a couple of us to the local High School and asked an employee for directions. This Southern woman told my father he needed to take us to the “guidance office.” I remember my dad asking her repeatedly “Where?” The woman was pronouncing “guidance” as “goddance” and none of us had a clue what a “goddance office” was.

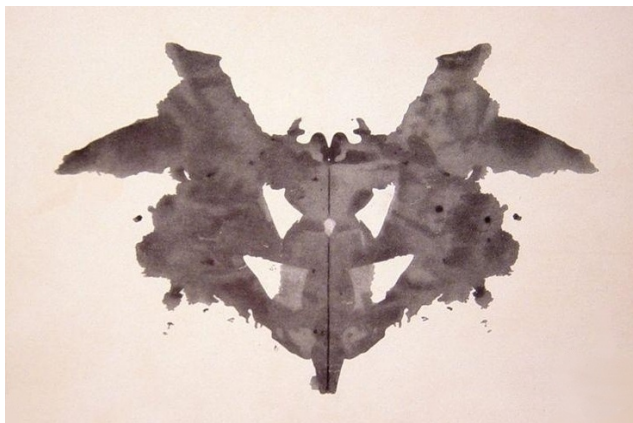
Jeff Benner has produced a Lexicon of Hebrew words where he suggests various origins for words based upon the pictograms formed by the letters. I would refer you to the graphic above of the word for shepherd as an example. Although I believe that Jeff Benner is correct in principle, I found many of the entries in his Lexicon unconvincing. There is a great deal of sleuthing and guesswork involved in trying to reconstruct the origin of words when there is no historical record of their etymology. One could wish for a Rosetta Stone that would demonstrably prove the thought attached to each character in the Paleo-Hebrew alphabet. However, no such key to understanding has been discovered.

The same situation exists when one considers the subject of the constellations and their original meaning. I find the evidence and arguments set forth by Rolleston, Seiss, Bullinger, Banks, Ken Fleming, and others persuasive. I believe the underlying thesis they are presenting is correct. I perceive that it harmonizes with the testimony of the Scriptures. Nevertheless, I must concur with Dr. Danny Faulkner when he suggests that there is some ambiguity present in the constellations and the meanings attached to them. He compares interpreting the signs in the heavens to a Rorschach Test.

The gospel in the stars thesis amounts to a sort of Rorschach test—one sees what one wants to see in the constellations...

Here Seiss appeals to self-consistency for ultimate proof of the arrangement. That is, the three other constellations supposedly associated with each zodiacal sign complement each other so well as to demonstrate that the arrangement is true. Given how much of a Rorschach test that much of this amounts to, one probably could find connections in any number of possible combinations of constellations.

[Source: Ibid]

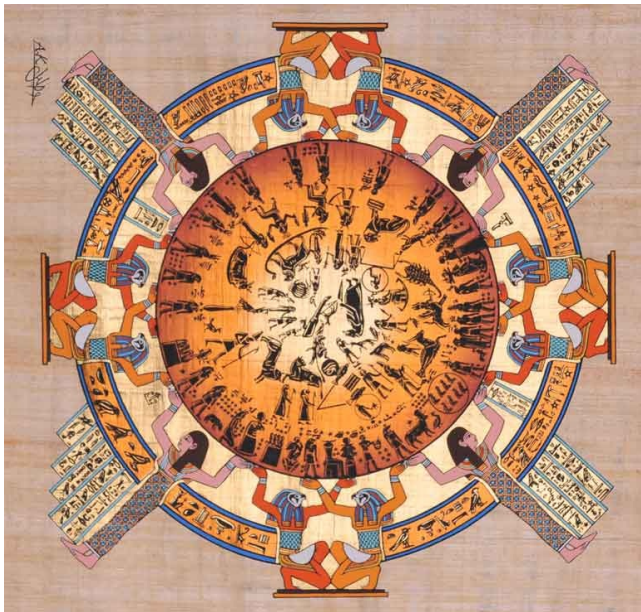


Rorschach (Inkblot) Test

There is a great amount of knowledge that has been lost to mankind over the millennia. Some of the

best data Frances Rolleston and others have to work from are the star catalogs provided by Arab astronomers in the 9th and 15th centuries A.D.. It is hoped that the names of stars, their locations, and the descriptions of the constellations they appear in have been accurately preserved for millennia, but proving the matter is problematic. There are great gaps in the historical record.

The Dendera Planisphere, a representation of the stars in the heavens and the constellations that was found in a 2,000 year old temple building in Egypt, promises a greater antiquity. The temple complex is of much greater antiquity than the building the planisphere is located in (it is assumed the building had been reconstructed around 50 B.C.). The planisphere itself depicts what the heavens would have looked like approximately 2,700 years B.C.. This is much closer to the time of man's creation, but there are uncertainties present. Was the Dendera Zodiac accurately preserved over the millennia? Do the images reflect knowledge of Egyptian astronomy in 50 B.C., or in 2,700 B.C.?



Dendera Zodiac

It is a massive undertaking to begin fact checking claims about what was understood in the past. An example of how easy it is to err is found in Danny Faulkner's critique of Frances Rolleston's work. He states:

The source of the drawing appears to be the Dendera planisphere, a stone star chart found in Dendera, Egypt, which is about 2,000 years old (though at the time of Rolleston, Seiss, and Bullinger, it was thought to be far older).

Faulkner suggests that Rolleston, Seiss, and Bullinger, who all lived in the 1800s, thought that the Dendera Zodiac was of much greater antiquity than scholars now date it to be (50 B.C.). Faulkner evidently was not aware of the biographical work on Frances Rolleston's life, being acquainted only with her book *Mazzaroth*. In the writing *Letters of Frances Rolleston of Keswick*, the following statement is made by Rolleston in one of her letters.

I enclose a copy of my Lithograph from the Dendera Planisphere, the figures indicating 2,000 B.C., the temple being comparatively modern, [of the] age of the Caesars in Egypt, it is said.

[Source: *Letters of Frances Rolleston of Keswick*, page 511]

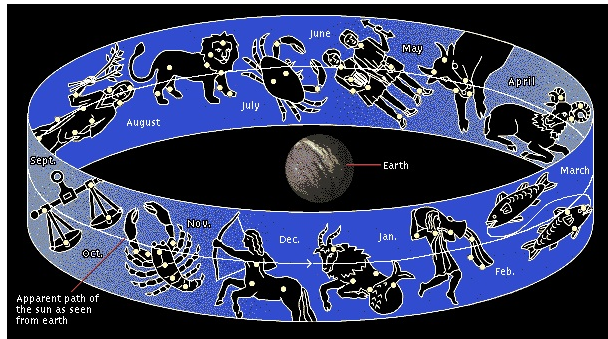
The highlighted words reveal that Frances Rolleston understood that the Planisphere at Dendera was from the time of the Caesars, not thousands of years earlier. It is very easy to err when one tries to pin down what people knew 150 years ago. How much more difficult must it be to speak authoritatively about what people know 5,000-6,000 years ago?

I share this information as a prelude to speaking about the message contained in the heavens. I want the reader to understand that although there is much evidence and good arguments to put forth in support of Yahweh using the heavens as a mode of communication of prophecy, there is also a need to exercise some restraint. Specific details cannot always be set forth with great confidence. There must be room left for debate and further exploration of this subject. We should also manifest patience with those who hold to other views. Our hope is that Yahweh might restore the knowledge of that which has been obscured by the passage of millennia and the corruptions of men and angels.

Jeremiah 6:16

Thus says Yahweh, “Stand by the ways and see and ask for the ancient paths...”

The Scroll of the Heavens



The twelve constellations of the zodiac are found in a narrow band that borders the path of the sun through the heavens. If a person envisions the heavens as being a giant sphere that surrounds the earth, the zodiac would be about 1/20th, or 18 degrees, of this globe, forming a belt around the earth. The Romans Cicero and Vitruvius referred to the zodiac as the *Orbis Signiferus*, or *Circulus Signifer*, meaning the Sign Bearing Circle. The shape of the zodiac, consisting of a narrow band wrapped around the earth lends itself well to comparison to a scroll, that ancient predecessor to the book.

Scrolls were frequently made of plant material such as papyrus, or of prepared animal skins (parchment and vellum). Inks and dyes were used to inscribe the scrolls with words and images to preserve and communicate messages to others. In contrast, the heavenly scroll is cut from the inky blackness of the heavens, and the message recorded upon it is written in lights. Like the Holy Scriptures, the stellar prophecy is not a dead, static communicate. It is living, and ever revealing new truths.

Hebrews 4:12

For the word of God is living and active...

The scroll of the heaven is able to bring forth new revelations, timely messages pertaining to the appointed times (*moedim*) of Yahweh. At the right time the magi observed the star in the east announcing the birth of the Savior, the King of the Jews. The heavens are truly “living and active.” As David wrote under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, the starry skies are continuously pouring forth speech and revealing knowledge (Psalm 19).

There will always be some who, through fear of the corruptions of Satan, reject any possibility that Yahweh would choose to use the heavenly luminaries as a mode of communication to mankind. Nevertheless, the testimony of Scripture substantiates the truth of the heaven’s oracular role. Indeed, the prophets and apostles were inspired to compare the heavens to a scroll. What is a scroll, if not a medium of communication, and one chosen by Yahweh to record and convey divine truth? If Yahweh had not wanted His people to view the heavens as a form of divine communication, would He have deliberately chosen to compare the heavens to a scroll?

Isaiah 34:4

All *the host of heaven* shall be dissolved, and *the heavens shall be rolled up like a scroll...*

“The host of heaven” is a reference to the stars. At some point in Yahweh’s plan of the ages the stars will dissolve like letters mysteriously disappearing from the pages of a book. Then the scroll itself will be rolled up. Undoubtedly, the purpose for this will be that the message of the heavens will have been fulfilled. The messenger role of the stars will be complete. The book will then be closed. In the book of Revelation the apostle John testified that this will occur at the time the sixth seal is opened.

Revelation 6:12-14

And I looked when He broke the sixth seal, and there was a great earthquake; and the sun became black as sackcloth made of hair, and the whole moon became like blood; and ***the stars of the sky fell to the earth, as a fig tree casts its unripe figs when shaken by a great wind. And the sky was split apart like a scroll when it is rolled up...***

With the return of Yahshua to establish His kingdom upon the earth, and the vanquishing of the adversary, Satan, the great dragon, the stellar prophecy will have been fulfilled. Fittingly, the message will be dissolved, and the scroll rolled up. That, however, will not be the end of stellar prophecy. The Scriptures foretell of a time when the heavens will be replaced and renewed. The first things will have passed away. The new creation will require a new message in the heavens. The heavens themselves will be replaced as a man changes his garments. The earth will be surrounded with new lights bearing a new message.

Hebrews 1:10-12

And [further], You, Lord, did lay the foundation of the earth in the beginning, and the heavens are the works of Your hands. They will perish, but You remain and continue permanently; they will all grow old and wear out like a garment. Like a mantle [thrown about one's self] You will roll them up, and they will be changed and replaced by others.

[Amplified Bible]

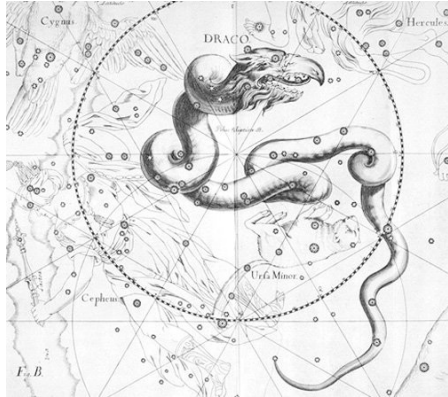
Psalms 102:25-26

At the beginning You existed and laid the foundations of the earth; the heavens are the work of Your hands. They shall perish, but You shall remain and endure; yes, all of them shall wear out and become old like a garment. Like clothing You shall change them, and they shall be changed and pass away.

[Amplified Bible]

Even as we are told that there will be a new earth that has no seas (for seas are typical of death), so too will the heavens be changed. If I am not mistaken, there will no longer be any constellations representing the serpent of old, or the great dragon. There will no longer be constellations showing forth the struggle between Christ and Satan. The conflict will be concluded. It will be a new age when every knee will bow before the Son of God, and every tongue will confess His righteousness to the glory of God the Father.

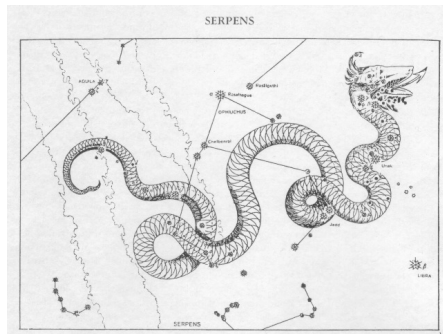
At present, the heavens contain numerous signs depicting that rebellious adversary of all that is holy. How unfitting it would be to continue to observe these signs after Satan has been judged, bound, and cast into the lake of fire. No, these constellations must be dissolved. The scroll telling that story must be replaced by a new scroll telling a message of holiness and righteousness, and a kingdom of peace and justice.



Draco Must be Dissolved



Hydra Must be Dissolved



Serpens Must be Dissolved

A new age will require a new heaven where the stars tell a new message. No longer will there be a destroyer. No longer will there be death. No longer will there be a rebel to speak lies and arrogant words in defiance of Yahweh and His only begotten Son. The heavens will have new and glorious things to declare.

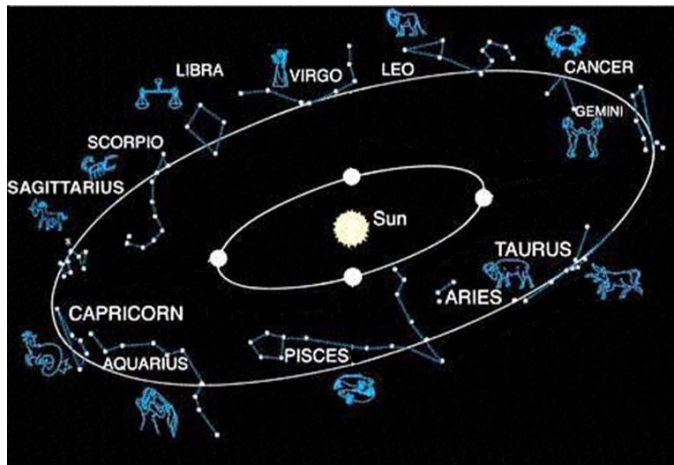
I Corinthians 2:9

Just as it is written, "Things which eye has not seen and ear has not heard, and which have not entered the heart of man, all that God has prepared for those who love Him."

Yahweh in His foresight and wisdom chose to use the heavens to communicate a prophetic message

to be read universally of all men. Knowing the wickedness humanity would succumb to, and the great evil they would accomplish if they remained as one, He foresaw the need to separate man into languages, and kindred and tribes. The confusion of the speech of man at the tower of Babel was taken into account before this present creation was formed. The starry host speak a language of symbols understandable to all nations of men. The message of the stars is not conveyed through Greek, or Hebrew, or Russian, or English, or Spanish, or Mandarin, or any of the hundreds of languages of men. It is communicated through symbols.

I remember as a child hearing some adults speaking of the constellations. I was shown the Big and Little Dippers (Some readers may recognize the Dipper by the name “the Plough”). They reminded me of the dot-to-dot puzzles I was familiar with in my childhood. In my mind I could imagine a line between the stars and see how they looked like a dipper. I found it confusing later on when I heard adults speak of other constellations. I specifically recall someone pointing out to me the constellation Orion. They directed my attention to the three bright stars in Orion’s belt. I expected that the other stars in this constellation would form the outline of a man. I was sadly disappointed. I learned that none of the figures of the zodiac are readily apparent from the stars which comprise them. There seems to be no visual relationship at all to the characters of the zodiac and the stars associated with them. There may be a star in the foot of one figure, a cluster of stars in the shoulder of another, but none of the stars form what I as a child had imagined to be dot-to-dot figures in the sky.



Dot-to-Dot - NOT!

Any person looking up at the canopy of the sky would be hard pressed to find in the stars images of a virgin, a lion, a scorpion, a bull, a man pouring water from a vase, two fish, or any of the other figures associated with the constellations. The stars do not lend themselves naturally to such images. This makes it all the more remarkable that there is such a profound harmony among ancient and modern civilizations as to the number and identification of the zodiacal figures. This great correspondence serves as evidence of the extreme antiquity of the zodiac, and proof that it arose from a common source before mankind was scattered upon the face of the earth.

Some questions pertinent to our present study are:

- How old are the constellations of the zodiac?

- Who appointed the constellations, attached figures to them, named them, and assigned specific stars to them?
- Did the design of the constellations originate with man, with angels, or with God?

The opinions set forth in answer to these questions are manifold. More than a few trace the origin of the zodiac back to Adam and his descendants. Frances Rolleston shares the following thoughts.

In whatever obscurity the origin of the emblems of astronomy may appear to be enveloped in the traditions of the nations where they are preserved, no such doubts hang over that of the science itself. It has always and every where (sic) been traced back to the earliest race of man. The Hebrews, Chaldeans, Persians, and Arabs imputed its invention to Adam, Seth, and Enoch...

The learned Jew Josephus, who, living at the time of the destruction of the Temple by Titus, refers for his authorities to ancient writers whose names alone remain to us. He attributes the invention of the science to "the family of Seth the son of Adam," when, the life of man then extending to near a thousand years, they were enabled to ascertain from actual observation the return of the heavenly bodies to the same positions in cycles and periods, which in after ages it has required the labour of successive generations to verify.

Adam, divinely led to give names to what he saw, must have had such for the sun and moon, and probably for the planets whose movements would attract his notice. Those celestial splendours shone in the far-off and inaccessible heaven, the abode or the path to the abode of his Creator and Redeemer, whence Divine instruction and yet more Divine mercy had descended upon him. Thither his eyes would reverently and most habitually turn: the starry world on high would be, if not the first, the most absorbing object of his contemplation; and astronomy would naturally be, as tradition declares, the earliest study, the first science of mankind. Seth, the son of his consolation and heir of his promises, the traditional father of astronomy, is said to have commenced its arrangement with that of the twelve signs...

Enoch, his descendant, with whom he was long contemporary, is said by tradition to have given names to the stars: the further development of prophecy that appears among the constellations annexed to the signs, above and below them, may then be referred to him. "The family of Seth" thus devised, carried on, and completed this great work, which remains to us an unchanged memorial of their piety, their intellect, and the revelation which they were endeavouring to perpetuate...

[Frances Rolleston, *Mazzaroth*]

Such are the traditions that have come down to us today. Josephus shared these opinions 2,000 years ago, and these ideas greatly pre-dated him. Yet attributing to Adam, Seth, and their descendants the development of primitive astronomy is not the same as proving the matter. Josephus shared many things in his histories that were nothing more than Jewish fables. We will not find authoritative answers to the questions we seek in the histories and writings of man. The most reputable of the ancient historians and scribes admit that the zodiac is found in the most ancient records of man, but there is no record of what people, or individual, originated it.

Among those who attribute primeval astronomy to Adam and his descendants, there are those who

suggest that God taught the forebears of our race the precepts of the stars. Others suggest that Adam and his progeny developed the science on their own, denying a divine origin. I would argue for a divine origination of the constellations and their symbols, and in doing so I would look to the Scriptures themselves for proof of the matter.

II Timothy 3:16-17

All Scripture is inspired by God and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, for training in righteousness; that the man of God may be adequate, equipped for every good work.

I believe there is sufficient evidence contained in the Scriptures to demonstrate that Yahweh is the originator of the twelve constellations of the zodiac in their original form and significations, and that He taught this knowledge to the earliest men. Let us begin by revisiting the first chapter of Genesis.

Genesis 1:14-18

Then God said, “Let there be lights in the expanse of the heavens to separate the day from the night, and let them be for signs, and for appointed times, and for days and years; and let them be for lights in the expanse of the heavens to give light on the earth”; and it was so. And God made the two great lights, the greater light to govern the day, and the lesser light to govern the night; the stars also. And God placed them in the expanse of the heavens to give light on the earth, and to govern the day and the night, and to separate the light from the darkness; and God saw that it was good.

These words describe the work of God on the 4th day of the re-creation of the earth. As previously shared, the work of day four was NOT the creation of the heavenly lights, but rather their arrangement. On day one of creation Yahweh said “Let there be light” and there was light. We are told from day one God separated the light from the darkness and there was evening and morning. There had to have been lights in the heavens, especially the light of the sun, in order for there to be day and night, light and darkness.

What we find occurring on day four of the creation is the ordering of the lights in the heavens. Although the English word “made” appears in the text, the Hebrew word from which it is translated bears a wide range of meanings. Following is Strong’s Definition of this Hebrew word.

asah (aw-saw'); a primitive root; to do or make, in the broadest sense and widest application (as follows):

KJV - accomplish, advance, appoint, apt, be at, become, bear, bestow, bring forth, bruise, be busy, certainly, have the charge of, commit, deal (with), deck, displease, do, (ready) dress (-ed), (put in) execute (-ion), exercise, fashion, feast, [fighting-] man, finish, fit, fly, follow, fulfill, furnish, gather, get, go about, govern, grant, great, hinder, hold ([a feast]), indeed, be industrious, journey, keep, labour, maintain, make, be meet, observe, be occupied, offer, officer, pare, bring (come) to pass, perform, practice, prepare, procure, provide, put, requite, sacrifice, serve, set, shew, sin, spend, surely, take, thoroughly, trim, very, vex, be [war-]rior, work (-man), yield, use.

The translators of the KJV Bible have rendered this single Hebrew word in dozens of ways. In speaking of day four of the re-creation of the earth, they could have used the words “furnished,” “provided,” “fitted,” or “arranged” in place of the word “made.” This would have been in keeping

with the parallel statement, “God placed them in the expanse of the heavens...” Having determined that the stars should be used for signs, and to announce appointed times, it was necessary for Yahweh to arrange the heavens in an orderly fashion. Yahweh established a plan of the ages before He ever began the work of day one. He determined the course of creation, its works, its ages, and its conclusion.

Acts 15:18

Known from the ages to God are all His works...

[Young’s Literal Translation]

Ephesians 3:10-11

That there might be made known now to the principalities and the authorities in the heavens, through the assembly, the manifold wisdom of God, *according to a plan of the ages, which He made in Christ Yahshua our Lord...*

Hebrews 11:3

By faith we understand the ages to have been prepared by a saying of God...

[Young’s Literal Translation]

Isaiah 46:9-11

“For I am God, and there is no other; I am God, and there is no one like Me, declaring the end from the beginning and from ancient times things which have not been done, saying, 'My purpose will be established, and I will accomplish all My good pleasure...' Truly I have spoken; truly I will bring it to pass. I have planned it, surely I will do it.”

Yahweh’s plan of the ages has moved inexorably forward to its fulfillment. It cannot be sped up, or slowed down. No one can resist the omnipotence of Yahweh’s might. Before the stars were set in place to mark the appointed times of the Creator, the divine plan had been established. Everything was assigned a proper time.

Ecclesiastes 3:1

There is an appointed time for everything. And there is a time for every event under heaven...

Was it merely poetic inclination that inspired Solomon to connect the words “appointed time” with the words “under heaven”? I do not believe so. I am persuaded that this wisest of all kings understood well the purpose of the starry heavens. He recognized their role to mark the appointed times (moedim) of Yahweh. At the appointed time a child was born to a virgin in the tribe of Judah, a descendant of David. At the appointed time the star appeared in the heavens announcing that the King of the Jews had been born. This star had been set in motion 4,000 years earlier on the 4th day of creation. It appeared at a specific place in the heavens, at the precise moment of Yahweh’s choosing, to coincide with events in Yahweh’s plan of the ages.

Matthew 2:1-2

Now after Yahshua was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, behold, magi from the east arrived in Jerusalem, saying, “Where is He who has been born King of the Jews? For we saw

His star in the east, and have come to worship Him.”

The magi announced that they had seen “His star!” This was a specific star. It was a prophetic star declaring a message of divine importance. It was appointed to shine forth at a specific year and month and day and hour. The magi understood the language of the heavens. They were educated in the meaning of the constellations. If Yahweh were not the author of these symbols, how would they have discerned correctly the heavenly prophecy?

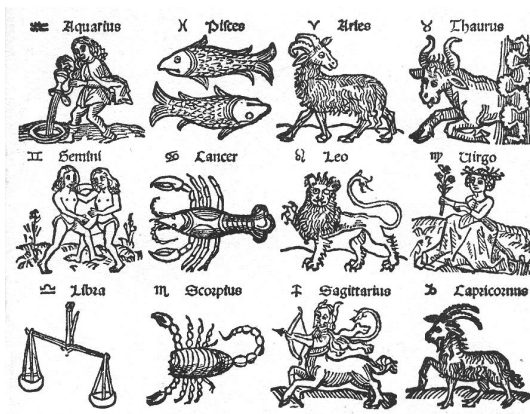
Yahweh IS the author of the constellations and the significations that they bear. He testified on day four of creation “let them be *for signs*, and for appointed times.” If they are to be used as signs, Yahweh must not only arrange the stars and lead them forth in perfect coordination upon their courses through the heavens, but He must communicate to man an understanding of the symbolic language of the heavens.

In a remarkable passage in the book of Job, Yahweh mentions that it is He who directs the motion of the constellations.

Job 38:31-33

“Can you bind the cluster of the Pleiades, or loose the belt of Orion? Can you bring out Mazzaroth (literally, “the constellations”) in its season? Or can you guide Arcturus with his sons? Do you know the ordinances of the heavens? Can you set their dominion over the earth?”

Yahweh gives names to several of the constellations of the heavens in this passage. Although there is some dispute among Bible scholars as to what constellations these Hebrew words refer to, we can deduce from the passage that they were well known to Job. Job lived 4,000 years ago, approximately 2,000 years after Adam was created. The manner in which Yahweh specifically names constellations, and speaks of being the One who has established their courses through the heavens, serves as compelling evidence that He is the originator of these starry symbols.



16th Century Woodcut of the Zodiacal Signs

What is meant by the question “Do you know the ordinances of the heavens?” The word “ordinance” is translated from the Hebrew word “chuqqah” which means an ordinance or statute. It speaks of that which has been established by God as law. What is being communicated by Yahweh is that there is

an assigned course for the stars of the heavens from which they cannot deviate. Obviously Job could not answer affirmatively to the question God posted to him, for to be able to know the ordinances of the heavens Job would have to know the future. It is not given to man to know the specific hour and day of the appointed times of Yahweh.

Acts 1:6-7

And so when they had come together, they were asking Him, saying, "Lord, is it at this time You are restoring the kingdom to Israel?" He said to them, "It is not for you to know times or epochs which the Father has fixed by His own authority..."

Yahweh then asked Job another rhetorical question, "Can you set their dominion over the earth?" In what way do the stars hold dominion over the earth? To hold dominion over something is to rule over it. In Genesis chapter one we read, "God made the two great lights, the greater light to **govern** the day, and the lesser light to **govern** the night; the stars also." The dominion of the stars is in this sense: they are given for signs and seasons to announce the appointed times for specific works of Yahweh among the creation. What the stars announce cannot be resisted, for they declare the will of God. What He has appointed the stars to speak will be fulfilled. The stars are one form of Yahweh's voice. No word of God will fall to the ground empty.

Isaiah 55:11

So shall My word be that goes forth from My mouth; It shall not return to Me void, but it shall accomplish what I please, and it shall prosper in the thing for which I sent it.

If the heavens declare a thing, it must come to pass. The stars are moved by the power of Yahweh. They are instruments of His dominion. Though Satan and all the angels in league with him should seek to thwart a work of God, they must fail absolutely. They have not the power to forestall a work of God so much as a second. Many times Satan sought to abort the promise of the Seed of the Woman from coming forth, the One who was prophesied to crush his head. When Cain slew Abel, Satan was attempting to cut off the promised Seed, but he failed. When the devil inspired Pharaoh to kill all the males born to the captive Israelites he was attempting to cut off the promised Seed. When the great adversary induced Herod to murder all the male children three years old and younger in the vicinity of Bethlehem, he was seeking to cut off the promised Seed.

Satan was fighting against the heavens, for the heavens were declaring that the appointed time was at hand. The King of the Jews had been born. Neither Herod, nor Satan, nor any created thing, could overrule the will of God. Yahweh's plan would stand. Throughout the life and ministry of the Messiah, Satan sought to destroy His life. He stirred up the Jewish rulers and people of Israel against the Son of God. In their jealousy and blind ambition they sought to kill Him time and again. From the announcement of His ministry in Nazareth, Satan sought to kill the promised Seed. The people of Nazareth, provoked at the words of Yahshua, took Him to the brow of the hill upon which the city was built, intending to cast Him down to His death, but Yahweh intervened and the Son of God walked through their midst escaping their deadly intent. Time and again Yahweh escaped from their hands, awaiting the hour appointed where He would lay His life down freely.

John 10:17-18

"For this reason the Father loves Me, because I lay down My life that I may take it again. No one has taken it away from Me, but I lay it down on My own initiative. I have authority to lay it down, and I have authority to take it up again. This commandment I received from My Father."

The authority of the stars in the heavens is expressed in another passage of Scripture. In the book of Judges we read the story of Barak and Deborah and their victory over the armies of the Canaanites. Yahweh wrought a mighty victory for the people of Israel that day. It was so complete that not a single man was left alive of the army of Sisera. In commemoration of the magnificent victory, Deborah and Barak sang a song of praise in which we find the following words:

Judges 5:20

The stars fought from heaven, from their courses they fought against Sisera.

Repeatedly in the Bible we read of the stars having assigned "courses." What is meant by this is that Yahweh has established the circuit of the stars in the heavens. These circuits bring certain stars and constellations into key alignments that announce the will of God, some part of His divine plan of the ages. On this day the stars foretold the victory of Israel and the destruction of her enemies. By a figure of speech it could be said that "The stars fought from heaven, from their courses they fought against Sisera."

Unless Yahweh had established the course of the heavenly luminaries, and had ascribed to them a form of symbolic speech, a speech that was communicated through figures and various alignments, eclipses, and conjunctions, man would be unable to understand the stellar prophecy. The Scriptures reveal that the people of God, at least some of them, did indeed understand this heavenly speech. In other Bible passages we find Yahweh making mention of the constellations.

Job 9:5-9

It is God who... commands the sun not to shine, and sets a seal upon the stars; Who alone stretches out the heavens, and tramples down the waves of the sea; Who makes Arcturus (Osh), Orion (Kesil), and the Pleiades (Kimah), and the chambers (constellations?) of the south...

In chapter 41 of Job Yahweh describes Leviathan. The description is of a fire breathing dragon. Some would suppose that this is a description of some dangerous beast alive at the time of Job. Whether or not there is truth to this, it should be considered that the description is illustrative of a number of heavenly constellations, including Hydra the sea monster and Draco the dragon. Isaiah the prophet also mentions the constellations of the heavens.

Isaiah 13:10

For the stars of heaven and their constellations will not flash forth their light; The sun will be dark when it rises, and the moon will not shed its light.

Isaiah is writing these words under direct inspiration of Yahweh. One might well ask, "If the constellations were of pagan origin, or were some vain creation of man's imagination, why does Yahweh make mention of them?" Everything else in this verse is a creation of Yahweh. The passage

mentions “the stars of the heavens,” “the sun,” and “the moon.” Should we not expect that the fourth thing mentioned in this verse, “the constellations,” are also a creation of Yahweh?

The prophet Amos declared God to have “made” (or arranged) the constellations.

Amos 5:8

He made the Pleiades (Kimah) and Orion (Kesil)... Yahweh is His name.

Amos does **not** say that Yahweh made the stars and that man subsequently made the constellations. The prophet gives direct attribution of the constellations to the Creator. A very plain statement on this matter is found in the book of Job.

Job 26:13

By his spirit he hath garnished (adorned) the heavens; his hand hath formed the crooked serpent.
KJV

The crooked serpent is a well known constellation in the heavens and is found among all ancient zodiacs. Draco is the constellation likely being referred to here. Is this not significant evidence pointing to Yahweh as being the originator of the constellations? We are told that Yahweh’s Spirit has garnished, adorned, or decorated the heavens. In other words, the Spirit of God established the heavenly signs among which is found “the crooked serpent.”

One of the greatest pieces of evidence found in Scripture that supports the conclusion that Yahweh not only acknowledges the constellations, but is the originator of them and the messages they declare, is found in the 12th chapter of Revelation.

Revelation 12:1-3

And a great sign appeared in heaven: a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and on her head a crown of twelve stars; and she was with child; and she cried out, being in labor and in pain to give birth. And another sign appeared in heaven: and behold, a great red dragon having seven heads and ten horns, and on his heads were seven diadems.

The clear parallels to the images presented here and known constellations and heavenly bodies is unmistakable. The constellation Hydra is often depicted as a seven headed dragon.



Centuries before the book of Revelation was written, the Greeks spoke of Heracles, and the Romans of Hercules, slaying the multi-headed Hydra. This was considered the second of the twelve labors of Heracles/Hercules. These myths had a direct correspondence with the constellations in the heavens. In a very real sense, Greek and Roman mythology was astral mythology. Their stories were recorded in the constellations. The myths were corruptions of the original message that Yahweh set in the heavens.

Even as the serpent, the dragon, and even the seven headed dragon, have their figures in the heavens, so too does the woman who gives birth to the man-child of Revelation 12. Some have identified her as Virgo, others as Andromeda who is chained at the edge of the sea to be sacrificed to Cetus, a great sea monster. In a subtle link to the Revelation account, Andromeda's savior, Perseus is wearing winged sandals that give him the ability to fly, a gift from Hermes. Thus wings play a part in delivering the woman from the monster.



Andromeda Delivered from the Monster

Once again we see that the divine figure in the heavens has been corrupted into a vain myth. Yet, there is ample evidence provided that Yahweh has set this sign in the heavens and that the sun, moon, and stars are the instruments He has chosen to tell His story. We see a tremendous correspondence between this passage from the last book of the Bible and the statement observed in the first chapter of Genesis.

Genesis 1:14

“Let there be lights in the expanse of the heavens..., and let them be for *signs*...”

Revelation 12:1

And a great *sign* appeared in heaven...

The apostle Paul aptly described the corruption that occurred to the divine testimony when he wrote to the Christians in Rome.

Romans 1:20-23

For since the creation of the world His invisible attributes, His eternal power and divine nature, have been clearly seen, being understood through what has been made, so that they are without excuse. For even though they knew God, they did not honor Him as God, or give thanks; but they became futile in their speculations, and their foolish heart was darkened. Professing to be wise, they became fools, and exchanged the glory of the incorruptible God for an image in the form of corruptible man and of birds and four-footed animals and crawling creatures.

Some in seeking an explanation for this passage declare that the complexity, vastness, and wisdom manifested in the creation all point back to a divine Creator. While this is true, there is much more intimated through these words of the apostle. The creation shows forth the glory of the Creator in very specific ways. In this same book Paul quotes from the 19th Psalm.

Romans 10:16-18

However, they did not all heed the glad tidings; for Isaiah says, “Lord, who has believed our report?” So faith comes from hearing, and hearing by the word of Christ. But I say, surely they have never heard, have they? Indeed they have; “Their voice has gone out into all the earth, and their words to the ends of the world.”

Whose voice has gone out into all the earth? It is the voice of the stars!

Psalms 19:1-4

The heavens are telling of the glory of God; And their expanse is declaring the work of His hands. Day to day pours forth speech, and night to night reveals knowledge. There is no speech, nor are there words; Their voice is not heard. Their line has gone out through all the earth, and their utterances to the end of the world.

Is there not a parallel between the words “The heavens are telling of the glory of God,” and “For since the creation of the world His invisible attributes, His eternal power and divine nature, have been clearly seen”? Accepting that Paul included the stars and heavens as part of the creation that he said was displaying the knowledge of God, we can make some correlation between his succeeding statements and the constellations of the heavens.

Paul stated that mankind “exchanged the glory of the incorruptible God for an image in the form of corruptible man and of birds and four-footed animals and crawling creatures.” The constellations display the conflict between Satan and the Son of God. Satan is observed in many images. He is Draco the dragon, Serpens in the hands of Ophiuchus, Cetus seeking to destroy the virgin Andromeda, Hydra, the seven headed dragon, Scorpio with the sting in its tail wounding the heel of Orion, etc.. Yahshua, the only begotten Son of God is depicted in constellations that bear the names of various men of myth: Hercules, Orion, Ophiuchus, Perseus, Bootes, etc., as well as some animals; Leo the lion, Aries the ram.

Truly it can be said that men became vain in their imaginations and their foolish hearts were darkened. They exchanged the glory of God for images “in the form of corruptible man and of birds and four-footed animals and crawling creatures.” These images became the objects of man’s worship.

From ancient days men have worshiped those images they saw in the heavens; dragons, serpents, bulls, and various images of animals and men.



When the Israelites formed a calf of gold in the wilderness and said, “This is the god that brought us up out of Egypt,” they were imitating the vain manner of worship they had observed in that nation. They had become futile in their speculations, and darkened in their understanding. This behavior has been observed in all nations, for “the whole world lies in the power of the evil one.”



Dragon Parade

In yet another passage we are told that Yahweh uses the heavenly luminaries to convey information to mankind.

Luke 21:7-27

And they questioned Him, saying, “Teacher, when therefore will these things be? And what will be the sign when these things are about to take place?” And He said... “And there will be signs in sun and moon and stars and upon the earth... men fainting from fear and the expectation of the things which are coming upon the world; for the powers of the heavens will be shaken. And then they will see the Son of Man coming in a cloud with power and great glory.”

Once more we are told that the stars and other heavenly bodies are employed as “signs” to announce the works of God and His appointed times. One of the landmark events in the ages of creation is the

return of Christ to subdue the dragon and establish His rule over the earth. Such an important event will be announced and attended with signs in the heavens. There has been much written in recent years about a series of blood moons and solar eclipses that will occur on the Feast Days of Yahweh, culminating in the year 2017. Some believe these signs are announcing the Great Tribulation, being a fulfillment of the prophecy of Joel.

Joel 2:29-31

“I will pour out My Spirit in those days. And I will display wonders in the sky and on the earth, blood, fire, and columns of smoke. The sun will be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and awesome day of Yahweh comes.”

Despite the substantial amount of Scriptural evidence that Yahweh created the stars and other heavenly luminaries to serve as “signs” to be read and understood by man, there are many Christians who reject completely this Biblical concept. While looking at reviews online for Frances Rolleston’s book *Mazzaroth*, I came across the following testimony.

The essence of astrology is that there is "meaning" in the stars, e.g. that when Jupiter is in Leo, it means something. Other forms of divination presume to find meaning in other things in nature, e.g. that the arrangement of tea leaves or chicken entrails or the lines in one's palm have some esoteric meaning. These "Gospel in the Stars" books presume to find Biblical meaning in the constellations. [Source: Jay Ryan - *Mazzaroth* book review on Amazon]

This rejection of stellar prophecy, lumping it together with unlawful forms of divination such as reading tea leaves and chicken entrails, and performing palm readings, reveals the subtlety of Satan. Not only has the devil provided a corrupt and counterfeit form of stellar prophecy that is recognized by the word “astrology” today, but he has been successful in convincing many Christians that the constellations and heavenly messages ordained by Yahweh are to be avoided. What a coup d’état Satan has performed. He has co-opted the heavens as his own message board while effectually blinding the majority of the body of Christ to its legitimate divine function.

One major distinguishing characteristic between Satan’s counterfeit astrology and Yahweh’s stellar prophecy is who it serves. Pagan astrology is largely self-serving. It is employed by people who want to know when the best time is to start a business venture, to pursue a romantic relationship, or to go to war against an enemy. Satanic imitations of the ways of God are always corrupted, being infused with Lucifer’s own self-seeking nature. This covering cherub was not content with the lofty position Yahweh had appointed to him. Filled with selfish ambition he desired to ascend higher.

Isaiah 14:13-14

You said in your heart, “I will ascend to heaven; I will raise my throne above the stars of God, and I will sit on the mount of assembly in the recesses of the north. I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High.”

People who practice astrology and consult horoscopes are looking for some advantage in life. They want to ascend. They desire to be assured of success, and to avoid suffering and defeat, by consulting with the stars. They are not content to lay their lives in God’s hands, trusting Him to choose for them

the experiences that are best suited for their maturing as children of God. They have decided for themselves what experiences they want in life. Astrology becomes a means for them to achieve their personal desires. This selfish aspect of astrology is revealed in the following passage of Scripture.

Isaiah 47:12-13

“Stand now with your enchantments and the multitude of your sorceries, in which you have labored from your youth - perhaps you will be able to profit, perhaps you will prevail. You are wearied in the multitude of your counsels; Let now the astrologers, the stargazers, and the monthly prognosticators stand up and save you from what shall come upon you.”

Note the words, “perhaps you will be able to profit, perhaps you will prevail.” All of the forbidden occult practices named in these verses are utilized by men and women for personal profit, that they might prevail in their desires. In contrast, the speech Yahweh utters through the starry host declares His will and purposes. The constellations and sun and moon are used to reveal God’s plans to humanity.

We see in these two distinct practices (the divine original and the Satanic counterfeit) a foundational difference in the mindset of the practitioners. Those who look to the heavens to know what Yahweh is speaking, do so that they might walk wisely, understanding the hour they live in and the purposes of God that are appointed for the day in which they live. Christ admonished the Jews to study the signs God set before them that they might recognize the purposes of God to be accomplished in their time.

Matthew 16:2-3

He answered and said to them, “When it is evening, you say, ‘It will be fair weather, for the sky is red.’ And in the morning, ‘There will be a storm today, for the sky is red and threatening.’ Do you know how to discern the appearance of the sky, but cannot discern the signs of the times?”

Luke 19:41-44

And when He approached, He saw the city and wept over it, saying, “If you had known in this day, even you, the things which make for peace! But now they have been hidden from your eyes. For the days shall come upon you when your enemies will throw up a bank before you, and surround you, and hem you in on every side, and will level you to the ground and your children within you, and they will not leave in you one stone upon another, because you did not recognize the time of your visitation.”

Not heeding the signs Yahweh provided of the work He would accomplish in the hour in which they lived, the Jewish rulers and people failed to respond in a manner that would result in peace between them and God. They rejected the long promised Messiah, and crucified the Lord of glory, though the Scriptures, the angels, and the stars of the heaven all announced His appearing. Consequently their city was destroyed, their role as priests of God to the nations was taken away from them, and they fell to their oppressors.

It is needful that the people of God today pay heed to the signs of the times. It is not a time to focus upon the pursuit of material goods, worldly riches, and pleasures. These things must shortly pass away. The heavens declare this fact, as do the Scriptures.

How different is the attitude of those who consult horoscopes, making personal plans based on charts drawn up that look to the position of the stars at the hour of their birth? Their soul determines the goals they seek. They merely look to the stars to inform them of the most auspicious time to pursue their personal ambitions. The astrology of Satan appeals to the flesh and soul of man, while the stellar prophecy of Yahweh speaks to man's spirit.

Like the enchantments and sorceries that Isaiah mentions, astrology is a form of manipulation. Its goal is to use the creation, other people, and even God Himself, for one's personal profit. By aligning their actions with the stars, men and women believe they might somehow induce the creation (and by extension, the Creator) to do their bidding and to accomplish their pleasure. Like witchcraft, Luciferian astrology begins with man at the center and seeks to bring about man's will on the earth. All that is divine and originates from Yahweh begins with God at the center. Christians should look to the testimony of the heavens to know what Yahweh has determined to do in their day, that they might align themselves with His will and desires.

In the book *Dragon Flood*, I shared that the construction of all of the government buildings in Washington, D.C., began with a Masonic cornerstone laying ceremony where grain and oil were offered to Baal. Before any of these ceremonies took place, a horoscope was cast to determine the most auspicious time to lay the cornerstone. It was believed that the influences of the heavens could be drawn upon to insure the success of the labor that men were entering into. Following is an excerpt from the book *Dragon Flood*.

David Ovason in his insightful and exceptionally well documented book *The Secret Architecture of Our Nation's Capital* has demonstrated quite convincingly that Washington, D.C. was designed as a Masonic city. Ovason is writing from the viewpoint of a man much learned in the esoteric rites and symbols of ancient mysteries. Ovason is an teacher of astrology by trade, understanding the ancient practice of casting horoscopes to determine auspicious days in which nation's would begin new works. His understanding of arcane lore is revealed in his book...

In his book on the secret architecture of Washington, D.C., Ovason explains the significance of casting a horoscope to determine the optimal time for beginning various works such as laying the cornerstone for important national buildings. Ovason writes the following:

The formal laying of a cornerstone was no new thing, even in America. It was already a ritual sanctified by Masonic tradition, a throwback to an age when it was believed that all human activities were overseen by the gods. In essence, the cornerstone ceremonial was designed not only to gain the approval of the spiritual beings, but also to ensure that these were content that the building was being brought into the world at the right time. That is one reason why it was commonplace for those designing cornerstone rituals to examine the time of the ceremonial in the light of astrology.

[Source: David Ovason, *The Secret Architecture of Our Nation's Capital*]

Although Ovason has discovered none of the horoscopes that were cast to determine the dates on which events took place in the Nation's Capital, he has examined the dates and times and drawn up the horoscopes himself. His conclusion is that "*We must assume that whoever was directing the planning of Washington, D.C... had a considerable knowledge of astrology...*"

Ovason goes on to explain, *“The building of the federal city began formally April 15, 1791, when a number of Masons gathered together in Alexandria. Their purpose was the enacting of a Masonic ceremonial laying of the first marker stone for the new city, which would soon be called Washington.”*

The architect chosen to design the White House was James Hoban. David Ovason writes, *“The date when Hoban became a Mason is not on record, but in the year following the laying of the cornerstone for the President’s House he would become Worshipful Master of Georgetown Lodge No. 9.”*

On October 13, 1792, the Freemasons held a cornerstone laying ceremony for the President’s House, later to be called the White House. The following quotation from the *Charleston City Gazette*, November 15, 1792 provides an eyewitness account of the ceremony.

“On Saturday the 13th inst. The first stone was laid in the south-west corner of the president’s house, in the city of Washington, by the Free Masons of Georgetown and its vicinity, who assembled on the occasion. The procession was formed at the Fountain Inn, Georgetown... The ceremony was performed by brother Casaneva, master of the lodge, who delivered an oration well adapted to the occasion.”

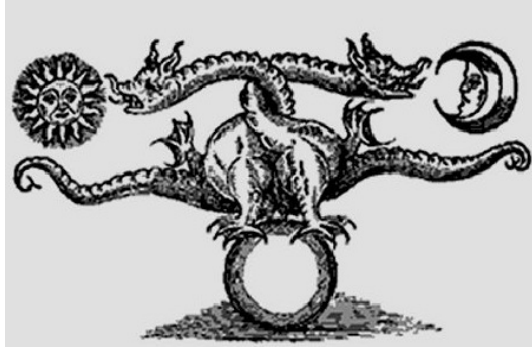
Ovason describes the horoscope drawn up for the day the Masonic cornerstone ceremony for the President’s House was laid.

*“In the arch of the skies on the day the foundation stone for the White House was laid, there was a most interesting conjunction. Shortly before noon, the moon had entered the same degree as the **Dragon’s Head** (a node of the moon). Both planet and node were in 23 degrees of Virgo...”*

Although Virgo has great relevance for the Federal city, I want to focus on the Dragon’s Head, which is referred to by the Latin name *Caput draconis*. Ovason points out that the Latin *Caput*, meaning “head,” is the root of the English words capital, and capitol.

It is noteworthy that the Masonic cornerstone laying ceremony for the President’s House took place at a moment when the influence of the Dragon’s Head is observed in the heavens. The Dragon’s Head’s influence is seen again the following year. On September 6, 1793, the first Federal Masonic Lodge in the nation is formed. This is Federal Lodge No. 15, and James Hoban, the architect of the White House, is appointed as Worshipful Master. Ovason writes, *“One presumes that the Lodge had been formed precisely to ensure that a Federal group would attend the cornerstone ceremony (for the Capitol building), which had been widely advertised in Maryland and Columbia.”*

(Note that the year 1793 is also the 18th year of American independence, 18 being 6+6+6.)



Symbol for Dragon's Head and Tail - Nodes of the Moon

Ovason drew up a horoscope for the date on which this Federal Lodge was granted its charter. He states:

*"I imagine that the petition must have been presented shortly after teatime, when the Moon was still in Virgo. That meant that the chart had three planets (Sun, Moon, and Mercury) in Virgo, along with the **Dragon's Head**, the Caput draconis."*

Even as we observed that "the headquarters of the American revolution" was a building called the Green Dragon Tavern, we find that the influence of the dragon continues to have great significance in the founding of the nation's capital city, its chief buildings, and the first Federal Lodge of Freemasonry.

The laying of the Capitol building cornerstone was a major event, widely publicized, and attended by a great crowd of people. According to Ovason and other sources, the event included the roasting of a 500 pound ox. This is reminiscent of ancient sacrifices to Baal.

I Kings 18:25

So Elijah said to the prophets of Baal, "Choose one ox for yourselves and prepare it first for you are many, and call on the name of your god..."

Once more Ovason provides insight into the horoscope cast for the date of the Capitol building dedication.

*"Shortly before midday, Jupiter was rising in Scorpio (Jupiter also was rising on the day that the first marker stone was ceremonially placed in the capital city.)... In the Capitol chart, however, there is emphasis on Virgo which, with good reason, we have begun to expect in horoscopes relating to the federal city. The Sun and Mercury are in Virgo, as is **the Dragon's Head**."*

Skipping forward some 55 years we arrive at the date in which the cornerstone for the Washington Monument was laid, July 4, 1848. Ovason provides the following insight.

"As I have indicated, probably one reason why the Masons chose to lay the stone in the afternoon was because they wished to allow the all-important Virgo to become operative in the chart. Shortly before

lunchtime on that day, the Moon went into Virgo.

*In fact, there was another Virgoan influence in this chart which might be missed by someone not familiar with the workings of astrology. **The all-important Dragon's Head** in the 1848 chart is in 25 degrees of Virgo.*

Remarkably, during the morning of September 18, 1793, when the Capitol building was founded, the Sun was also passing through this same degree of Virgo. This could scarcely be accidental - it must have been arranged for astrological reasons by the Masons. Both placings - and hence, both charts - point to something of profound importance.

According to medieval Arab astrologers (who excelled in star lore), this degree had a particular importance: it marked that point in the zodiac where the Moon was thought to promote the greatest happiness and well being. We must presume, then, that the intention behind the choice of moment was that this beneficial influence would be transmitted into Washington, D.C."

Summarizing this astrological information, the Dragon's Head is a node of the Moon. The Moon represented in the figure of the Dragon's Head was exerting its greatest influence at precisely the moment of the cornerstone ceremonies for the Capitol and the Washington Monument. Thus the influence of the Dragon's Head was transmitted into Washington, D.C..

[End Excerpt]

Freemasonry is a Luciferian institution, as is the astrology practiced by these men who were leaders in the establishment of Washington, D.C.. Clearly, the influence of Caput Draconis, the Dragon's Head, was desired that its influence, or power, might be infused into the "Caput" (Capital) of America. What these men practiced was an unlawful form of divination. It is similar to sorcery and witchcraft. They were seeking to insure that their labors to create a new Luciferian government would be successful and prevail. Nevertheless, the hour will come when Yahshua will return to bind the great dragon, and to bring all nations into subjection to His righteous rule. Satan's counterfeit employment of the stars is therefore, like himself, lying and deceitful. It promises things it cannot guarantee. America may have a place of ascendancy at this moment, but it will not last. Like Babylon, Rome, or the capital cities of many other former nations and empires, Washington, D.C., will be cast down into the dust and abased.

Those who look to the stars as a means to secure the success of their own works must surely fail. This is the message of Yahweh spoken through the prophet Isaiah, "Let now the astrologers, the stargazers, and the monthly prognosticators stand up and save you from what shall come upon you." Christians who look to the stars to discern the speech of God must not do so for selfish reasons. The only proper motive is to be informed of the will of God that we might walk wisely before Him in the days in which we live. To employ the witness of the stars for selfish motives is akin to the action of those who would use the Scriptures as a means to financial and material gain. Their error will be revealed in due time.

The Ancient Zodiac and its Motions



Map of the Constellations by Johanne Gabriele Doppelmayr, 1730
(Click on image to view larger)

In God's very first contact with humanity after our forebears sinned in the Garden of Eden, Yahweh began to disclose to them His plan for their deliverance. He spoke of a Seed coming forth from the woman who would crush the serpent's head. In doing so, this deliverer would be wounded by the serpent. These words provide an example of symbolic speech. The Seed crushing the serpent's head is an allusion to Christ destroying Satan's authority and tyrannical rule over mankind.

Yahweh recognized an immediate need to set hope in the heart of fallen man lest he be overwhelmed with despair and fall further into depravity and the snare of the enemy. We learn in the 4th chapter of Genesis that Yahweh gave man further instruction regarding the role of a sacrificial and substitutionary offering. We read of Abel bringing of the firstlings of the flock to present as a burnt offering before Yahweh. This occurred 2,500 years before the covenant of the Law was delivered to Moses upon Mount Sinai, yet there is no Biblical record of Yahweh speaking to these earliest of our ancestors about sacrifices and offerings. Through the historical narrative alone, we understand that this divine knowledge was communicated to man. Similarly, in the 8th chapter of Genesis we read of Noah presenting offerings to God upon an altar.

Genesis 8:20

Then Noah built an altar to Yahweh, and took of every clean animal and of every clean bird and offered burnt offerings on the altar.

Noah also understood the principle of offering, and presented sacrifices 1,000 years before the Law was given to Moses. Noah apprehended another truth of which no Biblical record exists of God having communicated it to man. He understood that only clean animals were suitable as offerings unto Yahweh. We don't have a Biblical record of Yahweh identifying clean and unclean animals to

man until the 11th chapter of Leviticus when the Law was delivered to Moses. However, it is possible for Noah to have discovered the distinction between clean and unclean animals through observation of which animals came to the ark by sevens, and which ones by twos.

Genesis 7:2-3

You shall take with you of every clean animal by sevens, a male and his female; and of the animals that are not clean two, a male and his female; also of the birds of the sky, by sevens, male and female, to keep offspring alive on the face of all the earth.

The way in which this commandment was presented to Noah seems to imply that the distinction between clean and unclean was already known. I do not believe it was by chance that Abel offered sheep of the flock to Yahweh upon the altar, rather than some unclean animal such as a pig. My purpose in sharing these things is to point out that there are things Yahweh communicated to early man of which no Biblical passage informs us. Four centuries before Yahweh delivered the covenant of the Law to Moses in the wilderness, it is recorded that God spoke to Isaac in the following manner:

Genesis 26:4-5

And I will multiply your descendants as the stars of heaven, and will give your descendants all these lands; and by your descendants all the nations of the earth shall be blessed; ***because Abraham obeyed Me and kept My charge, My commandments, My statutes and My laws.***

Abraham's life is recorded for us in the book of Genesis, a book which has no record of Yahweh delivering "commandments," "statutes," and "laws" to mankind. What were these commandments, statutes, and laws? In what way did they differ from the commandments Yahweh delivered to Moses? The apostle Paul informs us that Abraham did not enter into a covenant of Law. His covenant with God was one of promise.

Galatians 3:16-18

Now the promises were spoken to Abraham and to his seed. He does not say, "And to seeds," as referring to many, but rather to one, "And to your seed," that is, Christ. What I am saying is this: the Law, which came four hundred and thirty years later, does not invalidate a covenant previously ratified by God, so as to nullify the promise. For if the inheritance is based on law, it is no longer based on a promise; but God has granted it to Abraham by means of a promise.

Although God and Abraham did not enter into a covenant of Law, we are informed that Yahweh made known to Abraham certain of His statutes, commandments, and laws. We must conclude, therefore, that there were many things communicated to man by God for which we have no specific Biblical record. Of particular interest to our present study is the foreknowledge of the ministry of salvation and reconciliation that Yahweh appointed to His only begotten Son. That God communicated specific details of the salvific work of Christ can be deduced from the actions of the earliest descendants of Adam who offered sacrifices to God. These sacrifices foreshadowed the future perfect sacrifice of the Son of God.

Hebrews 11:4

By faith Abel offered to God a better sacrifice than Cain, through which he obtained the testimony

that he was righteous...

“Faith comes by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.” It is discernible through the Scriptural comments about Abel’s offering that Yahweh had spoken to man about the principle of a substitutionary offering. By faith Abel was looking forward to that perfect sacrifice that Yahweh would one day provide as Yahshua, the Lamb of God, was offered up to atone for man’s sins. Even as Passover was delivered to Moses by God, and was to be observed annually until the Passover Lamb of God would be slain for the sins of the world, so too did men from the very earliest days offer up sacrifices to God, beginning with Abel. These had to be repeated annually as they were mere shadows of the perfect sacrifice to be realized in Christ.

Hebrews 10:1, 14

For the Law, since it has only a shadow of the good things to come and not the very form of things, can never by the same sacrifices year by year, which they offer continually, make perfect those who draw near... For by one offering [Yahshua] has perfected for all time those who are sanctified.

It is not through direct statement of the Scriptures that we are able to ascertain that Yahweh communicated to Adam and his descendants many things regarding the coming Messiah; the One who would bear the sins of the world and destroy the power of Satan. Rather, it is through a significant accumulation of details that we are informed of these facts. The preponderance of evidence points to the conclusion that Yahweh, at least in general terms, communicated to early mankind specific information about His plan for the redemption and restoration of humanity to divine fellowship.

Through a similar accumulation of evidence we are made to understand that Yahweh taught to men the message of their coming redemption through the constellations of the heavens. There is no specific verse stating this fact, but there are numerous passages that inform us of the following:

- Yahweh assigned to the stars a role to serve as signs, or oracles of divine truth. (Genesis 1:14, Psalm 19:1-4, Luke 21:11, 25, etc.)
- Yahweh legitimizes a number of constellations in the Bible, as well as the collective zodiac (mazzaroth), by mentioning them by name. (Job 9:9, 38:31-32, Amos 5:8, etc.)
- Yahweh states that He is the One who has assigned the stars to their courses and leads them forth in their seasons. (Job 38:31-33, Psalms 8:3, Isaiah 40:26, etc.)
- Yahweh declared that He created the constellations. (Amos 5:8)
- Yahweh used the stars to announce the birth of His Son to the magi. (Matthew 2:2, 9-10)
- In the Book of Revelation we are given an example of Yahweh speaking prophetically through signs in the heavens in the form of constellations. (Revelation 12:1-17)

Added to this, we have the historical record that shows a tremendous consistency in describing the number of constellations and their figures. One of the earliest extant writers outside of the Bible to make mention of the constellations of the zodiac is Homer, the Greek author of the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*. The date which Homer lived is disputed, with some placing him as early as the 12th century B.C., while others argue for a more recent date around the 8th century B.C.. In the *Iliad* is found the following passage describing Vulcan’s shield.

*There shone the image of the master mind;
There earth, there heaven, there ocean he design'd;
The unwearied sun, the moon completely round;
The starry lights that heaven's high convex crown'd;
The Pleiads, Hyads, with the northern team;
And great Orion's more refulgent beam;
To which around the axle of the sky
The Bear revolving points his golden eye;
Still shines exalted in the ethereal plain,
Nor bathes his blazing forehead in the main...*

Eudoxos, a Greek mathematician and astronomer (astronomy was considered to be part of Greek mathematics), received a detailed map of the constellations (a celestial sphere) in 400 B.C. from Egypt. Eudoxos was a student of Plato, and produced a number of important astronomical writings. 130 years later, Aratus, a Greek man of acknowledged poetic ability, was encouraged by the King of Macedonia to render Eudoxos' work into poetic form. Aratus penned *Phaenomena and Diosemeia* (English - *Phenomena and Divine Signs*) in 270 B.C.. The work became widely popular. Although this writing is no longer extant, details of this writing were mentioned by the Greek writers Aratus and Hipparchus. The apostle Paul even made reference unto the poetry of Aratus when he gave a speech at the Areopagus in Athens.

Acts 17:28

“As even some of your own poets have said, ‘For we also are His offspring.’”

Aratus described the entire zodiac in his poetry, with all of its constellations (44 were named by Aratus, though 48 are more typical), making mention of the mythology that went along with each figure. Aratus' zodiacal figures agree with Homer's, being more complete. Herodotus, a Greek historian writing in the 5th century B.C. states that the Greeks received their zodiac from Egypt. In the introduction to John Lamb's translation of *Aratus' Phaenomena and Diosemeia* (published 1848), the author writes:

Herodotus states that they borrowed the names of their twelve gods, their religious ceremonies, and their geometry from Egypt; and from the same people they are said to have obtained the celestial sphere. At the same time it is not probable that the Egyptians were the inventors of it. There is nothing of an Egyptian character in the figures depicted upon it; nor can this people establish any claim to the invention, being never celebrated for their astronomical discoveries. Their talents and skill were directed to Geometry and Architecture, in which two sciences they greatly excelled. But there are two nations whose claim to the introduction of the celestial sphere rests upon such strong presumptive evidence that it is difficult to refuse to either the credit of the invention. These are the Assyrians and the Phenicians (sic)...

At an early period after the deluge that family of the human race which constituted the great Assyrian empire spread themselves over the central plain of Asia, founded large cities, among others Babylon, where they carried all the arts and sciences of civilized life to high perfection. We know that they excelled in the knowledge of astronomy; much of which they might derive from the antediluvian

patriarchs through Noah and his immediate descendants.

[Source: *Aratus' - Phaenomena and Diosemeia*, John Lamb, D.D.]

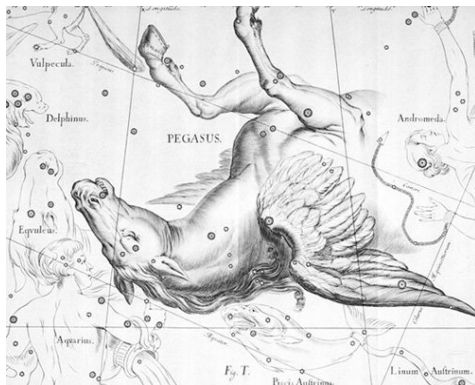
Here we have one who believes that Adam's early descendants had knowledge of astronomy and of the constellations, this knowledge being carried forward to postdiluvian civilizations through Noah and his sons. Dr. Lamb shared his opinion of the development of the zodiac, its symbols and mythology along two separate lines, one Babylonian, and the other Phoenician.

From the early history of the human race, as recorded in the first ten chapters of Genesis, and the continued records of their own empire, they would form a picture-history, commencing with Adam and reaching to their own times. Such I conceive to have been the Assyrian or Babylonian sphere; and that from it are derived the human figures on our celestial globe. The other sphere, of which the signs or constellations were the figures of animals, was of Phenician (sic) origin. This people at an early period having migrated to the eastern shores of the Mediterranean became the first of maritime nations...

They soon became a populous and powerful people, and were most celebrated for their maritime skill and boldness, and for the advancement they made in arithmetic and astronomy. Their mariners would carefully observe the positions and motions of the heavenly bodies, and would figure them upon a celestial sphere. And in so doing, what plan would they more probably adopt than that of taking for the signs or constellations the images which distinguished and gave a name to their celebrated ships? The learned Bochart has clearly shewn that the word Pegasus is of Phenician (sic) origin: Pag or Pega, "a bridle," and Sus, "a horse," forming the word "Pegasus," "the bridled horse," no doubt the figure at the head, and the name of a ship. The body of this animal and of several others on the globe are cut in half, exactly representing the figure as it would appear on the head of a ship. Cetus, a whale, or great fish : a Dolphin : a Hydra, or seasnake: a Swan : a Ram : a Bull, are all such signs as ships would bear.

[Source: *Ibid*]

The notion that some of the signs of the zodiac were derived from the figureheads of ships is shared by other historians and authors. The major argument in support of this interesting idea is based upon the half-formed images of some of the constellations as they have historically been rendered. Such images might be observed on the prow of a sailing ship.



Constellation Pegasus



Constellation Taurus

During the time of Paul's arrest and transfer to Rome as a prisoner, ships traditionally had figureheads adorning the prow. Luke describes one such emblem in the book of Acts.

Acts 28:11

And at the end of three months we set sail on an Alexandrian ship which had wintered at the island, and which had the Twin Brothers for its figurehead.

Alexandria was an Egyptian city, but it was Greek in culture, being founded by, and named after, the Greek conqueror Alexander the Great. "The Twin Brothers" is an apparent reference to Castor and Pollux who are depicted in the constellation Gemini, often referred to as "the Twins." This Biblical narrative demonstrates credibly that zodiacal images were found on the prow of ships, but it does not resolve the question of which came first. Was the Phoenician zodiac derived from the images on their ships, or did the Phoenicians decorate their ships with much more ancient images found in their zodiac? Certainly, in the case of the ship that Paul and Luke sailed upon, the ship was adorned with the image of a zodiacal figure of much greater antiquity.

An argument against the ship's figurehead theory is that many of the images of creatures in the zodiac are full body in their depiction, not being cut in half as one would expect on a ship's prow. Regardless of what alterations may have been made by the Phoenicians to their zodiac, the more ancient one is certainly the Babylonian. Before the Phoenicians were ever settled along the shores of Syria and Canaan, their ancestors were gathered with all other men in the plains of Shinar at ancient Babel. There all men were of one tongue, and one purpose. There they had the knowledge of the constellations, so that when God scattered them they carried this science with them to all parts of the earth. This explains the great similarity in the zodiac found among scattered people of different tongues. Frances Rolleston, in the opening chapter of her book *Mazzaroth*, relates the great antiquity of the constellations of the zodiac.

Now that the hieroglyphics of Egypt are interpreted, and the characters of Babylon and Assyria deciphered, should those far more ancient and more widely diffused, the primitive hieroglyphics of the whole human race, be neglected? Those, the great enigma of ages, transmitting far more

important intelligence, shall they not seem worthy of investigation?...

These signs were known among all nations and in all ages. From the almost antediluvian chronologies of China, India, and Egypt, to the traditions of the recently discovered islands of the South Sea, traces of them are discerned, most clearly among the most ancient and earliest civilized nations. In the remains of Assyria they are recognized; in those of Egypt they are perfectly preserved; in those of Etruria and Mexico they are traceable.

This wide diffusion indicates a common origin, both of the race of man and of the symbols of astronomy...

The earliest positive evidence of the primeval existence of the signs is in the Chinese annals, where it is said that the Emperor Yao, 2317 years before the Christian era, divided the twelve signs of the zodiac by the twenty-eight mansions of the moon: but it is not said that he invented them. The Chinese national emblem of the dragon appears to be the dragon of the sphere, which was at that time the polar constellation, the brightest star in the dragon's head having been the pole-star in the antediluvian ages.

The Signs are next alluded to by the patriarch Jacob, who in his dying blessing was held by the ancient Hebrews to have spoken of them as the appointed cognizances of his twelve sons, and as such they were borne on the standards of Israel in the wilderness.

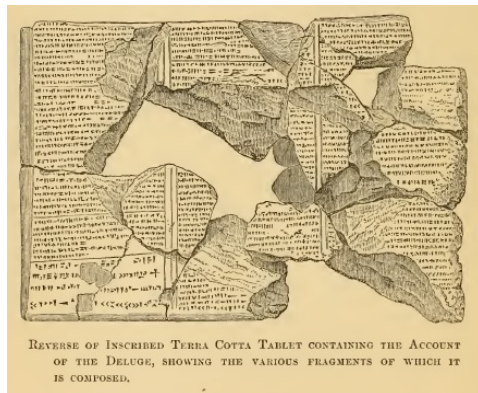
The Egyptians, on whose early monuments the signs are found, acknowledged that they derived their astronomy from the Chaldeans. The Chaldeans attributed their science to Oannes, supposed to be Noah. The Arabs and Brahmins, among whom astronomy was early cultivated, seem to have derived it from Abraham, through Ishmael and the children of Keturah. The Greeks supposed their imperfect knowledge of the subject came through the Egyptians and the Chaldeans. The Romans are thought to have received through the Etrurians the names of the signs still in use among the European nations. The Etrurians are considered to have derived them, with their other arts and sciences, from Assyria. The early Greek poet Hesiod is said to have made use of Assyrian records. He mentions some of the constellations by the names they now bear...

A later Greek poet, Aratus, described the constellations such as we now have them, and by equivalent names. He gave neither history nor conjecture as to their date, their meaning, nor their origin. They were to him, as to us, of immemorial antiquity. Cicero, in translating from Aratus, says, "The signs are measured out, that in so many descriptions Divine wisdom might appear:" but he does not say in what manner. No attempt is made by any of these writers to explain the figures, or to assign any inventor to them... None of these earlier writers allude to any tradition concerning the meanings of the names and emblems of the constellations, nor as to where, when, or by whom they were originated.

[Frances Rolleston, *Mazzaroth*]

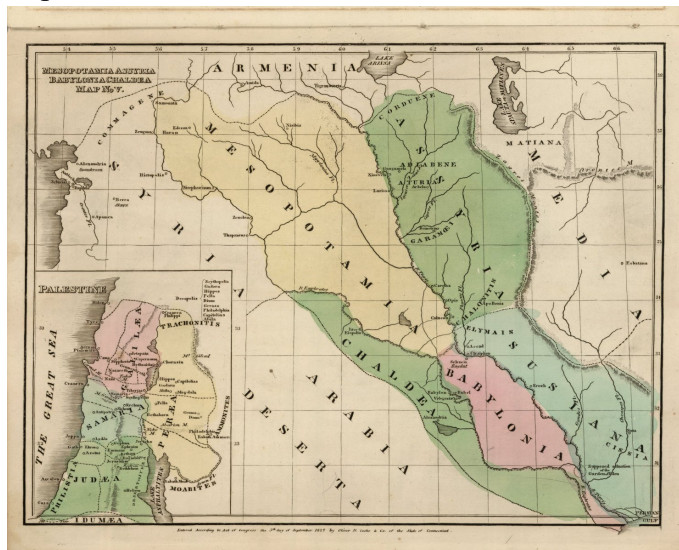
There is a very interesting book that can be read freely online, or downloaded, written in the year 1876 by George Smith, an archaeologist who was employed by the Department of Oriental Antiquities at the British Museum. The book is titled *The Chaldean Account of Genesis*. It describes

a series of ancient Assyrian tablets that Smith was instrumental in discovering, cataloguing, and translating. Found among the ruins of the ancient Assyrian city of Nineveh were tens of thousands of fragments of clay tablets that were used as the writing material of the day. George Smith estimates that in the Royal Library at Nineveh there must have been about 10,000 complete tablets, though they no longer remain whole. The Assyrians would write upon the soft clay tablets and then fire them in a kiln to harden them. This rendered these writings relatively impervious to decay, though the media they were scribed upon was fragile. At this same site *The Epic of Gilgamesh* was found. It is considered the world's first truly great work of literature. The first surviving edition of *The Epic of Gilgamesh*, a Babylonian version, is dated to the 18th century B.C.. *The Epic of Gilgamesh* includes an account of the flood of Noah.



Clay Tablet Fragments From Nineveh

If you begin to look into the ancient history of astronomy, you will find the terms Chaldean, Babylonian, and Assyrian mentioned frequently, for they are arguably the most ancient societies in which evidence exists of the knowledge of astronomy or astrology. All three of these nations existed in what is referred to as “the Fertile Crescent” which includes the land lying between the Tigris and Euphrates rivers. This area is also called “the cradle of civilization.”



If you look closely you will see that the city of Babel, or Babylon, lies on the border of Babylonia and Chaldea. There was much interchange of culture and information between all three of these nations. Babylonia pre-dates Assyria, and the Assyrians acknowledge having received much of their knowledge of history and astronomy from the Babylonians. Because the Chaldeans became the dominant influence in Babylonia, and Babylonia had such an influence upon Assyria, one will often find the term Chaldean used to describe any of the cultures or peoples of these three nations. This seems to be the manner in which George Smith is employing the term, for the tablets he found were Assyrian, but he speaks of them as Chaldean.

Bible students will recall that the ten northern tribes of Israel were taken captive into Assyria. This occurred in 722 B.C. during the reign of the Assyrian king Sargon II. In 597 B.C. Judah was conquered by King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon, and this began the first of three deportations to that nation, the last of which occurred in 582 B.C..

The Bible informs us that Babel was among the first of the great cities established after the flood of Noah. Ham was one of the three sons of Noah that went aboard the ark, along with his wife. Ham had a son named Cush, and Cush in turn was the father of Nimrod who was the founder of Babel.

Genesis 10:10-12

And the beginning of [Nimrod's] kingdom was Babel and Erech and Accad and Calneh, in the land of Shinar. From that land he went forth into Assyria, and built Nineveh and Rehoboth-Ir and Calah, and Resen between Nineveh and Calah; that is the great city.

The date estimated for the founding of Babel is around 2300 B.C., approximately two centuries after the flood of Noah. At that time Noah and his sons would still have been alive as the Bible tells us that Noah lived 350 years after the flood, dying at an age of 950 years. The Genesis account in the Bible further informs us that Shem was 98 years of age when the flood ended and he lived 502 years after the flood, living to 600 years of age (Genesis 11:10-11). Shem was the father of the Shemites (Semites, or Semitic people), and a forebear of Abraham, thus his genealogy is carefully recorded. We are not told how long his brothers Ham and Japheth lived, but it can be assumed that they enjoyed a similar lifespan. Thus we see that the founding of Babel by Nimrod overlapped the lives of Noah and his sons. Any pre-flood knowledge they may have had of divine astronomy would certainly have been passed down to their descendants, eventually to be found at Babel.

The tablets of *The Chaldean Account of Genesis* parallel the Biblical book of Genesis in numerous areas. They begin with a lengthy description of the creation of the heavens and the earth, culminating in the creation of man. They include a narrative of the rebellion of a celestial being that corresponds to Satan, and the resulting war in heaven. They speak of man's fall, and a terrible curse that results. The building of the tower of Babel is also noted on the Chaldean tablets. Although these events parallel the account of Genesis in the Bible, they depart from the Scriptural narrative in significant ways. There is evidence of much corruption and vanity entering into the tale, though the basic events remain recognizable.

The dates of the Assyrian Genesis tablets can be confidently dated to the reign of Assurbanipal who rose to power in 670 B.C.. However, these library copies of the Assyrian Genesis account were

merely replicas of much older writings whose date of origin is very difficult to establish. George Smith shares that the Assyrian language remained unchanged for more than a thousand years which makes it difficult to establish a date for the original writing. What can be confidently asserted is that in the time between the flood of Noah in approximately 2500 B.C., and the copying of these tablets over 1,800 years later, sufficient time had elapsed for many corruptions to enter into the Assyrian stories. Sound doctrine devolved into myths and fables. Although the events of history and Biblical parallels can be discerned in a general sense, the narratives include many spurious additions and alterations by man.

My purpose in mentioning *The Chaldean Account of Genesis* is that on tablet five of the series the constellations are mentioned and their creation is ascribed to God. Following is a translation of a portion of the tablet performed by George Smith.

Fifth Tablet of Creation Legend

1. *It was delightful, all that was fixed by the great gods.*
2. *Stars, their appearance [in figures] of animals he arranged.*
3. *To fix the year through the observation of their constellations,*
4. *twelve months (or signs) of stars in three rows he arranged,*
5. *from the day when the year commences unto the close.*
6. *He marked the positions of the wandering stars (planets) to shine in their courses,*
7. *that they may not do injury, and may not trouble any one...*

If these statements are consistent with the rest of the information on these ancient tablets, we may conclude that the basic facts are true, but the details have suffered corruption due to the vanity of man's thoughts. The tablets substantiate the fact that ancient civilizations believed that God was the creator of the constellations, passing the knowledge of them on to man. We also observe that the early Assyrians embraced a zodiac of twelve signs, while also having two additional groups of twelve constellations, making thirty-six in all.

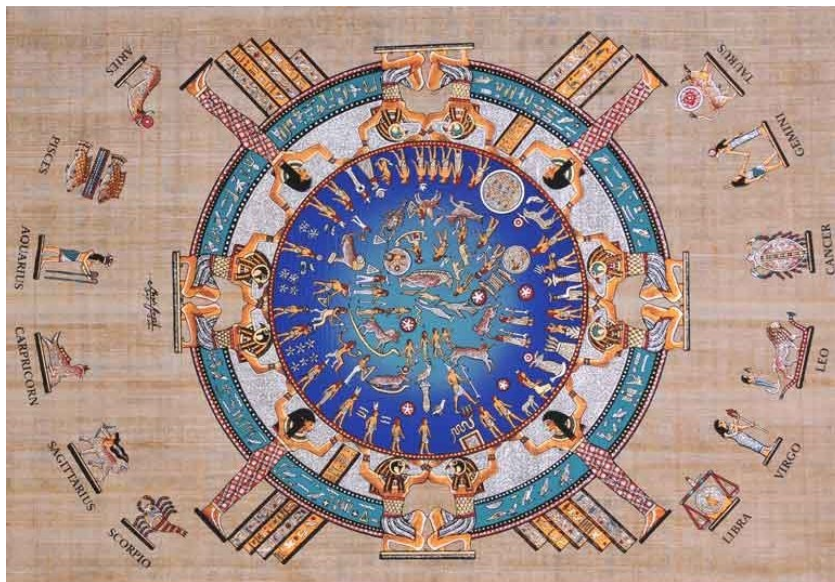
I believe it is credible from both the Biblical and historical evidence to suggest that the constellations of the zodiac were originated by Yahweh, but through time, due to the darkness of man's understanding and a tendency for vain speculations, the original identity of the constellations, and the message they conveyed, became corrupted. Nevertheless, there is still visible in what remains to this day shadows from which the original can be reconstructed, however imperfectly. This is what Christian scholars and writers such as Frances Rolleston, Joseph Seiss, E.W. Bullinger, Ken Fleming, E. Raymond Capt, J. Preston Eby, and others have labored to do.

(Dr. D. James Kennedy published a book on this subject in 1989 titled *The Real Meaning of the Zodiac*. I have not read it as it appears to be an entry level book on this subject designed for mass appeal. It likely provides a good summary of this subject, while not being a scholarly treatise. Chuck Missler has also authored a book on this subject, *Signs in the Heavens*, which is available as a Kindle e-book. Missler's teaching also exists in tape format and he has numerous videos on this topic available on YouTube. Chuck Missler adds some interesting thoughts and information that are not mentioned by the other authors listed. For example he suggests that if the star names of a constellation are read in the order of their magnitude of brightness they form a message. He compares it to reading

an acrostic.)

In the next chapter I will present a summation of the teachings of these authors in the following manner: Using the starting and ending points indicated by the symbol of the Great Sphinx, I will begin with Virgo and end with Leo. The twelve major constellations that lie along the plane of the ecliptic (the sun's apparent path through the heavens) will be addressed in order, along with a brief account of the three minor constellations (decans) that are related to each of them, for a total of 48 constellations. For those unfamiliar with the connection between the Sphinx and the zodiac, I provide the following information.

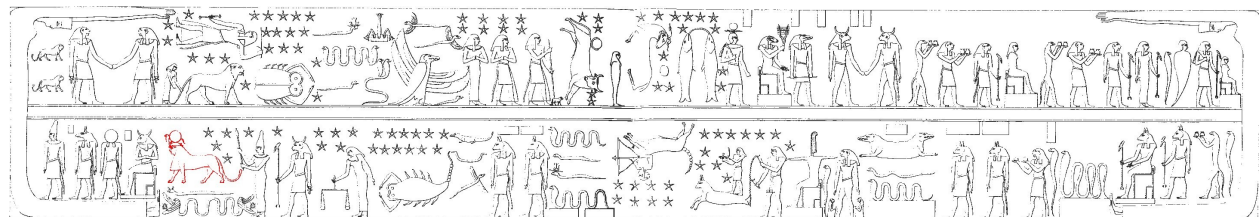
The oldest complete depiction of the zodiac is found in the temple complex in Denderah, Egypt. On the ceiling of a chapel devoted to Osiris, the Egyptian sun god, is found the famous Denderah Planisphere, or Zodiac.



Depiction of Denderah Planisphere

(Note: The outer figures of the zodiac with their English names have been added for identification purposes, not being part of the temple ceiling in Denderah.)

Not far from Denderah is another ancient temple site in the town of Esne. At that location there is a zodiac displayed in a different form.



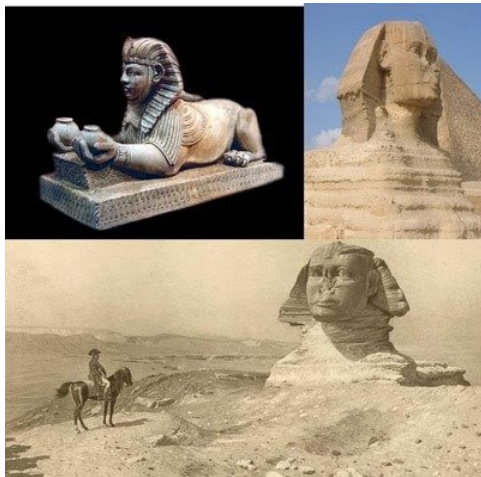
Esne Zodiac

Familiar images of the modern zodiac are readily apparent in these ancient depictions. One can easily

see a lion (Leo), a virgin (Virgo) a scarab (the crab of Cancer), a bull (Taurus), a ram (Aries), two fish (Pisces), the twins (Gemini), a set of scales (Libra), a scorpion (Scorpio, or Scorpius), a centaur with a bow and arrow (Sagittarius), a half ram and half fish creature (Capricorn), and a man pouring out water from a vase (Aquarius). Although the creation of these reliefs depicting the zodiac are dated to about 2,000 years ago, it is estimated that the star arrangements of the Denederah Planisphere show the sky as it appeared more than 2,000 years earlier. Thus, it is believed by many to be a copy of a zodiac that was originally drawn 4,000 years ago which would place it close to the time after the flood of Noah.

Observe the image highlighted in red in the image of the zodiac from Esne. This is a figure of the Sphinx. It lies between the symbols for Virgo and Leo. It is understood by many archaeoastronomers (archaeologists who study the ancient star lore of past civilizations) that the Sphinx serves as a key pointing to the beginning and ending points of the zodiac. If a person were to turn back the clock to 4,000 B.C. (the approximate time of Adam's creation) at the time of the Summer Solstice, they would find that "*this solstice took place where the junction of Leo and Virgo is marked by the bright star Denebola*" (a name meaning "*The Lord who comes quickly,*") - Frances Rolleston, *Mazzaroth*.

What better way to denote the entire panoply of heavenly figures than with the image of the Sphinx? This imaginary creature has the head of a woman signifying the Virgin who would one day give birth to humanity's redeemer. The Sphinx's hind parts are the image of a Lion signifying the Lion of the tribe of Judah come back to reign upon the earth. Thus, the entire heavenly testimony, the glorious work of God, is represented in the image of the Sphinx.

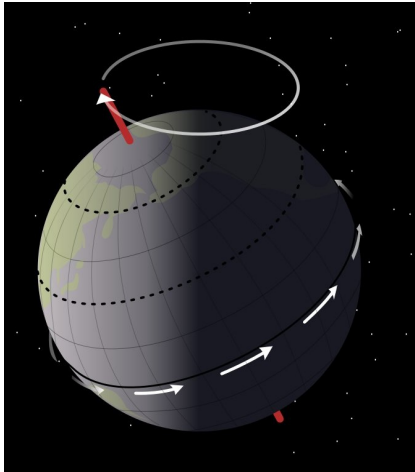


Sphinx

An argument could be put forth that the zodiac should start in Aries, for from antiquity Aries appears in lists as the first of the constellations. It is worthy of a short digression to make mention of the concept of astrological ages.

Most people have heard of the Age of Aquarius. It was popularized in the 1960s in the rock musical *Hair* which opened with the song *Aquarius*. Unfortunately, this has caused many Christians to associate any discussion of astrological ages with New Age religion and the hippie culture. A concept that relates to astrological ages is axial precession, or precession of the equinoxes. I will attempt to

describe this in as simple a manner as possible.



Axial Precession

Every 24 hours the earth rotates completely upon its central axis. This is illustrated by the white arrows above. The earth's axis, however, does not remain stationary. As the earth rotates it acts much like a spinning top that wobbles. Imagine that the red line at the top of the image above is the axis of a spinning top. As the top itself is spinning very quickly, the axis point is making circuits in space. We can see this occurring with our naked eye when we spin a toy top, or a gyroscope, on a table. However, the wobble of the earth's axis is very slow. It takes approximately 26,000 years for the axis of the earth to make one complete circuit. This astronomical time period is referred to as a "Great Year," a term attributed to the Greek philosopher and mathematician Plato.

The following video illustrates these concepts.

<http://youtu.be/9n04SEzuvXo>

It is interesting to note that in 13,000 years the tilt of the earth in relation to the sun will be the exact opposite of what it is now. That means that for countries in the northern hemisphere, summertime will be wintertime in 13,000 years, and vice versa for countries in the southern hemisphere.

Every 72 years the earth's axis moves 1° (one degree) along the circle of its wobble. This movement is backwards in relation to the constellations of the zodiac. Rather than progressing in the order in which the sun travels through the constellations (Aries - Taurus - Gemini - Cancer - Leo - Virgo - Libra - Scorpio - Sagittarius - Capricorn - Aquarius - Pisces), the wobble of the earth's axis is moving in the reverse direction.

If the Great Year is divided up into twelve equal parts to correspond to the twelve constellations of the zodiac, we would find that the earth would be in each constellation for approximately 2,100 years. In rough measure, every two millennia the earth would enter into a new astrological age. This movement through the constellations is well illustrated in the following video. Note that there is an error in this video at the 0:48 second mark. It should list Aries as being 2,000 B.C. rather than 1,000 B.C.. You will note that all the other constellations are spaced equally at 2,000 years apart.

<http://youtu.be/qlVgEoZDjok>

The dividing up of the constellations into twelve equal parts, each comprising 30° along the circle of the sun's apparent motion through the heavens, is an invention of the Greeks. If one looks at the constellations it is evident that they do not each occupy the same amount of space in the heavens. Some constellations are spread out much further than others. There is also some overlap of the constellations. This makes it difficult to ascribe definite boundaries to the constellations, and to state definitively when the sun has moved from one constellation to the next.

From a prophetic standpoint, this lack of uniformity and the presence of overlap among some constellations, can be viewed as being divinely inspired in order to convey heavenly knowledge. Yahweh has not divided the ages of mankind, or the periods of history, up into neat, uniform segments. There is a great variation in the span of time appointed to the various works and dealings of Yahweh. Some works of God overlap other works. We see evidence of this as the age of Law that began with Moses at Mount Sinai gave way to the age of grace and life in the Spirit that commenced with the resurrection of Christ and the sending forth of the Spirit to indwell man. The apostle Paul speaks of this transition as being progressive, and not clearly delineated.

Hebrews 8:13

When He said, "A new covenant," He has made the first obsolete. But whatever is *becoming obsolete* and *growing old* is *ready to disappear*.

The words "becoming obsolete," "growing old," and "ready to disappear," indicate an ongoing process. The removal of the old covenant has significant overlap with the institution of a new covenant (not in an individual application, but in a corporate application). In one sense, the beginning of the new covenant can be clearly fixed to the hour in which Christ's blood was shed on the cross. The blood of the Son of God sealed the new covenant.

Hebrews 9:16-18

For where a covenant is, there must of necessity be the death of the one who made it. For a covenant is valid only when men are dead, for it is never in force while the one who made it lives. Therefore even the first covenant was not inaugurated without blood.

Though the new covenant was inaugurated by the blood of Christ, not all men have at this time entered into the covenant. A firstfruits company have entered in, and in time all others will follow. The kingdom of Christ will grow until it fills the whole earth like the stone that was cut out of the mountain without hands in the vision of Nebuchadnezzar. Thus, in practice, we see that there is some overlap of the works of God. This is shown in the constellations of the heavens, for they do not all have neatly defined boundaries.

In 1922 the International Astronomical Union set forth proposed standards to define the boundaries of the constellations of the heavens. We cannot accept these boundaries that have been determined by man to be the same as those determined by God. Nevertheless, we see in these boundaries that the constellations each vary in size. The sun remains in each of the twelve constellations for an unequal amount of time. Using the IAU's boundaries, we find that the sun abides in each house, or

constellation, for the following length of time. (Note that the IAU recognizes Ophiuchus as the 13th constellation of the zodiac.)

Constellation Boundaries		
Constellation	Sun's Stay in Days	Degrees of Ecliptic
Aries	25.48	25.1
Taurus	38.31	37.8
Gemini	29.20	28.8
Cancer	20.96	20.7
Leo	37.05	36.5
Virgo	44.51	43.9
Libra	23.10	22.7
Scorpius	6.52	6.5
Ophiuchus	18.31	18.1
Sagittarius	32.55	32.1
Capricornus	27.44	27.1
Aquarius	24.06	23.7
Pisces	37.51	37.0

What this table reveals is that the section of the heavens each constellation occupies varies widely. From a low of 6.52 days and 6.5 degrees in Scorpio to a high of 44.51 days and 43.9 degrees in Virgo, the sun's occupancy in Virgo (signifying the bringing forth of the sons of God) is nearly seven times that of its residency in Scorpio (signifying Satan stinging the heel of the man).

Many have attempted to determine the borders of astrological ages by measuring the boundaries of the constellations, but this is an exercise fraught with a great lack of precision. Depictions of the constellations vary. In many accounts there are constellations that share the same stars. The judgment of men pertaining to the boundaries of zodiacal figures varies. Some, like the Greeks, have approached the matter scientifically and assigned to each of the twelve main constellations an equal distance of thirty degrees in the heavens, and an equal number of days. Others have looked to the images themselves to determine how much time to allot. As a student of the Scriptures, recognizing Yahweh as the Author of the constellations, I believe a more accurate means to determine the bounds of the constellations, and the ages they signify, is to compare them to the Biblical narrative. Here we find a remarkable correspondence with the astrological ages and Yahweh's dealing with mankind.

Others have noted an unusual correspondence between the astrological ages and major events and

dispensations in the Bible. Even the unregenerate have commented on this correspondence. The authors of the book *Hamlet's Mill* believed that all of the world's religious teachings (they referred to them as myths, including the teachings of the Bible) arose as attempts to explain the motions of the heavens. I can well imagine the "aha!" moment that the authors had when they discerned there was a very profound correspondence between the precession of the equinoxes through the constellations of the zodiac and the stories recorded in the Bible. Yet, approaching this subject from the perspective of unbelievers, they were unable to countenance the thought that these correspondences were the result of divine design. Instead, they imagined the Bible to be a book of myths that arose as attempts to convey knowledge about the motions of the heavens.

Sir William Drummund was another unbeliever who viewed the Hebrew Scriptures as something other than divine revelation. He wrote *Oedipus Judaicus - Allegory in the Old Testament* in the year 1811. Drummund believed the Hebrew Scriptures to be disguised astronomical records.

Drummund makes his case that at the time of Abraham, the Amorites first recorded the shift from the Age of Taurus to the Age of Aries as represented by the year commencing with the Ram (Aries) rather than the bull (Taurus). The Book of Joshua indicates that by the time of Moses the equinoxes had already shifted from Taurus to Aries as Moses had ordained that the civil year should commence with the month of Nisan (Aries) rather than the month of Taurus. The feast of the Passover is probably a celebration of the Age of Aries with the Paschal Lamb representative of Aries, traditionally associated with the symbol of the ram or sheep.

[Source: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Astrological_age]

There are nearly as many schemes for calculating the beginning and end dates for astrological ages as there are astrologers and astronomers. Anyone can make a fair estimation of the ages in a general sense simply by study of the precession of the equinoxes, but setting precise dates is difficult for those who do not factor in the testimony of the Bible nor allow for divine direction of the stars. The Wikipedia article on Astrological Ages cites three different calculations for the beginning and end dates of the Age of Aries. Using the Greek method of allotting to each constellation 30 degrees along the plane of the ecliptic, two astrologers proposed the following dates.

- *Neil Mann interpretation: began in ca. 2150 BC and ended in ca. 1 AD.*
- *Patrick Burlingame interpretation: began in ca. BC 2006 and ended in ca. BC 6.*

[Source: Ibid]

Using the alternate method of using the constellation itself to set its boundaries, the following dates are set forth.

- *Shephard Simpson interpretation: began ca. 1875 BC to ca. 100 AD.*

[Source: Ibid]

What is evident in each of these views is that the age of Aries began after the flood of Noah, and ended at the beginning of the Christian era. I would suggest that postdiluvian men, with their tremendous focus upon the heavens, are responsible for establishing Aries as first in the list of zodiacal constellations. The reason their lists begin with Aries is because the earth after the flood

entered the Age of Aries.

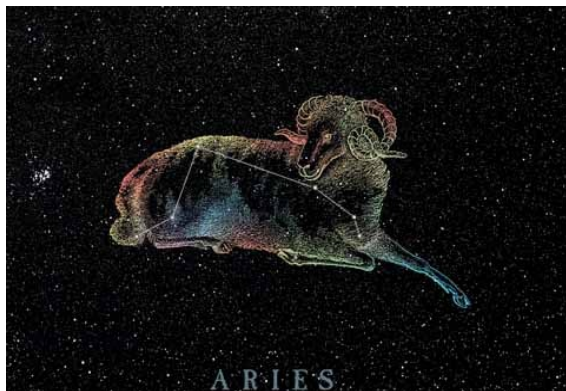
Sir William Drummund, who was cited earlier, proposed that the Age of Aries began in the days of Abraham. Abraham was born somewhere around the year 2,000 B.C.. This places his birth near the beginning of common estimates for the beginning of the Age of Aries. There is a remarkable event that occurs in Abraham's life where a ram plays a significant role. After the birth of Isaac, when this son of Abraham is a youth, Yahweh instructs Abraham to take Isaac to a certain mountain and offer him there upon an altar as a sacrifice. This was an exceptional test of Abraham's obedience to God. This event is recorded for us in the 22nd chapter of Genesis.

Genesis 22:7-14

And Isaac spoke to Abraham his father and said, "My father!" And he said, "Here I am, my son." And he said, "Behold, the fire and the wood, but where is the lamb for the burnt offering?" And Abraham said, "God will provide for Himself the lamb for the burnt offering, my son." So the two of them walked on together. Then they came to the place of which God had told him; and Abraham built the altar there, and arranged the wood, and bound his son Isaac, and laid him on the altar on top of the wood. And Abraham stretched out his hand, and took the knife to slay his son. But the angel of Yahweh called to him from heaven, and said, "Abraham, Abraham!" And he said, "Here I am." And he said, "Do not stretch out your hand against the lad, and do nothing to him; for now I know that you fear God, since you have not withheld your son, your only son, from Me." Then Abraham raised his eyes and looked, and behold, behind him a ram caught in the thicket by his horns; and Abraham went and took the ram, and offered him up for a burnt offering in the place of his son. And Abraham called the name of that place Yahweh Will Provide.



The image of the ram in the drawing above looks very similar to depictions of the constellation Aries.



Without a doubt, this act of Abraham constitutes a great landmark in Yahweh's dealing with humanity. It is an event worthy of being testified to in the heavens even as it has received significant space in the Bible. Because of Abraham's fear of Yahweh and faith in His goodness, it was promised to Abraham on that day that God would make his descendants His personal possession.

Genesis 22:15-18

Then the angel of Yahweh called to Abraham a second time from heaven, and said, "By Myself I have sworn, declares Yahweh, because you have done this thing, and have not withheld your son, your only son, indeed I will greatly bless you, and I will greatly multiply your seed as the stars of the heavens, and as the sand which is on the seashore; and your seed shall possess the gate of their enemies. And in your seed all the nations of the earth shall be blessed, because you have obeyed My voice."

Centering upon this event, a new nation was born. It would be a nation of priests who would be Yahweh's own peculiar people. They would be entrusted with the oracles of God. From the seed of Abraham would come the Law and the prophets. Four hundred and thirty years later the first Passover would be observed, and the central feature of the Passover would be a male lamb which would serve as a substitutionary sacrifice for mankind. The ram, therefore, is a most fitting image of this dispensation of God. The age would culminate in the sacrifice of the Son of God, who after the pattern of Abraham and Isaac, was offered up as a sacrifice by His Father. These two sacrifices represent the beginning and end dates of the Age of Aries.

As remarkable as this is, there is much more. The Age of Aries gave way to the Age of Pisces. Pisces is symbolized by two fish. Fish are featured prominently in the Gospels as a symbol for man, particularly for those who are called to be disciples of Christ. When Christ set forth to begin His earthly ministry He started by calling twelve men to be His disciples (later to become apostles). The most common occupation among these men was that of a fishermen.

Matthew 4:18-22

And walking by the Sea of Galilee, He saw two brothers, Simon who was called Peter, and Andrew his brother, casting a net into the sea; for they were fishermen. And He said to them, "Follow Me, and I will make you fishers of men." And they immediately left the nets, and followed Him. And going on from there He saw two other brothers, James the son of Zebedee, and John his brother, in the boat with Zebedee their father, mending their nets; and He called them. And they immediately left the boat and their father, and followed Him.

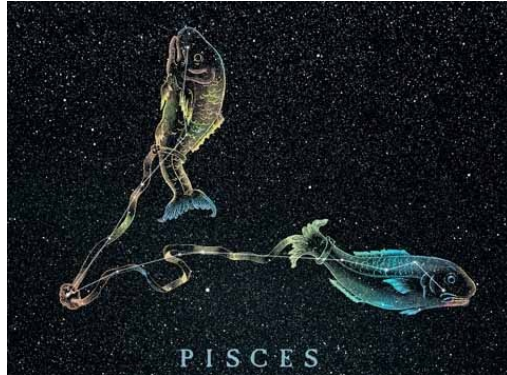
The Gospels record numerous miracles involving fish. On one occasion Yahshua took what little food could be found among a vast multitude of people, and multiplied it to feed the masses. All the food at hand was five barley loaves and two small fish.

John 6:9-13

"There is a lad here who has five barley loaves and two fish, but what are these for so many people?" Yahshua said, "Have the people sit down." Now there was much grass in the place. So the men sat down, in number about five thousand. Yahshua therefore took the loaves; and having given thanks, He distributed to those who were seated; likewise also of the fish as much as they wanted. And when they were filled, He said to His disciples, "Gather up the leftover fragments that nothing may be lost."

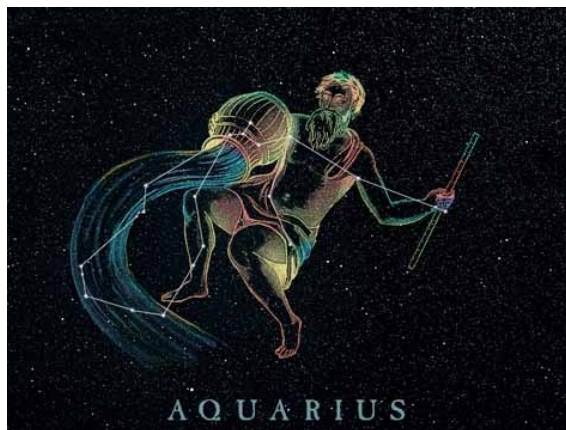
And so they gathered them up, and filled twelve baskets with fragments from the five barley loaves, which were left over by those who had eaten.

Two fish to feed a multitude. Is it coincidence that the God who made the heavens, who calls the stars by name, who formed the constellations, has set before us an image of two fish?



On two occasions, once at the beginning of His ministry, and once at the end, Yahshua performed a miracle by filling the nets of His disciples with fish. The occupation of these men foretold of their spiritual calling as fishers of men. Yahshua would draw to His disciples those men and women chosen for salvation. On another occasion Yahshua instructed Peter to cast a hook into the water and the first fish he caught would have a coin in its mouth to pay the poll tax. The fish has become a symbol firmly associated with Christianity. How fitting that the Age of Pisces should commence as the Lamb of God was offering up His life on the cross at calvary. As the disciples went forth on the Day of Pentecost to fulfill the great commission, to make disciples of all nations, they began fulfilling the type of being fishers of men. At this moment the Age of Pisces began.

We are now 2,000 years into the Age of Pisces. This age is coming to an end, and the Age of Aquarius, the Water Pourer, is about to begin.



The Age of Aquarius will begin with the inauguration of the millennial reign of Christ upon the earth. Regarding this age, we are informed of the following by the prophets Isaiah and Habakkuk.

Isaiah 11:9

“They will not hurt or destroy in all My holy mountain, for the earth will be full of the knowledge of Yahweh as the waters cover the sea.”

Habakkuk 2:14

“For the earth will be filled with the knowledge of the glory of Yahweh, as the waters cover the sea.”

We previously read the testimony of David in the Psalms who said, “The heavens are telling of the glory of God; And their expanse is declaring the work of His hands. Day to day *pours forth speech*, and night to night reveals knowledge” (Psalms 19:1-2).

Here is a heavenly symbol depicting the very act of pouring forth the knowledge of the glory of Yahweh upon the earth. What a remarkable testimony Yahweh has set in the heavens. With precision He has caused the movements of the heavens to show forth His plan of the ages. With exact timing the precession of the equinoxes are leading us from one age to another to correspond with the works of God.

The Zodiac Explained



There are numerous explanations for the origin of the word “zodiac.” Perhaps the most common attributes the etymology of this word to an ancient reference to a circle of animals in the sky. English readers may recognize a similarity between the word “zoo,” and related words such as “zoology,” to the word “zodiac.” The *Online Etymology Dictionary* provides the following entry.

zodiac (n.)

late 14c., from Old French zodiaque, from Latin zodiacus "zodiac," from Greek zodiakos (kyklos) "zodiac (circle)," literally "circle of little animals," from zodiaion, diminutive of zoion "animal" (see zoo).

This appears to be a reasonable explanation, and is satisfactory to many who study the zodiac. Frances Rolleston in her seminal book *Mazzaroth* suggests another origin for the word.

Those who derive zodiac from Zao, to live, as composed of living creatures, instead of from the primitive root Zoad, way, going on by steps, not only overlook the balance in Libra, but the vase for Aquarius, and the bow for Sagittarius, of the Eastern nations.

Joseph Seiss agrees with Frances Rolleston. In his book *The Gospel in the Stars* he states:

Whilst the sun is thus making its annual course from west to east through the centre of this belt or zone, the moon makes twelve complete revolutions around the earth, suggesting the division of this belt into twelve parts, or sections, of thirty degrees each; for twelve times thirty degrees complete the circle. We thus note twelve equal steps or stages in the Sun's path as it makes its annual circuit through the heavens. And this belt or zone, with these twelve moons or months for its steps or stages, is called the Zodiac, from the primitive word zoad, a walk, way, or going by steps...

William Banks in his book *The Heavens Declare* shares a similar view.

The familiar word “Zodiac” does not come as we have long been told from the Greek word zoe meaning life, and does not refer to either animals or a “zoo.” Simple logic utilizing internal evidence within the Zodiac itself bears this out, since it contains inanimate objects such as an arrow, balancing scales, a lyre, a cup, a ship, a cross, an altar, and a crown. One sixth of the constellations are inanimate, and therefore, a word denoting animals or life could not adequately describe the constellations.

Instead the word “Zodiac” comes to us from the Hebrew root word zodi or sodi, for A Way. This latter word actually appears on some of the old star charts. “Zodiac” itself comes directly from the Greek word “zodiakos,” derived from this Hebrew word and therefore denotes The Way or The Path (lit. a way of steps) which the sun appears to follow through the heavens.

In the previous chapter I cited George Smith’s translation of the ancient *Chaldean Account of Genesis*. In the 5th tablet of that writing it is recorded “*Stars, their appearance [in figures] of animals he arranged.*” This would seem to lend support to the common understanding that defines zodiac as a circle of animals. The entry for the word zodiac at the *Online Etymology Dictionary* provides this further information.

Libra is not an animal, but it was not a zodiac constellation to the Greeks, who reckoned 11 but counted Scorpio and its claws (including what is now Libra) as a "double constellation." Libra was figured back in by the Romans.

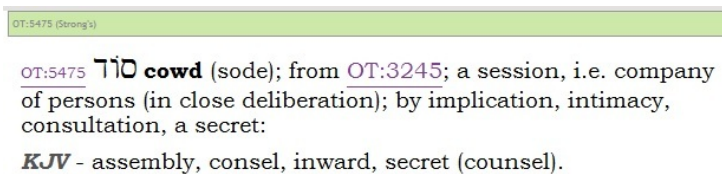
This information is certainly pertinent to any discussion of the origin of our English word zodiac. Note that the entry states that “*Libra was figured **back in** by the Romans.*” Libra did exist as a constellation in cultures older than that of Greece. It appears in the Dendera and Esne Zodiacs of the Egyptians. The question is largely one of where our English word originated. If it came from the Greeks, then a very good argument can be made that it originally meant “a circle of animals.” If it came through the Hebrew “zodi” or “sodi” for “A Way,” then a different meaning is understood. It would not be unusual for the Greeks to have adopted a Hebrew word, and over time to ascribe an entirely different meaning to it. Language tends to be very dynamic and fluid.

Perhaps it is not all that important to clearly identify the origin of the word zodiac. The reason I suggest this is that there have been many different words and phrases used to describe the circle of constellations throughout history. The word zodiac (or the root from which it derives) is not necessarily the original, or the most authentic. In the Old Testament, when Yahweh speaks to man of the constellations, the Hebrew word “mazzaroth,” or “mazaloth” is used. Mazzaroth is generally understood to mean “constellations,” and is considered to be an ancient Hebrew equivalent to the word zodiac, but its actual meaning is uncertain. Perhaps mazzaroth is the more authentic word, or closer to the original that Yahweh conveyed to Adam and his descendants. Not knowing what language man spoke before the division of language at Babel, we can do little more than offer conjecture.

Some other ways in which people have historically referred to the constellations of the zodiac are as follows.

- In Old English the zodiac was *twelf tacna* "the twelve signs."
- In Middle English it was *Our Lady's Waye* and the *Girdle of the Sky*.
- The Greeks also referred to it as *kuklos*, meaning "circle."
- As mentioned previously, in Latin it was *Orbis Signiferus*, or *Circulus Signifer*, meaning "the sign bearing circle."
- The ancient Egyptians referred to the zodiac as "the watchers of Horus." An interesting argument is made that this phrase was synonymous with "the watchers of the Hours." The argument is that our English word "hours" is derived from "Horus." The Online Etymology Dictionary traces our English word back through Latin and Greek, and in these languages the word was "hora," which does bear a distinct resemblance to "Horus." In Roman times the "h" was pronounced, and not silent as it is in our modern "hour." The suggestion is that the Greeks received the word "hora" from the Egyptian "the watchers of Horus/Hours."

I would mention that there is another Hebrew word that is similar to the roots suggested by Rolleston and William Banks. This is the Hebrew word pronounced as "sode." The following is a screen shot from *Strong's Concordance*.



(Note - "consel" in the last line of the image above should read "counsel.")

This Hebrew word denotes close and intimate communication between parties. It is rendered into English as "secret" and "counsel." Following are four occurrences of this word in Scripture.

Job 15:8

Hast thou heard the **secret** (sode) of God? and dost thou restrain wisdom to thyself?

Psalms 25:14

The **secret** (sode) of the Lord is with them that fear him; and he will shew them his covenant.

Psalms 64:2

Hide me from the **secret counsel** (sode) of the wicked...

Amos 3:7

Surely the Lord God will do nothing, but he revealeth his **secret** (sode) unto his servants the prophets.

Since the constellations pour forth the secrets of the heavens, and display the counsel of God, it seems possible that this word could be the underlying root for zodiac. The constellations were appointed by Yahweh to disclose hidden things to mankind. Through means of the stars Yahweh is showing forth His privy counsel to His servants, to those who fear Him.

I have set forth numerous possibilities for the origins of the word zodiac. The uncertainty is largely

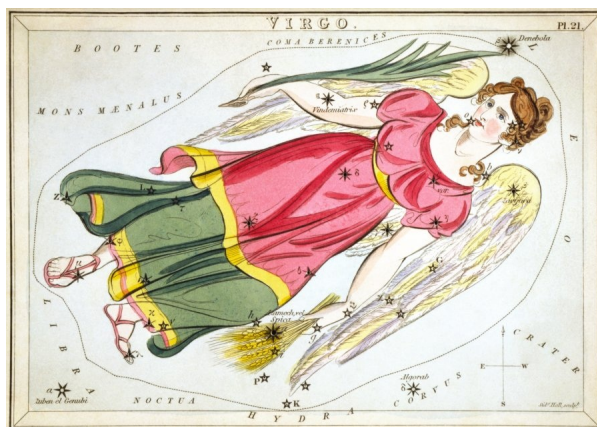
due to the great antiquity of this subject and the gaps that exist in the historical record of the civilizations of man.

Although authors of books on the gospel message in the zodiac are nearly unanimous in listing twelve main constellations and three additional minor constellations (decans) in association with each of them for a total of forty-eight, in doing so they are following Roman and Greek practice. The more ancient zodiacs number the constellations as thirty-six. I previously noted that in *The Chaldean Account of Genesis*, the Assyrians attributed to the God of creation the arrangement of thirty-six constellations. The Egyptians also recognized thirty-six constellations.

Men have added numerous constellations throughout the ages. The IAU recognizes 88 constellations, though many of them are of relatively recent origin and are rejected by astronomical purists. It is difficult to declare with certainty the correct number of divinely inspired constellations. I think the more ancient zodiacs would be more likely to represent the original number of recognized constellations, yet even here there is a lack of uniformity depending upon which ancient tablets or zodiac is used as a reference. Since the Bible provides no catalogue of star names or constellations, mentioning them always in incomplete references, it is not possible to speak with certainty about their precise number.

In the following discussion of the zodiacal figures, I will list and describe only the twelve major constellations. My purpose in speaking of the constellations in this set of writings is not to provide a complete study of the subject of the divine origin of the zodiac. Rather, it is to establish the profound role the starry heavens have played from the very earliest days of man, and to establish their divine role as stellar prophecy. These truths can readily be conveyed by an examination of the twelve central constellations of the zodiac. The student with an interest in this subject will profit much by examining the additional thirty-six decans associated with them.

In the following summary of the constellations, the images used are taken from *Urania's Mirror*, a set of cards first published in 1824.



Virgo

It seems fitting to begin with the constellation that is a figure of a woman bearing seed, for the first recorded prophecy of the Bible speaks of “the seed of the woman” who will crush the serpent’s head

(Genesis 3:15). In this first prophecy an unusual phrase is used as Yahweh speaks of *the woman's* seed. The more common Biblical reference to offspring is always to the man's seed. In prophesying of the woman's seed Yahweh was indicating that something very unusual would happen. The Savior of mankind would be born of woman, but He would not be of the seed of Adamic man. He was to be born of divine seed.

Isaiah 7:14

"Therefore the Lord Himself will give you a sign: Behold, a virgin will be with child and bear a son, and she will call His name Immanuel."

Luke 1:31-35

"And behold, you will conceive in your womb, and bear a son, and you shall name Him Yahshua. He will be great, and will be called the Son of the Most High; and the Lord God will give Him the throne of His father David; and He will reign over the house of Jacob forever; and His kingdom will have no end." And Mary said to the angel, "How can this be, since I am a virgin?" And the angel answered and said to her, "The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you; and for that reason the holy offspring shall be called the Son of God."

Ken Fleming, in his book *God's Voice in the Stars*, writes:

The prophetic revelation in the heavens begins with the sign of Virgo. The picture of Virgo is that of a woman with an ear of wheat in her left hand and a branch in her right hand... The name of the sign is from the Latin and has a double connotation. Virgo means "A Virgin" and Virga means "A Branch." The Latin Vulgate uses both words as referring to Christ, as the Branch in Isaiah 11:1 and as virgin-born in Matthew 1:23.

In the more ancient languages the same meanings are evident. The Hebrew name for it is "Bethulah," which is the common word used for a virgin in the Old Testament. The Arabs called it "Adarah" (Virgin), and the Greeks called it "Parthenos," which is the word for virgin in the New Testament: "Behold, a virgin [parthenos] shall be with child and shall bring forth a son..." (Matthew 1:23). In the traditions of these and other ancient peoples, she was not only a virgin but a "virgin mother." In Egypt she was named "Aspolio," which means "The Seed," thereby confirming the connection between the virgin and her son.

The Greek Aratus, in his astronomical poem published in 270 B.C. wrote the following regarding this constellation.

*Beneath Bootes feet the Virgin seek,
Who carries in her hand a glittering spike.
Over her shoulder revolves a star
In the right wing, superlatively bright;
It rolls beneath the tail, and may compare
With the bright stars that deck the Greater Bear.
Upon her right shoulder one bright star is borne,
One clasps the circling girdle of her loins,*

*One at her bending knee; and in her hand
Glitters that bright and golden Ear of Corn.*

One of the bright stars in this constellation appears in the ear of corn which the virgin holds in her left hand. It is called Al Zimach, meaning “The Branch.” One Biblical corollary to this heavenly testimony is found in the book of the prophet Isaiah.

Isaiah 11:1-5

Then a shoot will spring from the stem of Jesse, and **a Branch** from his roots will bear fruit. And the Spirit of Yahweh will rest on Him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and strength, the spirit of knowledge and the fear of Yahweh. And He will delight in the fear of Yahweh, and He will not judge by what His eyes see, nor make a decision by what His ears hear; but with righteousness He will judge the poor, and decide with fairness for the afflicted of the earth; and He will strike the earth with the rod of His mouth, and with the breath of His lips He will slay the wicked. Also righteousness will be the belt about His loins, and faithfulness the belt about His waist.

The prophet Jeremiah also prophesied of **The Branch**.

Jeremiah 23:5-6

“Behold, the days are coming,” declares Yahweh, “When I shall raise up for David **a righteous Branch**; And He will reign as king and act wisely and do justice and righteousness in the land. In His days Judah will be saved, and Israel will dwell securely; and this is His name by which He will be called, ‘Yahweh our righteousness.’”

The Hebrew word for Branch in these verses is nearly identical to the Arabic name Al Zimach. The Hebrew word is Tsemech. In the Old Testament of the Bible there are twenty Hebrew words translated as “branch,” but only the word Tsemech is used as a reference to the Son of God who would be called “The Branch.” It is remarkable that this is the word the Arabs have preserved in the star catalogues.

A star in the arm that carries the branch is called Al Mureddin which means “who shall come down,” or “who shall have dominion.” Another name given for this star is Vindemiatrix. This is a Chaldean word that means “the Son,” or “Branch, who comes.” The Arabs called this constellation Adarah, meaning “the pure virgin,” as well as Sunbul, meaning “an ear of corn.” This latter name puts the emphasis upon the seed the virgin is bearing, rather than upon the virgin herself. This seems befitting of the prophetic word that Yahweh spoke to our first forebears in the Garden of Eden, for it is the Seed of the woman, and not the woman herself, who would crush the head of the serpent.

According to A.H. Layard, a British archaeologist, and the first man to perform excavations at the ancient site of Nineveh, the name of this constellation in Assyrian was Mylitt, or Mylitta, meaning “She who brings forth.” The Babylonians also referred to Virgo as “The Great Mother.”

The second brightest star in the constellation is Zavijaveh, meaning “gloriously beautiful.”

Isaiah 4:2

In that day *the Branch* of Yahweh will be *beautiful and glorious*...

I am no scholar of Arabic languages, but it seems striking that the name *Zavijaveh* bears a resemblance to the Hebrew name Yahweh. In numerous languages the letter j makes the sound of the letter y, and some today write the sacred name of God as Yahveh.

In the Denderah Planisphere, Virgo is depicted as holding a palm branch. This once more provides a striking symbol of the virgin who gives birth to "The Branch." It was similar palm branches that were laid before the feet of the donkey as Yahshua rode into Jerusalem while the people shouted, "Blessed is He who comes in the name of the Lord!"

Tim Warner, in his book *Mystery of the Mazzaroth* writes the following of the constellation Virgo.

The earliest (Sumerian) name, found in the MUL.APIN tablet was "AB.SIN," meaning "seed furrow."

It is remarkable that as far back as one traces this constellation it communicates the same message of a "Seed" who comes forth from a virgin.

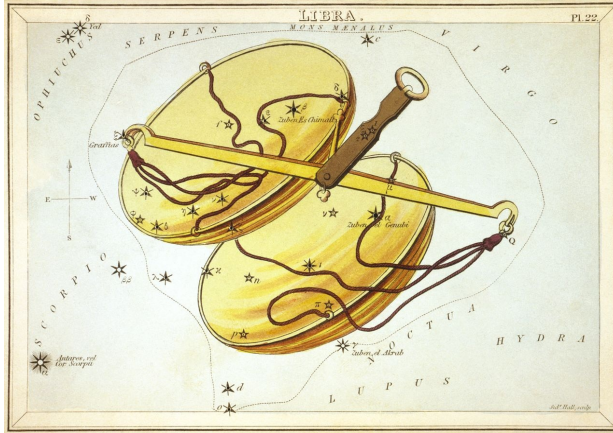
The three decans associated with Virgo are Coma (The Desired), Centaurus (The Centaur), and Bootes (The Coming One). Although I will not give a full explanation of the decans, I believe it is worthy to point out the remarkable testimony found in Coma. Coma is depicted as a woman seated with a child standing on her lap. The Hebrew word for this constellation is identical to the word translated as "The Desired" in the following prophetic Scripture.

Haggai 2:7

And I will shake all nations, and they shall come to *the Desire* of All Nations...
(NKJV)

Albumazar, a Persian astrologer, astronomer, and philosopher who lived from 787 A.D. - 876 A.D., whose star lore was very helpful to Frances Rolleston and others who have studied this subject, wrote the following regarding the constellation Coma. Keep in mind, Albumazar was not a Christian.

There arises in the first Decan, as the Persians, Chaldeans, and Egyptians, and the two Hermes and Ascalius, teach, a young woman, whose Persian name denotes a pure virgin, sitting on a throne, nourishing an infant boy having a Hebrew name, by some nations called Ihesu, with the signification of Ieza, which in Greek is called Christ.



Libra

Raymond Capt, in the book *The Glory of the Stars*, provides the following information on this, the second of the constellations.

In Greek mythology, Libra represented the balances of Astraea, the Goddess of Justice, in which the fate of all mortal men must be weighed. The Egyptians identified Libra with the scale beam by means of which they measured the Nile flood. Sometimes they also associated it with the scales in which the human heart is to be weighed after death, the scales of justice. In India, Libra was also known as a balance, shown in their zodiac as a kneeling man holding up a pair of scales.

The scales convey the idea of purchase, and the names of this sign indicate the range of meaning attached to it. In Hebrew it is called "Monazanaim," meaning "the scales, weighing"; in Arabic, "Al Zubena," meaning "purchase" or "redemption." In Coptic, "Lambadia," meaning "station of propitiation."

The scales in ancient times were used for purchasing goods. Paper money was unknown, as the ancients dealt in coins, usually of bronze, silver, or gold. These coins were often cut imperfectly, and individuals would at times trim pieces off of them as a form of skimming, or defrauding, the person with whom they were conducting business. For this and other reasons, it was common to weigh out monetary transactions. This way a seller could be insured that he was getting the full amount of bronze, silver, or gold that he was due. Of course, it was also important to insure that the weights that were used in the scales to weigh against the coin, were true weights, neither too light, nor too heavy. The Bible makes frequent mention of using scales to transact business.

Proverbs 16:11

Honest weights and scales are Yahweh's; All the weights in the bag are His work.

Jeremiah 32:9-10

So I bought the field from Hanamel, the son of my uncle who was in Anathoth, and weighed out to him the money - seventeen shekels of silver. And I signed the deed and sealed it, took witnesses, and weighed the money on the scales.

Yahweh was very much concerned that His people should use just scales and weights.

Micah 6:11

Shall I count pure those with the wicked scales, and with the bag of deceitful weights?

It is not hard to imagine what the scales might represent as a symbol of the atoning work of Christ. Due to the sin of man a great debt was incurred. It is a debt that man cannot pay for himself. No amount of good works can atone for the sins of humanity. If man should place all his good works on one side of the scales of justice they could never balance the scales. It would require one who was sinless, one without spot or blemish, to cover the cost of man's transgressions. This one is Christ.

The names of the stars in this constellation bear witness to this truth. One of the stars in Libra is "Zuben al Genubi," meaning "the price deficient." Another is "Zuben al Shemali," meaning "the price which covers." A third star is "Zuben Akrabi," meaning "the price of the conflict."

There are numerous Scriptures that speak of men being "weighed in the balance," and being found deficient. We are told that Christ paid the price that we might be redeemed from sin and death.

I Corinthians 6:19-20

Or do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit who is in you, whom you have from God, and that you are not your own? For you have been bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body.

Christ, the pure Lamb of God, paid the price to redeem mankind. The very word "redeem" is used in the realm of commerce to denote a transaction. Someone may speak of "redeeming coupons," in order to not have to pay the full price for a desired product. Yahshua paid the price in full for the salvation of mankind.

Raymond Capt notes that in the Persian zodiac the symbol for Libra is a man or woman who is lifting the scales in one hand while grasping a lamb in the other, the lamb having the form of an ancient weight. Nothing could be clearer. Nonetheless, E.W. Bullinger sets forth an alternate figure and meaning for this symbol. He argues that the symbol for Libra was originally that of an altar, and over time it became corrupted into the form of scales, and in some zodiacs it was even figured as the claws of the scorpion from the adjoining constellation Scorpio. He writes:

There is, however, some reason to suppose that Libra is a very ancient Egyptian corruption... In the more ancient Akkadian the months were called after the names of the signs, and the sign of the seventh month was the sign that we now call Libra. The Akkadian name for it was Tulku. Tul means mound (like dhul and dul) and ku means sacred; hence, Tulku means the sacred mound, or the holy altar.

In an appendix at the end of the book *The Witness of the Stars*, Bullinger sets forth an explanation of how the sign of the Altar was transformed into the symbol of the Scales. He contends that this was an early corruption of Satan that sought to bring in "the way of Cain." It is suggested that this corruption was used to alter the prophetic story of redemption observed in the heavens, and to bring

There can be but little doubt, therefore, that the first sign of the Zodiac was Virgo, the second was the Altar, and the third was the Scorpion. The lesson which they teach is clear: The Seed of the woman (Virgo), who was to come as a child, should be a sacrifice (the Altar) for the sins of His people; endure a great conflict with the enemy (Scorpio), in which He should be wounded in the heel; but should in the end crush and tread the enemy under foot.



[Rolleston] also notes that in some mythologies Orion was stung to death by a scorpion. Some of those stories have Orion stung on the foot, but others do not specify where the scorpion stung Orion. One tradition is that the scorpion in question is Scorpius (a variant of Scorpio)...

There are several problems with Rolleston's connection of Orion and Jesus Christ. First is Rolleston's parallel between Orion dying by means of a scorpion and Christ's heel being bruised by

Satan... a scorpion is not a snake. To claim illustration of Genesis 3:15 with a scorpion is a tremendous stretch.

[Source: Ibid]

While it is true that a scorpion is not the same thing as a snake, there are similarities between the two. Both are creatures that do injury to man. Both crawl or walk close to the ground, placing them near the heel of man. Both do injury by injecting poison into the victim's body either through fangs or a stinger at the end of the tail. Both are considered adversaries to man. Furthermore, Christ Himself links the two creatures together, speaking of them symbolically as being emblematic of those who are members of Satan's kingdom.

Luke 10:17-19

And the seventy returned with joy, saying, "Lord, even the demons are subject to us in Your name." And He said to them, "I was watching Satan fall from heaven like lightning. Behold, I have given you authority to tread upon *serpents and scorpions*, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing shall injure you."

It is clear from the context of this passage that serpents and scorpions are similitudes for Satan and demons, and are characteristic of "the power of the enemy." These are those dark forces that seek to do injury to mankind, yet Christ has given His disciples authority over them. Even as both serpents and scorpions are used as images of Satanic forces that threaten humanity in the New Testament and in the church age, we observe that the same imagery was invoked in the Old Testament.

Deuteronomy 8:15

He led you through the great and terrible wilderness, with its *fiery serpents and scorpions* and thirsty ground where there was no water...

The experiences of the Israelites in the wilderness serve as types and shadows of the conflict that takes place in spiritual realms. In light of these Bible passages, I do not perceive it to be "a tremendous stretch" to associate Satan with the image of a scorpion. Satan has many names in the Bible. In a passage from the Psalms we find a prophecy speaking of the coming Messiah. In the verses of this Psalm it speaks of Christ not only trampling the serpent under His feet, but also trampling upon the lion and the dragon. There are many images that are befitting of the conflict between Christ and Satan.

Psalms 91:11-13

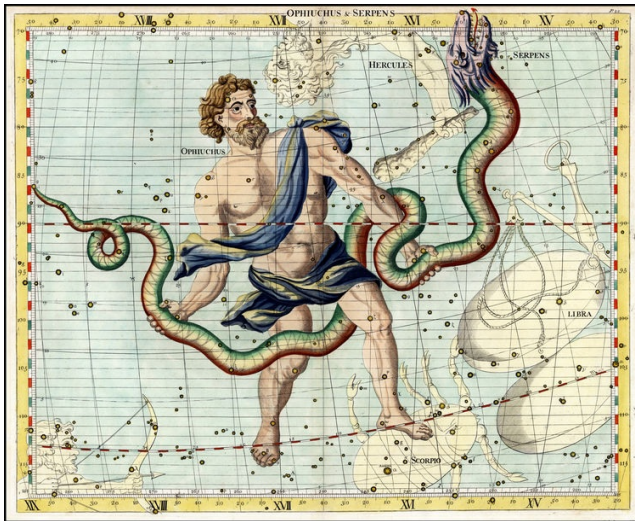
For He shall give His angels charge over you, to keep you in all your ways. In their hands they shall bear you up, lest you dash your foot against a stone. You shall tread upon the lion and the serpent, the young lion and the dragon you shall trample underfoot.

Joseph Seiss in his book *The Gospel in the Stars* shares the following insight.

The name of this sign in Arabic and Syriac is Al Akrab, which, as a name, means the scorpion, but also "wounding, conflict, war." David uses the root of this word (Ps. 144:1) where he blesses God for teaching his hands to "war." In Coptic the name is Isidis, attack of the enemy - a word from the

same root which occurs in Hebrew (Ps. 17:9) in the sense of “oppression” from deadly foes. The word scorpion itself is formed from a root which means “to cleave” in conflict or battle, and this sign of the Zodiac is the house of Mars, the god of war and justice. The principal star in this sign is called Antares, wounding, cutting, tearing...

In the Egyptian Zodiac this sign is represented as a monster serpent, Typhon, or Python... In the Hebrew Zodiac this sign was counted to Dan; and Dan is described as “a serpent by the way, and an adder in the path.”



Observing that two of the decans of the constellation are Ophiuchus wrestling with a serpent in his arms, and his foot poised over the scorpion as if to crush it, it is difficult to argue that the message here is not one of conflict with Satan and the manifestation of the divine power to conquer over serpents and scorpions.

The third decan of this constellation is one of similar conflict. It is the constellation Hercules. Some zodiacs depict this constellation with an image of the mighty Hercules, half god and half man, striking a multi-headed serpent with a club while wearing a garment from a lion that has been slain.

To sum up the message of this constellation and its decans, I will provide the following quotes, the first of which is from Raymond Capt.

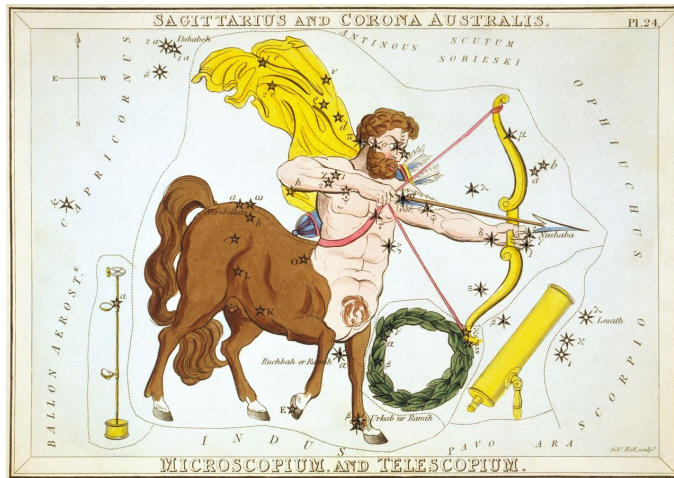
Scorpio was everywhere an unfortunate, cursed and warlike constellation. The Mayas called it the “Sign of the Death-god.” The Babylonians supposed Scorpio to have been among the monsters created by Tiamat when she rose in rebellion against the gods, and he was ever an opponent of the sun. To the Sumerians, Scorpio was known as “The Perverse One” or “The Lawless One.”

Kenneth Fleming writes of this constellation:

The brightest star in Scorpio is Antares, which to the naked eye is similar in appearance to the planet Mars, because of its magnitude and deep red color. From this it is supposed to get its name, which means “The Rival of Ares (Mars). Mars is called The Planet of War... The names of the stars and of

the constellation indicate that Scorpio represents the evil one in his efforts to destroy the seed of the woman.

[Source: *God's Voice in the Stars*]



Sagittarius

Next to come into view along the circuit of the sun through the heavens is the constellation Sagittarius. This figure is noted everywhere for being that of an archer, which is the meaning of the Latin name of this sign. In Greek the name is Toxotes, providing the same definition. In Hebrew and in Syriac the name is Kesith, which likewise translates as “the archer.” The name in Arabic is Al Kaus, meaning “The Arrow.” The image of a Centaur, half horse and half man, signifies great strength combined with great wisdom. Some have suggested that it also alludes to the dual nature of the Son of God who is both God and man.

The heavenly sign shows the archer with his bow bent and an arrow fitted to the string. It is aimed directly at Antares, the star in the heart of Scorpio. In Sagittarius the emphasis shifts from the wounding by the adversary, to one of victory. The arrows of God are shot at the heart of the enemy. In the Zodiac of Dendera under the image of this constellation is the word Knem, meaning “He conquers.” We find the same word under the last sign of the Dendera Zodiac, that of Leo the Lion who is standing upon a serpent. This affirms that the Lion of Leo, and the Centaur of Sagittarius, refer to the same person. Numerous Scriptures come to mind in relation to this sign.

Psalms 45:3-5

Gird Your sword upon Your thigh, O Mighty One, with Your glory and Your majesty. And in Your majesty ride prosperously because of truth, humility, and righteousness; And Your right hand shall teach You awesome things. Your arrows are sharp in the heart of the King's enemies; The peoples fall under You.

Psalms 64:7

God shall shoot at them with an arrow; Suddenly they shall be wounded.

It is suggested by some that the image for Sagittarius was originally of a warrior riding on horseback

with his bow drawn and an arrow fitted to the string. There are no star names in this constellation that describe a centaur. They all alike speak of an archer. It is difficult to prove what the original image may have been. The Bible has nothing to say of centaurs, though it does describe many fantastic creatures, from the fire breathing leviathan of the book of Job, to the dragon of seven heads or Revelation, as well as angelic beings with four faces and others with bodies full of eyes. There are scriptures that figure Christ as an archer astride a great horse. It is fitting that the One who was pierced should pierce the hearts of His enemies.

Revelation 6:2

And I looked, and behold, a white horse, and he who sat on it had a bow; and a crown was given to him; and he went out conquering, and to conquer.

As I survey the message of this heavenly sign I am put in mind of the story of Joseph. Joseph serves as a type of Yahshua the Messiah. He was mistreated by His own family. He was betrayed for 20 pieces of silver at the suggestion of his brother Judah. In the New Testament Judas (a Greek variant of the name Judah) betrays Christ for 30 pieces of silver. Joseph was falsely accused and wrongly condemned. He descended into the earth for a time as he was placed in Pharaoh's dungeon. Yet, at the appointed time he ascended to the right hand of the throne of power. From his position of authority he was able to save alive a remnant upon the earth. The ones who mistreated him are met with compassion and forgiveness.

Speaking prophetically to his sons just before his death, Jacob uttered the following words regarding Joseph.

Genesis 49:22-24

Joseph is a fruitful bough, a fruitful bough by a spring; Its branches run over a wall. The archers bitterly attacked him, and shot at him and harassed him; But his bow remained firm, and his arms were agile, from the hands of the Mighty One of Jacob...

Joseph was attacked bitterly, yet he overcame and rose to a position of power. His enemies were placed beneath his feet. Even as Christ is referred to as "The Branch," so too are branches mentioned in this prophecy of Joseph. Christ was subjected to attacks and was bitterly oppressed, but He did not shrink back. Those who were His adversaries will bend the knee before Him even as Joseph's brothers bowed before him.

The three decans of Sagittarius are Lyra (The Harp), Ara (The Altar), and Draco (The Dragon). This latter sign is not like that serpent in Ophiuchus who is engaged in conflict with the man. The Greek meaning of Draco is "trodden on." This is the great dragon subdued.

Psalms 91:13

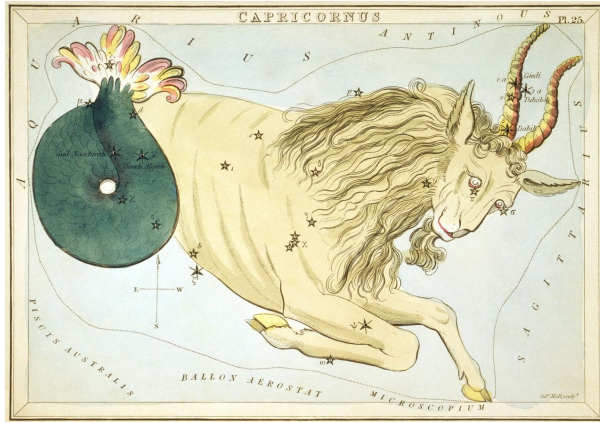
The young lion and the dragon You shall trample under feet.

One of the stars in Draco is El Asieh, meaning "the bowed down."

Isaiah 45:23

I have sworn by Myself, the word has gone forth from My mouth in righteousness and will not turn back, that to Me every knee will bow...

Though the heavens declare the conflict with Satan, the great dragon and serpent of old, they reveal that he will ultimately be defeated. Satan's authority will be destroyed. The head of the serpent will be crushed. The evil reign of this rebellious angel will soon be brought to an end.



Capricorn

The testimony in the heavens we have observed thus far is that a virgin would give birth to one who is the Branch, the Seed of God. The Branch would come to pay the cost for man's redemption, offering Himself as a ransom for man. This One who is the Son of God and the Son of man would enter into a deadly conflict with Satan. He would receive a mortal wound while also crushing the head of the adversary. He would arise triumphant, being Yahweh's appointed Champion to destroy all the works of the enemy.

Even as the Bible conveys truth through symbolism, some of which is quite fantastic, so too do we see some fantastic creatures in the heavens. The centaur of Sagittarius, if it be the original emblem of this constellation, is such an example. In Capricorn we have another unusual creature. From ancient times Capricorn has been drawn as a kneeling goat with the tail of a fish. It is suggested that the posture of the goat with its head bent down reveals that it is wounded and dying, while at the same time the tail of appears lively.

One explanation for this is that even as Pisces (the Fishes) follow Aries (the Ram) in the precession of the equinoxes, we have in Capricorn a similar message. The dying of the sacrificial Ram gives rise to the church age symbolized by the fish. Out of death comes life. This is testified in the following words of Christ.

John 12:24

"Truly, truly, I say to you, unless a grain of wheat falls into the earth and dies, it remains by itself alone; but if it dies, it bears much fruit."

In the book of Revelation, John was shown a scroll which no one was found worthy to open. He was

filled with grief and began weeping until one whose appearance was of a lamb that had been slain came forward and was accounted worthy to open the book.

Revelation 5:8-10

Now when He had taken the scroll, the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders fell down before the Lamb, each having a harp, and golden bowls full of incense, which are the prayers of the saints. And they sang a new song, saying: "You are worthy to take the scroll, and to open its seals; For You were slain, and have redeemed us to God by Your blood out of every tribe and tongue and people and nation, and have made us kings and priests to our God; And we shall reign on the earth."

Through the death of the Lamb of God a nation of kings and priests was born. Life comes forth out of death. The idea of sacrifice is everywhere connected with this sign. In the Zodiacs of Dendera and Esne this constellation appears as half goat and half fish and is called Hu-penius, meaning "the place of the sacrifice." The Hebrew name for this sign is Gedi, and in Arabic it is Al Gedi, meaning "the kid," or "cut off."

The stars in this sign bear a similar tale. One of the stars is called Al Gedi, another is Daneb Al Gedi, meaning "The Sacrifice Comes." The stars Dabih, Al Dabik, and Al Dehabe, all bear the meaning of "The Sacrifice Slain." There is also Ma'asad, "The Slaying," and Sa'ad al Naschira, "The Record of the Cutting Off." These testimonies are in keeping with the words and imagery evoked by the prophet Isaiah.

Isaiah 53:7-8

Like *a sheep* that is silent before its shearers, so He did not open His mouth. By oppression and judgment He was taken away; And as for His generation, who considered that He was *cut off* out of the land of the living, for the transgression of my people to whom the stroke was due?

The message of Capricorn may seem to be a repeat of that which was observed in previous signs, and indeed it is. This causes some problems for those who look at the constellations as a progressive telling of the message of divine redemption and victory over Satan. We have already observed The Archer with an arrow aimed at the heart of the Scorpion. Why now are we returning to the death of the sacrificial Ram?

Most of the books I have read on this subject have suggested various ways of dividing the signs of the zodiac into logical divisions. The most persuasive categorization of the signs that I have encountered is that set forth by E.W. Bullinger. Bullinger was a Bible scholar who had an eye for patterns. He discovered patterns throughout the entirety of the Bible that are quite profound. Those who are interested in this subject can find it expounded upon in the study Bible he produced called *The Companion Bible*. It is not surprising that he has identified patterns in the constellations as well. Bullinger has divided the twelve constellations up into three books containing four signs apiece. He explains these divisions in the following manner.

The First Book

THE REDEEMER (His first coming)

"The sufferings of Christ"

The Second Book
THE REDEEMED

“The result of the Redeemer’s sufferings”

The Third Book
THE REDEEMER (His second coming)
“The glory that should follow”

There is necessarily some repetition in these three heavenly books as they all deal with the same subject, but focus on different aspects of the story. In this regard these divisions of the zodiacal scroll might be compared to the four Gospels. Each book of the Gospels focuses on the person of Christ and His work, but the themes of the books differ. Consequently, there is significant repetition, but new insight to be gleaned from each telling of the matter.

Bullinger has observed various parallels throughout these three celestial books. For example, each of the three books concludes similarly.

The first book concludes with the Dragon being cast out of heaven.

The second book concludes with Cetus, the Sea Monster, Leviathan, bound.

The third book concludes with Hydra, the Old Serpent, destroyed.

[Source: *The Witness of the Stars*]

This is quite a remarkable pattern. Even as the Gospel writers each end their books with the resurrection of Christ, the books in the heavens are consistent in the message they portray. It may be said that the message of the zodiac is wider in scope than the Gospels, for the evangelists were primarily focused on those works accomplished at the Messiah’s first coming. The gospel books in the stars go further by speaking of the work of Christ at His second appearing. The limited scope of the work Christ was to accomplish at His first appearing is observed in an incident that occurred at the beginning of His ministry.

Luke 4:16-21

And He came to Nazareth, where He had been brought up; and as was His custom, He entered the synagogue on the Sabbath, and stood up to read. And the book of the prophet Isaiah was handed to Him. And He opened the book, and found the place where it was written, “The Spirit of the Lord is upon Me, because He anointed Me to preach the gospel to the poor. He has sent Me to proclaim release to the captives, and recovery of sight to the blind, to set free those who are downtrodden, to proclaim the favorable year of the Lord.” And He closed the book, and gave it back to the attendant, and sat down; and the eyes of all in the synagogue were fixed upon Him. And He began to say to them, “Today this Scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing.”

Yahshua cited only a portion of the prophecy Isaiah recorded about the coming Messiah. He left off a critical portion of the prophecy, for it would not be fulfilled until His second coming. Yahshua was reading from what we now identify as the 61st chapter of Isaiah (there were no chapter and verse divisions in His day).

Isaiah 61:1-2

“The Spirit of the Lord God is upon Me, because the Lord has anointed Me to preach good tidings to the poor; He has sent Me to heal the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to those who are bound; To proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord, *and the day of vengeance of our God...*

Why did not Yahshua read the phrase “and the day of vengeance of our God”? It was because this part of the prophecy would not be fulfilled until His second appearing upon the earth.

II Thessalonians 1:7-10

When the Lord Yahshua shall be revealed from heaven with His mighty angels in flaming fire, dealing out retribution to those who do not know God and to those who do not obey the gospel of our Lord Yahshua. And these will pay the penalty of aionian destruction, away from the presence of the Lord and from the glory of His power, when He comes to be glorified in His saints on that day, and to be marveled at among all who have believed...

The gospel in the stars includes this event, for it encompasses the work Christ will accomplish at His first and second appearing. For this reason, it is fitting that each of the three books in the heavens should all end with the message of Satan being cast down and his authority destroyed.

Bullinger has identified additional patterns within each of the three heavenly books.

The first chapter in each book has for its great subject the Person of the Redeemer in prophecy and promise. The last chapter in each book has for its subject the fulfillment of that prophecy in victory and triumph, in the Person of the Redeemer: while the two central chapters in each book are occupied with the work which is the accomplishment of the promise, presented in two aspects - the former connected with grace, the latter with conflict.

Taking Bullinger's divisions, we can view the zodiac as three books consisting of four chapters each. These would be as follows:

Book One

Virgo
Libra
Scorpio
Sagittarius

Book Two

Capricorn
Aquarius
Pisces
Aries

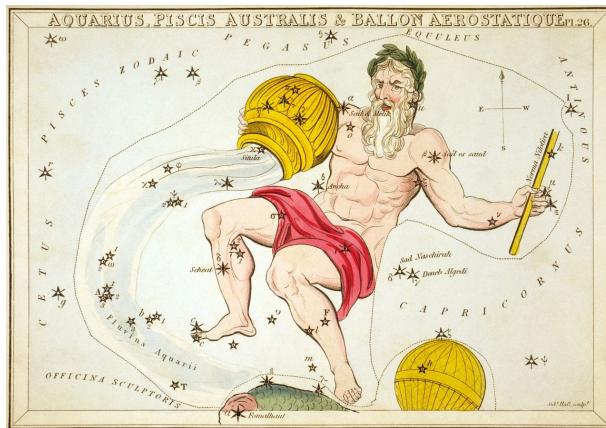
Book Three

Taurus

Gemini
Cancer
Leo

In Capricorn we see a repeat of the promise in Virgo that a seed would come forth who would save mankind from their sins. The seed in Virgo's hand signifies that grain of wheat that must fall into the ground and die that it might bear much fruit. The parallel is observed in the sacrificial goat of Capricorn whose death gives rise to a great multitude of the redeemed signified by the tail of the fish.

The three decans of Capricorn are Sagitta (the Arrow), Aquila (the Eagle), and Delphinus (the Dolphin).



Aquarius

Aquarius is a Latin name meaning “the pourer forth of water.” The brightest star is located in the right shoulder and is called Sa’ad Al Melik, meaning “record of the outpouring.” The next star in brightness is Al Sund, “the pourer out.” A star in the urn bears the Egyptian name Mon, or Meon, being interpreted “the urn.” It is not difficult to find in the Scriptures references to Christ and the pouring forth of water. When Yahshua encountered the woman of Samaria at the well, He said, “If you knew the gift of God, and who it is who says to you, ‘Give Me a drink,’ you would have asked Him, and He would have given you living water” (John 4:10). In another place He stated the following.

John 7:37-38

“If any man is thirsty, let him come to Me and drink. He who believes in Me, as the Scripture said, ‘From his innermost being shall flow rivers of living water.’”

Significantly, in many zodiacal depictions, the fish of Piscis Australis (the Southern Fish, also called Piscis Austrinus) is depicted as swimming in the streams of water being poured forth from the constellation Aquarius. It is remarkable that there is so much correspondence between the signs in the heavens, and the prophetic imagery of the Bible. Once one understands that both the terrestrial Scriptures, and the heavenly prophecy have the same Author, it no longer seems surprising to find the same messages in both of them. Isaiah once again provides a parallel to the sign in the stars.

Isaiah 44:3-4

“For I will pour out water on the thirsty land and streams on the dry ground; I will pour out My Spirit on your offspring, and My blessing on your descendants; And they will spring up among the grass like poplars by streams of water.”

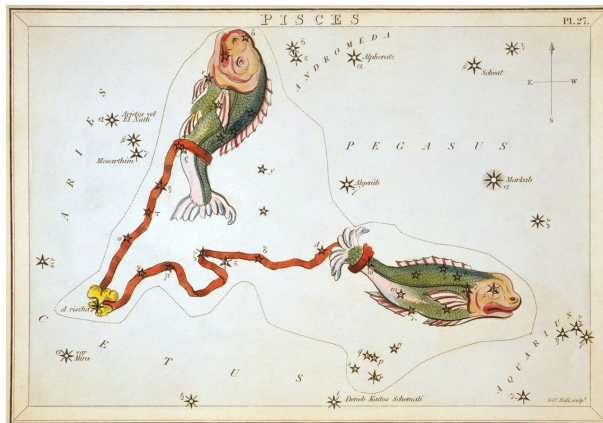
Throughout the Scriptures we find the divine symbolism of God, His Son, and His Spirit, compared to streams of water. Ezekiel writes of water flowing forth from the Temple of Yahweh in the vision he describes. Similarly, the River of Life features prominently in John’s description of the throne of God.

Revelation 22:1-3

And he showed me a river of the water of life, clear as crystal, coming from the throne of God and of the Lamb, in the middle of its street. And on either side of the river was the tree of life, bearing twelve kinds of fruit, yielding its fruit every month; and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations.

In the Zodiac of Dendera Aquarius is represented by an image of a man with two urns, one in each hand, pouring forth water. The Egyptian name is Aru, “the River.”

The image of the Water Pourer is undoubtedly a beneficent sign. It indicates great blessing procured by the Son of God and released upon the dry ground of humanity. The decans associated with Aquarius are Piscis Australis (the Southern Fish), Pegasus (depicted as a winged horse, the name meaning “coming quickly”), and Cygnus (the Swan Circling).



Pisces

The unusual feature of this constellation is that the two fish are drawn as being held together by a band. This cord seems to be restraining them. Pisces, of course, is symbolic of the redeemed of the Lord, His church. Yahshua told His disciples, “I will make you fishers of men.” The great struggle of humanity, and one that does not end, but merely begins when Christ calls a man or woman to be His disciple, is to be free of the bonds and chains that have kept us bound. The shackles of sin weigh down all mankind and have need of being broken. In our previous discourse on the sign of Capricorn, the words of the prophet Isaiah, spoken by Yahshua as He began His ministry, were cited. “He has sent Me to proclaim release to the captives, and recovery of sight to the blind, to set free those who

are downtrodden, to proclaim the favorable year of the Lord.”

In Pisces we see the conflict of man, a conflict that Yahshua triumphantly overcame. The Band that holds the fish is actually the first of the decans of this sign. It affirms the meaning of this chapter of the heavenly book. Mankind is born altogether in sin, enslaved to desires from which he cannot break free. Christ has come to deliver man from his bondage.

Andromeda is the second of the decans. She is depicted as a woman chained. In this she serves as a parallel to the image of the two fish bound together. It is an image of cruel slavery, of being held fast, awaiting a Savior to come and free her.



Regarding Andromeda, the Greek Poet Aratus wrote, “Her feet point to her bridegroom, Perseus, on whose shoulder they rest.” The names of the various stars in the constellation Andromeda bear the meanings “the Broken-down,” “the Weak,” “the Afflicted,” “the Chained.” Are these words not accurate descriptions of mankind in his separation from God? The glory of Yahweh is observed in His sending forth a Deliverer to rescue humanity. God has sent forth a Savior to loose mankind from their bonds.

John 8:36

“If therefore the Son shall make you free, you shall be free indeed.”

The life of the Christian is not one of ease and pleasure. The life of a disciple is one of struggle and conflict. We have been promised the victory. We are assured of the defeat of Satan and our ultimate victory over sin. Nevertheless, there is a period of time allotted to all of us where we are commanded to “work out your salvation with fear and trembling.” Even as the Son of God learned obedience through the things He suffered, so too must His bride. In the bands of Pisces and the chains of Andromeda a prophecy has been written that testifies to the struggle and sufferings of the church. Christ has purchased for us the victory, but it is required of His disciples to exercise themselves unto godliness, to resist the adversary, to buffet their bodies and keep them under subjection, and to crucify the flesh with its passions and desires. “Those who endure to the end shall be saved.”

The third decan of Pisces is Cepheus, depicted as a glorious king seated upon his throne. This is none other than the King of kings, and Lord of Lords. Joseph Seiss shares the following:

On the right shoulder of this figure, in glittering brilliancy, shines a star whose name, Al Deramin, means the Quickly-Returning. In the girdle shines another, equally conspicuous, whose name, Al Phirk, means the Redeemer. In the left knee is still another, whose name means the Shepherd. The Egyptians called this royal figure Pe-ku-hor, the Ruler that cometh. His more common designation is Cepheus, which means the Royal Branch, the King.

I have digressed and given some explanation of the decans of Pisces as they make the image of the two chained fish comprehensible. For those who wish to study the Biblical meaning of the zodiac at greater depth, they will find that the decans for all twelve of the signs serve to amplify the meaning of the zodiacal constellations with which they are associated.



Aries

Kenneth Fleming, in *God's Voice in the Stars*, shares the following:

Aries is the last of the signs in the second group, which includes Capricorn, Aquarius, Pisces, and Aries. This quartet of signs pictures the blessings of salvation. Capricorn signifies the blessings of salvation. Capricorn signifies the blessing of life from death. Aquarius pictures the blessing of salvation's fullness. Pisces signifies the delay of the promised blessing. Now in Aries we see the blessing fully realized...

Aries has a most interesting and instructive message for the student of the biblical prophecy and the history of salvation. Aries usually carries the symbol of the ram, but many of the oldest zodiacs portray a lamb (with no horns), and in some ancient zodiacs the lamb has a circular crown on its head... The Hebrew name for Aries was Taleh, which means Lamb, while the Arabic name, Hamal, means Sheep, Gentle, Merciful... In Syriac the name for Aries is Amroo, meaning Lamb. The New Testament in that language uses the same word for the Lord Jesus; John the Baptist cried, "Behold the Lamb of God!" (John 1:29)

William Banks comments on how this sign at the end of this second heavenly book, serves as a bookend matching Capricorn at the beginning of the same book. They are drawn as if facing in

opposite directions. This seems fitting. We might call this second heavenly book The Scroll of the Sacrifice. In Capricorn the self-denial of the Lord is depicted in the goat sinking down in death. In Aries we have the same sacrificial offering resurrected, and as some zodiacs show, with a crown upon its head. The Lord who submitted to wear the crown of thorns has now received the everlasting crown of glory and honor.

Revelation 14:14

And I looked, and behold, a white cloud, and sitting on the cloud was one like a son of man, having a golden crown on His head...

In the Akkadian zodiac, one of the most ancient, the name they gave to the constellation Aries was Bara-Ziggar, "The Sacrifice of Righteousness." I am reminded of the words of Yahweh recorded by the prophet Isaiah.

Isaiah 53:12

Therefore, I will allot Him a portion with the great, and He will divide the booty with the strong; Because He poured out Himself to death...

The decans of Aries are Cassiopeia (the Enthroned Woman), Cetus (the Sea Monster), and Perseus (the Breaker). The Greeks credited to Perseus the slaying of the great Sea Monster and the rescue of Andromeda. It is not difficult to see in these images shadows of the true story of the triumphant labors of the Son of God.



Taurus

We now come to the third and last book of the heavens according to the divisions assigned by E.W. Bullinger. This is the book of the Redeemer at His second coming. *"The glory that should follow."* He writes:

Like the other two books, it consists of four chapters.

The first chapter is the prophecy of the coming Judge of all the earth.

The second sets before us the two-fold nature of the coming Ruler.

The third shows us Messiah's redeemed possessions - the Redeemed brought safely home, all conflict over.

The fourth describes Messiah's consummated triumph.

The constellation Taurus has been of special interest to me since I was a child. My parents became Christians when I was three years of age, and I was brought up in the Conservative Baptist denomination. Anything dealing with the zodiac was considered pagan and occult and was to be avoided. Warnings were given by the preacher against reading the horoscope in the daily newspaper, or becoming involved with any form of astrology. Nevertheless, I was still a youth when I learned that my "birth sign" is Taurus (according to the dates of Tropical Astrology). This information was probably discovered in the pages of the newspaper, for it was common to list the dates of each sign in the horoscope column. The sun transits Taurus from April 20th to May 20th of each year, and I was born on May 7th.

Being warned of the dangers of astrology and reading the horoscope, I never demonstrated any interest in this subject in my youth. It was not until I was well into my adult years that I encountered any teaching that suggested a divine, Scriptural role for the constellations. I mentioned previously that the Pleiades, a group of seven stars, is mentioned several times in the Bible, being twice named in Job and once in Amos. The Pleiades are not a constellation by themselves. They are an integral part of the constellation Taurus.

Although hidden to most eyes due to translation issues, Taurus likely appears elsewhere in the book of Job. Even as Job mentions Leviathan, and this fire-breathing dragon described by Yahweh is figured in the heavens, so too does God speak of the wild ox that was known to the Hebrews as the reem.

Job 39:9-12

"Will the wild ox (Hebrew - rimu) consent to serve you? Or will he spend the night at your manger? Can you bind the wild ox in a furrow with ropes? Or will he harrow the valleys after you? Will you trust him because his strength is great and leave your labor to him? Will you have faith in him that he will return your grain, and gather it from your threshing floor?"

Strong's Concordance lists this Hebrew word as follows:

re'em (reh-ame'); or re'eym (reh-ame'); or reym (rame); or rem (rame); from OT:7213; a wild bull (from its conspicuousness):
KJV - unicorn.

The word "unicorn" is a terrible translation. The reem is an actual animal, though now extinct. It was a powerful ox, or wild bull, of a ferocious temperament. There was no possibility of domesticating this animal. Regarding this animal, Joseph Seiss writes:

It has long been a question what animal is meant by the Reem, which is so often referred to in the ancient Scriptures, and which translators have generally called the unicorn. But modern research

and discovery have served to clear up the subject in a matter entirely satisfactory. The reem is not a one-horned creature, like the rhinoceros, as has been generally supposed, but a pure animal of the ox kind, though wild, untamable, fierce, and terrible. Two passages prove that it was a great two-horned and mighty creature, now, so far as known, entirely extinct, but once common in North-western Asia, Assyria, and Middle Europe. Remains of it have of late years been discovered in the north of Palestine, and Caesar, in the account of his wars, describes it as being hunted in the Hercynian forest in his day... It was a formidable animal, "scarcely less than the elephant in size, but in nature, color, and form, a true ox." Its strength and speed were very great, and it was so fierce that it did not spare man or beast when it caught sight of them. It was wholly intractable, and could not be habituated to man, no matter how young it was taken...

This animal was particularly distinguished for its great, outspread, sharp, and irresistible horns, to which the horns of ordinary oxen were not to be compared. Hence Caesar says, when a hunter succeeded in killing one, pitfalls being the chief means of capture, he made a public exhibition of the horns as the trophies of his success, and was the wonder and praise of all who beheld.

Kenneth Fleming adds the following information.

It is now known to be a larger and fiercer type of cattle which modern versions usually term the wild ox. Famous for its size and ferocity, it was the prize of great hunters in the records of Egyptian kings like Tutmose III and Assyrian kings. It seems to have survived at least until the time of the Caesars but is now extinct...

The wild bull (rimu) is a symbol of power and rule. Balaam describes the power of Jehovah on the behalf of Israel: "He is for them like the horns of the wild ox [rimu]" (Numbers 23:22).

I suppose I was in my late thirties when I first read that the tribe of Joseph carried the symbol of the reem, the sign of the constellation we call Taurus, on their banners. This fact is declared by Josephus, the Jewish historian of the first century A.D.. There is much Biblical support to link the tribe of Joseph to this ferocious animal. When Moses pronounced a blessing upon each of the twelve tribes of Israel, he spoke the following words for the tribe of Joseph.

Deuteronomy 33:17

"As the first-born of his ox, majesty is his, and his horns are the horns of the wild ox (rimu); With them he shall push the peoples, all at once, to the ends of the earth. And those are the ten thousands of Ephraim, and those are the thousands of Manasseh."

The two horns of the reem are compared to the two tribes that descended from Joseph, Ephraim and Manasseh. Interestingly, there are two star clusters located in Taurus, an occurrence that is unique among the constellations. These star clusters are referred to as the Pleiades and the Hyades. Even as Joseph was unique among his brothers in receiving the birthright, the honor and preeminence of the firstborn son though he was in fact the eleventh son born to Jacob, and this birthright involved inheriting a double portion from his father, so too did Joseph become two tribes in Israel. The two horns of the bull, like the two clusters of stars in the constellation, represent two companies of people. In one sense they are clearly Ephraim and Manasseh. In another they are Israel and the Church. And

even as Ephraim was the younger of Joseph's sons, yet was placed before Manasseh in preeminence and became a much larger company of people, so too do we find the church, the spiritual seed of Christ surpassing in both glory and number the earlier seed chosen by God to be His peculiar people.

Having been given the name of Joseph by my parents, and decades later discovering that Taurus is the sign of the tribe of Joseph, I marveled that Yahweh had chosen for me to be born on a date when the sun was in the very midst of transiting this celestial sign. It is my judgment that too few Christians give consideration to the significance of the abundance of details that pertain to them as individuals. Yahweh has crafted each individual with great care. He has appointed each one for a particular role and calling.

As we look at the life of Joseph, the son of Jacob, we may observe how every facet of his life was ordered by Yahweh. Jacob was 91 years of age when Joseph was born to him through his favorite wife Rachel. Up until this time Rachel had been barren, but in her old age she bore Joseph, following the pattern of Sarah giving birth to Isaac late in her life. Joseph was the son of Jacob's old age, and he was especially precious to his father. Joseph reciprocated this love, having a devotion to his father that excelled that of all of his brothers.

The history of Joseph's life is laid out before us with much detail. It takes up a significant portion of the first book of the Bible. The reason for this is that Joseph is a clear type and foreshadowing of the coming One who was prophesied to save mankind from sin and death. The parallels between Joseph and the Son of God are numerous. Both men were betrayed, sold for money. Not only were both men betrayed by a man named Judah, but both after a sense died and rose again. Joseph's brothers dipped his cloak in the blood of an animal to make their father think Joseph had been slain by a wild beast. Jacob mourned bitterly for his son, years later discovering that he was alive. Both Joseph and Yahshua had their garments stripped from them. Both Joseph and Christ were wounded by those who were close to them. The second brightest star in Taurus is El Nath, meaning "wounded or slain." Both were numbered among the transgressors. Both ascended to the throne after a period of suffering. Both were made rulers and judges of mankind.

The constellation Taurus reveals Christ after His suffering. This heavenly sign is an image of a mighty, unconquerable, irresistible exalted power. The name Pleiades means "the congregation of the judge, or ruler." (Hyades means "congregated.") Joseph Seiss speaks further of the sign Taurus.

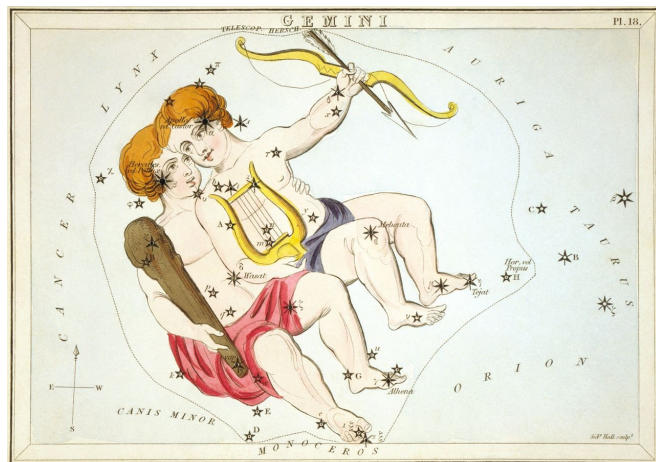
This terrific animal appears here in the intensest rage, dashing forward with a swift and impetuous energy, and with his sharp horns set as if to run through everything that comes in its way. The Egyptians called it by names signifying the Head, the Captain, the mighty Chieftain who cometh. The chief star in this sign is situated in the Bull's eye; and its name, Al Debaran, means the Captain, Leader, or Governor. The middle and hinder part of the enraged animal includes the body of the enthroned Lamb, out of which it seems to rise. It is also the direct opposite of the Scorpion, so that when it rises the Scorpions sets and disappears.

Fleming writes:

Taurus is the sign of a coming judge and of coming judgment. It is the day of vengeance of our God

(Isaiah 61:2).

Even as Taurus contains two star clusters, we are told that the Lord will return with “many thousands of His holy ones, to execute judgment upon all, and to convict all the ungodly of all their ungodly deeds which they have done in an ungodly way, and of all the harsh things which ungodly sinners have spoken against Him” (Jude 14-15). The decans associated with Taurus are Orion (the Coming Prince), Eridanus (the River of the Judge), and Auriga (the Shepherd).



Gemini

Although this constellation is often depicted as twin infants, or young boys, in Greek and Roman mythology they are great heroes. In Coptic, this constellation was called Pi-mahi, meaning “The United.” The Hebrew name Thaumim bears the same meaning. In the Dendera Zodiac a man and a woman are depicted.

The mythology of the Greeks and Romans have surely corrupted the original meaning of this sign. To them they were Castor and Pollux, both sons of Zeus. Stories told how they cleared the seas of pirates. This led to their patronage by sailors, and explains the appearance of the Twins as figureheads on sailing ships. Sailors commonly swore by them, which is the origin of the oath occasionally heard to this present day, “By Gemini” which is sometimes corrupted to “By Jiminy.”

The meaning of the names Castor and Pollux are “The Ruling Judge” and “The Laboring Sufferer.” This testimony is further observed in the two bright stars in this constellation which are identified as Apollo and Hercules. Apollo was seen as a ruler and judge, and Hercules as the laboring sufferer. This sign shows the twin nature of Christ. Not only is Yahshua the suffering servant, but He is the King of kings, and the Judge of all the earth. Numerous stars in this constellation continue this testimony of these two distinct identities of the One who is the Son of God.

The star Al Henah in the foot of Pollux means “Hurt, Wounded, or Afflicted.” Mebsuta in the leg of Castor means “Treading Underfoot.” Numerous other stars in the constellation refer to Christ as “the Branch.” The decans associated with Gemini are Lepus (the Hare, or Enemy) which appears trodden under foot, Canis Major (the Greater Dog - anciently “the Wolf”) or Sirius (the Prince), and Canis Minor (the Lesser Dog). The Egyptian zodiacs show Lepus as a serpent, and Canis Major as a hawk,

or an eagle. The Egyptian name for this latter constellation was Naz, “The Hawk,” which also means “Coming swiftly down.” In my judgment, this is the more authentic symbol for the constellation now recognized as Canis Major. The image of a dog is hardly befitting that of the Coming Savior of mankind, and Christ’s adversary, Satan, is never figured as a hare in the Bible, but rather as a serpent. Hawks are natural adversaries of snakes. I have witnessed a hawk carrying a serpent through the sky on more than one occasion.

It is worth noting that the brightest star in the heavens is Sirius, which is commonly called “the dog star.” This star is found in the constellation Canis Major, whose more original emblem was likely that of the Hawk. The name Sirius means “Prince,” and nearby is the star Mirzam meaning “Ruler.” Also in this constellation are the stars Adara, “the Glorious,” and Wezea, “the Bright, the Shining.”

Similarly, the Egyptians of long ago identified the constellation Canis Minor as Sebak, meaning “Conquering, or Victorious.” They depicted it with the body of a man and the head of a hawk. Kenneth Fleming states that the very earliest name found in any of the zodiacs for this constellation is Procyon, meaning “Redeemer, Savior.” Thus, as in the symbols of the Twins, we have two dogs which are actually two hawks, symbolizing the dual nature of Christ as the Prince and Glorious Ruler of creation, as well as being the Savior and Redeemer of mankind.



Cancer

The message of this constellation and its associated decans appears to be that of the people of God held fast. It prophesies of the saints held securely in the safety of their union with Christ. As with many of the zodiacal images, there are varied depictions and names associated with the constellations of Cancer, but a central theme is very much discernible. A crab is noted by its two great claws. The claws are used for grasping and holding something firmly. When I was 15 and 16 years old, I worked for a time with my father running a crab boat on the Georgia coast. We had crab traps scattered throughout a section of the Atlantic intracoastal waterway, and filled up seven 50 gallon drums each day with blue crabs harvested from the Georgia waters. Working with crabs, I learned very quickly to stay out of reach of their claws. When they grabbed you they pinched very hard, and would not let go.

The Egyptians show a scarab in place of the crab. The scarab was a type of dung beetle renowned for rolling a large ball of dung along the ground. The female scarab lays a single egg in the ball, and hides it in a burrow it constructs in the ground until the young emerges from the ball. Although the Egyptians developed many fables relating to this sacred insect, comparing it to the god Khepri rolling the sun across the sky, and attributing to the scarab the power of resurrection, one can discern the germ of thought linking this symbol to the idea of holding fast one's offspring in the act of the beetle holding fast to the ball it moves along the ground.

The name Cancer stems from a Latin root meaning "to hold," or "to circle." All of the constellations in this sign convey some message of Christ holding firmly onto His people. The Egyptians referred to this sign as Klaria, meaning "Cattlefolds." The Arabic name for it is Al Sartan, "Who Holds, or Binds." The Hebrew name was Ausar. This word is used in the following verse.

Genesis 49:11

He **binds** (ausar) his foal to the vine, and his donkey's colt to the choice vine...

The brightest star in Cancer is Tegmine. The name of this star means "Holding." Another star is called in the Hebrew Acubene, "Sheltering, or Hiding Place." Other stars are Ma'alaph, "assembled thousands," and Al Himarein, "the kids, or lambs."

Speaking of the decans of Cancer, Kenneth Fleming writes:

Ursa Minor is widely known as the Little Bear and is paired with Ursa Major, the Great Bear. They are also known as the Big and Little Dippers, though this is very modern. Even the idea of the bears goes no further back than the Greeks. The bear symbol does not appear at all in the old zodiacs of Chaldea, Persia, Egypt, or India... The bear idea seems to have come from a confusion of words. An old Persian word for bear is similar to the word for sheepfold, and the Greeks appear to have mistaken one word for the other, according to Bullinger.

Bullinger explains this mix-up in the following way.



Here we come to another grievous mistake, or ignorant perversion of the truth, as shown in the ancient names of these two constellations...

No one who had ever seen a bear would have called attention to a tail, such as no bear ever had, by

placing in its tip the most important, wondrous, and mysterious Polar Star, the central star of the heavens, round which all others revolve...

The primitive truth that there were two, or a pair of constellations is preserved; and that of these two, one is larger, and the other smaller. But what were they? We have the clue to the answer in the name of the brightest star of the larger constellation, which is called Dubheh. Now Dubheh means "a herd of animals." In Hebrew, Dohver, is a fold; and hence in Chaldee it meant "wealth." The Hebrew Dohveh means "rest or security"; and certainly there is not much of either to be found or enjoyed with bears!...

Here are the two Sheepfolds then; the Greater fold, and Lesser; and here is the rest and security which the flocks will find therein.

But in Hebrew there is a word very similar in sound, though not in spelling - dohv, which means "a bear!" So we find that in Arabic dub; Persian deeb and dob. We can see, therefore, how the Hebrew Dohver, a fold, and Dohv, a bear, were confused; and how the Arabic Dubah, cattle, might easily have been mistaken by the Greeks, and understood as a bear.

The Pleiades and Hyades, two congregations of Yahweh's people observed in Taurus, find their parallel in the Greater and Lesser Sheepfolds of Cancer. It seems fitting that as we near the end of the celestial prophecy that we find a foretelling of the security of those whom the Seed of the woman would save from the tyranny of the great dragon and serpent of old. Yahshua testified:

John 10:27-29

"My sheep hear My voice, and I know them, and they follow Me; and I give aionian life to them, and they shall never perish; and no one shall snatch them out of My hand. My Father, who has given them to Me, is greater than all; and no one is able to snatch them out of the Father's hand."

In the final decan for this constellation, we observe a continuation of this theme. The final sign is Argo (the Ship). Some have suggested that this is none other than the ark of Noah serving as a symbol of those whom God has saved from destruction. Significantly, in Kircher's Egyptian Planisphere Argo is represented by two galleys (Egyptian ships) who have at the prow the figure of a Ram, and one of the ships has a fish's tail at the stern. Of further significance, the constellation Argo is immense in size. This is a fitting corollary to the testimony of John in the book of Revelation. After recounting the number of the overcomers, 12,000 from each of the twelve tribes of Israel, John writes:

Revelation 7:9

After these things I looked, and behold, a great multitude, which no one could count, from every nation and all tribes and peoples and tongues, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, clothed in white robes, and palm branches were in their hands...

So here are two companies. One small, and one great in size. They are both secure as they stand in the presence of Yahweh and of the Lamb. William Banks writes:

Argo graphically represents the joyous, victorious completion of that journey and mission as the

travelers return home, to enter that harbor of safety where no storm can touch them. The ship and its company of passengers are safely at rest in their homeport, with all the dangers of their journey behind them, all trials completed and the victory won.

Seeing that Yahweh has given such a promise of hope to His people in His word, it should not be surprising to find the same testimony written in the heavens.

Isaiah 51:11

So the ransomed of Yahweh will return, and come with joyful shouting to Zion; And everlasting joy will be on their heads. They will obtain gladness and joy, and sorrow and sighing will flee away.



Leo

We have arrived at the last constellation and sign of the zodiac. The heavenly testimony ends on a triumphant note after having testified of the labors, struggle, rejection, and sorrow that precedes. It is highly significant that in the Egyptian Zodiac the Lion is depicted as treading upon a serpent. It is amazing that the message of Yahweh's redemption through the labors of His Son remain visible in the Egyptian Plaisphere, but the understanding had been lost. Raymond Capt writes:

All the stars in Leo magnify and exalt Him as the Coming Conqueror and Judge: the brightest star (on the ecliptic) is called "Regulus," meaning "treading under foot..." The next star, in the tip of the tail, is named Denebola, meaning, "the Judge," or "Lord who cometh." The next star (in the mane) is called "Al Giebhah" (Arabic) meaning, "the Exaltation." Another star (on the hind part of the back) is called "Zosma," which means "Shining Forth."

Even as the last book of the Bible reveals Christ as the conquering King, seated upon a glorious throne, or riding forth to battle the dragon and his armies, leading a magnificent company of shining ones, we find that the scroll of the heavens has been declaring from the fourth day of creation the ultimate triumph of the Son of God. The obedient Son who humbled Himself and suffered as a meek

Lamb, will return again as a mighty conqueror having all power and all authority. His enemies will not be able to stand before the spectacle of His glorious appearing.

One of the decans of Leo is Hydra. Appropriately, this incarnation of the serpent of old is seen fleeing. Additionally there is Crater (The Cup) signifying the cup of the Lord's indignation.

Psalms 75:8

For in the hand of the Lord there is a cup [of His wrath], and the wine foams and is red, well mixed; and He pours out from it, and all the wicked of the earth must drain it and drink its dregs.

[Amplified Bible]

The final decan of Leo, and the last constellation of the heavenly testimony, is Corvus (The Raven) grasping the body of the fleeing serpent with its claws and tearing the flesh of the serpent with its beak. The raven, too, is a Biblical symbol of the vengeance of the Lord.

Proverbs 30:17

The eye that mocks a father, and scorns a mother, the ravens of the valley will pick it out, and the young eagles will eat it.

Satan is a rebel and a mocker. He deserves nothing better than the judgment due a mocker. The adversary's power will be broken. As Martin Luther wrote in his famous hymn *A Mighty Fortress is Our God*:

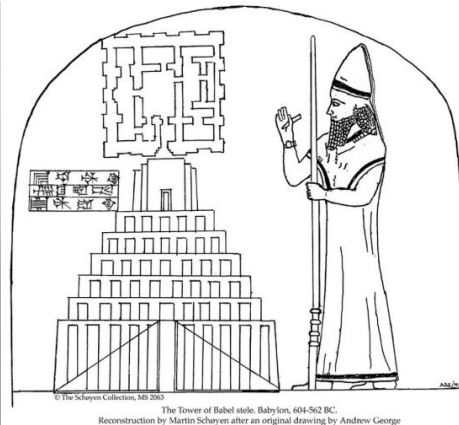
*And though this world, with devils filled, should threaten to undo us,
We will not fear, for God hath willed His truth to triumph through us:
The Prince of Darkness grim, we tremble not for him;
His rage we can endure, for lo, his doom is sure,
One little word shall fell him.*

Revelation 20:10

And the devil who deceived them was thrown into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are also; and they will be tormented day and night to the age of the ages.

We see that the message of the heavens speaks the same glorious testimony as that of the Bible. They have the same Author. The Creator who formed the stars and leads them forth has established a divine plan of the ages. It has been moving inexorably forward, and despite all the lies and protestations of Satan and those in league with him, the final chapter has already been written. The story cannot be changed. Yahweh has spoken and His word is final, irresistible, and certain.

Nimrod, Babel, and its Tower



Tower of Babel Stele From Time of Nebuchadnezzar

As we continue to look at the ancient foundations of human history one may ask, “What is the benefit of doing so?” It is not uncommon for a school age child to question the value of their history lessons. They may see little practical benefit for their daily life. How will the study of history help them to get a good paying job, find a spouse, acquire the house of their dreams, or help them to deal with the issues of everyday life?

Such disregard for the value of historical studies should not be found among Christians. A brief moment of contemplation will reveal that the Bible is itself a historical book. The most recent of its writings are two millennia old. The oldest of its writings are between 3,000 - 4,000 years old. The Bible provides an account of Yahweh’s historical dealings with mankind, beginning with the first parents of the human race. Yahweh evidently thought it important that we have an accurate record of man’s history, one that is told from His perspective. The Holy Spirit inspired men of old to record each detail in the Bible for our benefit, that we might walk in wisdom and understanding.

You may ask, “How will understanding ancient Babel aid me as a disciple of Christ today?” The answer is found in recognizing that Babel, or Babylon as it became known, has never ceased to exist. It continues to this day. Not only is this city named in the first book of the Old Testament, but it appears in the last book of the New Testament as well.

Babylon is the first city to be named in the Bible. It is associated with rebellion against God, which is why Yahweh confused the language of men there and scattered them throughout the earth. Babylon has always stood as a symbol of Satan’s kingdom in the same way Zion stands as a symbol of Yahweh’s kingdom. In Genesis we read of the founding of Babel, but now at the end of this age we are observing Babylon come to a fulness of maturity. Her abominations, and rebellion against God, are more in evidence today than at any time in man’s history. For this reason, it is of value for us to turn our attention to Babel, man’s first city, and discover aright the history of that infamous place.

There is a connection between the zodiac we have been studying and ancient Babel. It was at Babel that the stellar prophecy of Yahweh was distorted into an idolatrous religion. At Babel the holy was made profane. Now the entire world is filled with the spiritual corruption whose inception was at

Babel. Many ignorant men and women, not understanding the true history of man and his interactions with Yahweh, have imagined vain things. Some assert that there are religions older than that set forth in the Bible which recognizes Yahweh as the Creator of all things. These religions ultimately trace back to Babel, revealing that they are merely corruptions, and a departure from, the true faith of Adam and his descendants. Those who account the mystery religions of Babylon as of greater antiquity than Judaism or Christianity base their claims upon a misapprehension of history.

When I was in my early twenties I attended a local college in my home state of Georgia. During my first year of classes I was required to take a psychology course. The man teaching the course was an atheist and many of his lectures attempted to prove to students that Christianity had borrowed its major beliefs and teachings from earlier religions, particularly Mithraism. The professor claimed that many of the beliefs of Christianity had been present for centuries in earlier religions. Among the things this professor suggested Christianity borrowed from earlier pagan religions was the teaching of a divine Trinity, the use of the cross as a religious symbol, the idea of a blood sacrifice, and even the teaching of the virgin birth.

The professor was wrong in suggesting that New Testament Christianity had culled its ideas from earlier pagan religions, a matter I pointed out to him in a carefully researched and documented letter. He never once mentioned the New Testament writer's frequent quotations of the Old Testament. Rather than acknowledge the very evident fact that Christianity's roots lay in the Hebrew faith of the patriarchs and prophets, he argued for a pagan origination. It is easily demonstrated that every major tenet of the New Testament is foreshadowed and prophesied in the Old Testament. Moses wrote the Pentateuch, the first five books of the Bible, 1,500 years B.C.. This date for the first writings of the Old Testament exceed that of the most ancient date postulated for the origin of Mithraism. Consequently, it is absurd to reject a Hebraic origin of Christianity in favor of a Mithraic one.

My college professor lacked carefulness in his claims. He was apparently parroting the arguments he had heard from other sources, but had spent little time seeking to establish the veracity of the arguments he was setting forth. An Internet search on the words "Mithraism and Christianity" will provide links to many websites that are promulgating similar views to those set forth by my professor thirty years ago. One will find an equal number of Christian apologetics websites that are refuting the claims that Christianity borrowed its teachings from Mithraism.

Despite the apparent overreach and misstatement of my professor, a valid point is raised in his arguments. Many of the teachings, customs, and symbols of Christianity are found in pagan religions that predate the Christian era. One of the reasons for this is that Christianity as it is practiced today has borrowed many customs, symbols, and beliefs from paganism. The church has departed from true apostolic Christianity as set forth in the New Testament of the Bible. Many Christians have never taken the time to examine current church practice and doctrines to differentiate between that which is founded upon the teaching of Yahshua and His apostles and that which results from the practice of syncretism (the act of embracing, and seeking to reconcile, pagan doctrines, customs, and symbols with Christianity).

Examples of syncretism are the observance of the birth of Christ on December 25th at the time of the Winter Solstice; the observance of Easter, the very name of the holiday being the same as the goddess

of fertility otherwise known as Eostre, Ishtar, Ashtoreth and Astarte; the observance of Lent; the adoption of Sunday as the Christian Sabbath; the practice of placing obelisks (steeple) on church houses, and many other such departures from the teaching of Christ and His apostles.



Obelisks



Church Steeples

When all of these things are shown to predate Christianity by centuries, and are plainly demonstrated to be artifacts of pagan religion, the believer who has not separated the faith of the original disciples from the apostate forms of Christianity present today is left with the troubling conclusion that Christianity has borrowed heavily from the very pagan religions it condemns. Christianity's two most revered holidays are based upon the astronomical observations of Babylonian sun worship, the first occurring at the time of the Winter Solstice (Christmas), and the latter occurring at the time of the Spring Equinox (Easter). Astonishingly, the church has even preserved the name of the pagan goddess of fertility in the observance of its Spring celebration. The name Easter is a form of the Germanic Eostre, the Babylonian Ishtar, the Aramean Astarte, and the Canaanite Ashtoreth who is named as one of the false deities worshiped by pagan cultures in the Old Testament, and which the Israelites so often embraced at the displeasure of Yahweh.

I Kings 11:5

For Solomon went after Ashtoreth the goddess of the Sidonians...

Christians may protest that Easter actually has its origin in the Hebrew Passover, but the fact of the matter is that this Christian high holy day is an unrighteous merging of the holy and the profane. Baskets of grass and bonnets of flowers, colored eggs, and Easter bunnies are all symbols of fertility that are traceable back to the pagan worship of the Babylonian goddess of fertility, the Queen of Heaven. Arising early to participate in a "Sunrise service" on "Easter" morning is equally pagan in

origin. The New Testament reveals no practice of Christ, His apostles, or the early disciples observing holidays at the Winter Solstice and Spring Equinox, but pagan religions have done so from ancient times. The date of the Jewish Passover is determined in an entirely different manner from that of Easter, and it has distinct rites and symbols that are not present in Easter traditions.

Though the Bible does not state plainly when Christ was born, clues in the gospels point to an Autumn birth that likely occurred during the Feast of Tabernacles. Early Christians in Rome began celebrating the birth of the Son of God in December to appease current practice among sun worshippers of holding a great celebration at the time of the Winter solstice. The Romans worshiped the sun under the name Sol Invictus, “the unconquered sun.” In late December they observed Dies Natalis Solis Invicti, a holiday that translates as “the birthday of the unconquered sun.”



Sol Invictus Stele, circa 150-200 A.D.

Note the sun rays circling the head of Sol Invictus. A female moon goddess can be seen next to Sol Invictus, bearing a crescent moon on her head. The similarity between Sol Invictus and the Statue of Liberty standing in New York’s harbor is not coincidental. The Statue of Liberty was a gift from the Freemasons of France to the United States. Freemasonry is one of many human institutions that have kept alive the ancient Babylonian teachings, symbols, and customs.

If we strip away all the pagan trappings that have been incorporated into Christianity in the past 2,000 years, we will find that the customs, traditions, and doctrines of the apostles bear little resemblance to what is observed in Christianity today. Nevertheless, there are still basic tenets of the apostolic faith that did appear in pagan religions that pre-date the New Testament by centuries. Following are some examples.

Divine Trinity

One of the most ancient civilizations that arose in the Fertile Crescent of Mesopotamia was Sumeria. Historian H.S. Hooke informs us that over 4,000 years ago the Sumerians believed in a divine trinity. Anu was the great god of heaven, the “Father,” and the “King of the Gods.” Enlil was the creator god and god of the earth. Ea was the god of the waters and “lord of wisdom.” One can perceive some parallels to the God of the Bible in this Sumerian trinity. Yahweh is the “Father” and His throne is in the heavens. His Son, Yahshua created all things. The Holy Spirit reveals to man the mind, or “wisdom” of God, and the first mention of the Holy Spirit in the Bible speaks of Him as brooding over the waters of the earth.

The Sumerians were conquered by the Assyrians, and later by the Neo-Babylonians. The concept of a trinity of gods continued with them.

The ancient Babylonians recognised the doctrine of a trinity, or three persons in one god - as appears from a composite god with three heads forming part of their mythology, and the use of the equilateral triangle, also, as an emblem of such trinity in unity...

[Source: Thomas Dennis Rock, *The Mystical Woman and the Cities of the Nations*, 1867, pp. 22-23]

Alexander Hislop, wrote the following in his book *The Two Babylons*.

In the unity of that one, Only God of the Babylonians there were three persons, and to symbolize that doctrine of the Trinity, they employed... the equilateral triangle, just as it is well known the Romish Church does at this day."

In ancient Babylon the original triad of gods appears to have been Nimrod, his wife Semiramis, and Semiramis' son Tammuz who was declared to be Nimrod reborn. Similarly, we find a divine trinity in Egypt. Various Egyptian deities have been linked together. Isis, Horus, and Seb are suggested by some to be the origin of the Roman Catholic symbol "IHS." Osiris, Isis, and Horus are also linked together, as are Amun, Re, and Ptah. In Greece Zeus, Poseidon, and Adonis formed a triad of gods, and in Rome it was Jupiter, Neptune, and Pluto. The Phoenicians worshipped Ulomus, Ulosuros and Eliun. In Germanic nations there was the trinity of Woden, Thor and Frigga (or Freya). In India we also find the divine triad of Vishnu, Brahma, and Shiva. Many other examples from other cultures and religions could be cited.

Virgin and Child



Babylonian Semiramis and Tammuz

Indian Devka and Krishna

Indian Isi and Iswara

Egyptian Isis and Horus

Roman Catholic Mary and Jesus

The prototypical pagan image of mother and child is that of the Babylonian Semiramis and Tammuz. After Semiramis' husband Nimrod was slain, he was declared to have ascended to heaven where he became the sun-god. Semiramis claimed to have been impregnated by the rays of the sun-god, giving birth to Tammuz who was fantastically claimed to be Nimrod reborn. In this we see an early type of a woman becoming pregnant without human intercourse, bearing a divine seed. This concept of a mother and her divine child has been present in many religions throughout the world. Alexander Hislop writes:

The Babylonians in their popular religion supremely worshiped a goddess mother and a son who was represented in pictures and images as an infant or a child in his mother's arms. From Babylon this worship of mother and child spread to the ends of the earth. In Egypt, the mother and child were worshiped under the names Isis and Osiris. In India, even to this day, as Isi and Iswara; in Asia as Cybele and Deoius; in pagan Rome as Fortuna and Jupiter-puer "Jupiter the boy"; in Greece as Ceres, the Great Mother, with the babe at her breast, or as Irene, the goddess of Peace, with the boy Plutus in her arms, and even in Thibet, in China and Japan...

The pagan worship of a divine mother and child are mentioned in the Bible. The woman bears many names, at times being referred to as "the queen of heaven." This is a title the Roman Catholics ascribe to Mary, the mother of Christ. Perhaps the most ancient name for this divine mother's son among pagan religions is that of Tammuz.

Jeremiah 7:18

The children gather wood, and the fathers kindle the fire, and the women knead dough to make cakes for *the queen of heaven...*

Ezekiel 8:14-16

Then He brought me to the entrance of the gate of Yahweh's house which was toward the north; and behold, women were sitting there *weeping for Tammuz*. He said to me, "Do you see this, son of man? Yet you will see still greater abominations than these." Then He brought me into the inner court of Yahweh's house. And behold, at the entrance to the temple of Yahweh, between the porch and the altar, were about twenty-five men with their backs to the temple of Yahweh and their faces toward the east; and *they were prostrating themselves eastward toward the sun*.

I believe many Christians in reading the Old Testament accounts of the idolatrous practices in which God's chosen people engaged, perceive the actions of the Israelites to be an outrageous departure from the true, pure, and holy worship of Yahweh. Yet, few Christians perceive how this idolatrous practice continues in the church today. Babylon continues to spread its leaven into the religious life of God's chosen people. Ezekiel's mention of the women of Israel weeping for Tammuz finds its modern parallel in the Roman Catholic observance known as Lent that begins on Ash Wednesday. Placing ashes on one's head has been a sign of mourning from ancient times. When the ashes are applied in the form of a cross, or letter "t," they are duplicating the ancient symbol for Tammuz.



(Note the symbol on the back of the priest's garment is also the symbol of Tammuz.)

Nowhere in the New Testament do we read of Christ's apostles or the early church engaging in such rituals. These customs entered into the church through the Roman Catholic practice of syncretism. When Emperor Constantine declared Rome to be a Christian empire, it was determined that some accommodation had to be made for the millions of pagan citizens who were disingenuously declared to be Christians. Rome's solution was to "Christianize" the ancient pagan practices, providing alternative explanations that made them less objectionable to true Christians. Instead of observing the birth of the unconquerable sun on December 25th, the church would observe the birth of the Son of God on the same date. Instead of forty days of mourning for Tammuz leading up to the observance of Easter at the Spring Equinox, the church would observe a period of forty days of sober reflection preceding the commemoration of the death, burial, and resurrection of Christ.

There existed 2,000 years ago, as there exists today, significant numbers of professing Christians who justify the practice of syncretism. Even when the pagan origins of their traditions and symbols are pointed out, they cling tenaciously to them. Nevertheless, this unrighteous merging of the holy and the profane is a practice that Yahweh condemns. Speaking of the role of the Levitical priests, the prophet Ezekiel recorded the following words of God.

Ezekiel 44:23

"Moreover, they shall teach My people the difference between the holy and the profane, and cause them to discern between the unclean and the clean."

The apostles of the New Testament also commanded all Christians to separate themselves from idolatrous practices and all that pertains to Satan.

II Corinthians 6:14-18

Do not be bound together with unbelievers; for what partnership have righteousness and lawlessness, or what fellowship has light with darkness? Or what harmony has Christ with Belial, or what has a believer in common with an unbeliever? Or what agreement has the temple of God with idols? For we are the temple of the living God; just as God said, "I will dwell in them and walk among them; And I will be their God, and they shall be My people. Therefore, come out from their midst and be separate," says the Lord. "And do not touch what is unclean; And I will welcome you. And I will be a father to you, and you shall be sons and daughters to Me," says the Lord Almighty.

When Christians condemn the Israelites for their idolatry, while practicing the same rites and customs, embracing the same symbols of sun worship, and observing holidays on the same dates as the pagan religions, they are either blind, or they are guilty of justifying what God condemns. Is it any wonder that in the last book of the Bible we find the Spirit of God calling Christians to come out of Babylon? Babylon has overtaken the church.

Revelation 18:4

And I heard another voice from heaven, saying, "Come out of [Babylon], my people, that you may not participate in her sins and that you may not receive of her plagues..."

For more on this subject, see the series titled *Syncretism*.

<http://www.heart4god.ws/index.htm/files/Syncretism.pdf>

Once a Christian separates themselves from the corruptions of Babylon that have infiltrated the church in the last 2,000 years, they will find that there are far fewer similarities between Christian doctrines and practice and ancient false religions. It is much more difficult for college and university professors to make a case for a pagan origin of Christianity once believers separate between the holy and the vile. Nevertheless, some basic tenets of Christianity can be found in ancient religions going as far back as Babel. How is this possible?

The preceding chapters of this writing have demonstrated that Yahweh has from ancient times made known His plan for the redemption of mankind. The first communication of the divine plan for man's salvation was spoken to Adam and Eve immediately after they had sinned. Yahweh informed them that a Seed would come forth from the woman that would crush the serpent's head, signifying a destruction of Satan's authority and power over mankind. We observed that further specifics of God's plan were revealed to have been communicated to Adam and his descendants, for Abel's offering of lambs of the flock as a sacrifice to Yahweh reveal that the principle of a substitutionary sacrifice had been made known by God. We are told that Abel's offering was one of "faith" (Hebrews 11:4). Faith always arises out from a word of God (Romans 10:17, Galatians 3:2, 5).

Furthermore, in the preceding chapters evidence was provided to substantiate that the stars of the heavens themselves have been pouring forth speech night after night, declaring the glories of God from the very foundation of the earth. The gospel message has been displayed in the constellations of the heavens from the beginning of man's history. This by itself is sufficient to account for the appearance of various Christian doctrines and symbols appearing in pagan religions from ancient times. If the body of Christ would separate itself from idolatrous practices, and begin to teach the knowledge of the great antiquity of the gospel message, young believers would be better prepared to resist attacks on their faith that are inevitable in a world under the dominion and influence of Satan.

The corruption of the prophetic message of the gospel began at once after the flood of Noah's day. Noah was a righteous man, pleasing to God. Sin, however, is ever restless, and it did not take long before Noah's descendants began to fall into that same error that so marked mankind before the flood. The apostle Paul speaks of man's descent into vain thoughts and sinful behavior in the following passage.

Romans 1:18-25

For God's [holy] wrath and indignation are revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who in their wickedness repress and hinder the truth and make it inoperative. For that which is known about God is evident to them and made plain in their inner consciousness, because God [Himself] has shown it to them. For ever since the creation of the world His invisible nature and attributes, that is, His eternal power and divinity, have been made intelligible and clearly discernible in and through the things that have been made (His handiworks). So [men] are without excuse [altogether without any defense or justification], [Psalms 19:1-4.] Because when they knew and recognized Him as God, they did not honor and glorify Him as God or give Him thanks. But instead they became futile and godless in their thinking [with vain imaginings, foolish reasoning, and stupid speculations] and their senseless minds were darkened. Claiming to be wise, they became fools [professing to be smart, they made simpletons of themselves]. And by them the glory and majesty and excellence of the immortal God were exchanged for and represented by images, resembling mortal man and birds and beasts and reptiles. Therefore God gave them up in the lusts of their [own] hearts to sexual impurity, to the dishonoring of their bodies among themselves [abandoning them to the degrading power of sin], because they exchanged the truth of God for a lie and worshiped and served the creature rather than the Creator, Who is blessed forever!

[Amplified Bible]

Many of the images found in the Zodiac were corrupted into objects of worship. Did not the Israelites elicit the wrath of God as they formed the image of a golden calf in the wilderness, an act repeated some centuries later when Jeroboam constructed graven images of a golden calf at Dan and Bethel? How many nations have worshiped images of the dragon, another symbol found among the constellations? Yet the most insidious and intractable corruptions are those that relate to the mother and child pictured in Virgo, and in Coma. The virgin that gives birth has been repeatedly corrupted, beginning with Semiramis and Tammuz, and spreading through all the nations. It is observed most profoundly today in the idolatrous Roman Catholic veneration of Mary as the queen of heaven. Do not be deceived, brothers and sisters. Nowhere in the Bible do we find any justification for Mary worship. When some foolish woman among the multitudes who thronged the Son of God first proposed that Mary be venerated, Yahshua cut short such a suggestion, exposing it to be contrary to the will of God.

Luke 11:27-28

One of the women in the crowd raised her voice, and said to Him, "Blessed is the womb that bore You, and the breasts at which You nursed." But He said, "On the contrary, blessed are those who hear the word of God, and observe it."

It is little wonder that John was astonished when he was shown a vision of the Great Harlot of Babylon, the corrupt church that would arise to replace apostolic Christianity. It must have come as a shock and tremendous grief to see Babylon overtake and supplant a pure devotion to Christ.



This is Babylon!

Let us return to the origin of this idolatrous practice among the descendants of Noah after the flood. The 10th chapter of Genesis records the table of nations, those families of the earth that descended from Noah's three sons. Significantly, the first kingdom, and the first city, are mentioned in this passage, being linked to a descendant of Ham whose name was Nimrod. (Ham was the son of Noah who exposed the nakedness of his father when Noah had gotten drunk on wine and uncovered himself inside his tent. Ham had four sons, and Noah specifically cursed the lineage of Ham's son Canaan. Nimrod was a grandson of Ham, but he was not of the lineage of Canaan.)

Genesis 10:1-12

Now these are the records of the generations of Shem, Ham, and Japheth, the sons of Noah; and sons were born to them after the flood... And the sons of Ham were Cush and Mizraim and Put and Canaan. And the sons of Cush were Seba and Havilah and Sabtah and Raamah and Sabteca... Now Cush became the father of Nimrod; he became a mighty one on the earth. He was a mighty hunter before Yahweh; therefore it is said, "Like Nimrod a mighty hunter before Yahweh." And the beginning of his kingdom was Babel and Erech and Accad and Calneh, in the land of Shinar. From that land he went forth into Assyria, and built Nineveh and Rehoboth-Ir and Calah, and Resen between Nineveh and Calah; that is the great city.

Because Nimrod is directly linked to Babel, that city that has become a symbol of defiance against Yahweh, standing in direct opposition to Zion, the city of God, it is well that we investigate further the identity of this man. Some have supposed that the information provided about Nimrod in this passage is offered as a mark of praise for a mighty man among the descendants of Noah. This interpretation has a number of problems, however. One of them is Nimrod's connection to Babel. Babel/Babylon is everywhere recognized in Scripture as a wicked city and a symbol of Satan's earthly rule. It was at Babel that mankind gathered together in defiance of Yahweh to build themselves a tower and a city to make a name for themselves, and to keep from being scattered upon the face of the earth. This was in contradiction to Yahweh's command to Noah and his sons to "fill the earth" (Genesis 9:1).

It is significant that the first mention of a human kingdom is in reference to Nimrod and to Babel. Until that time all men had been free of human rulers, knowing only the government and rule of God.

Now they had a man to rule over them, and in this is a manifestation of the first anti-christ. The word anti-christ means “in place of Christ.” An anti-christ is an usurper. It is one who takes upon himself a role that God occupies. In becoming a ruler over other men, Nimrod was usurping God’s role. Those who submitted to Nimrod’s rule were casting aside Yahweh’s rule over their lives. We see this principle explained in the days when Israel demanded a king.

I Samuel 8:4-9

Then all the elders of Israel gathered together and came to Samuel at Ramah; and they said to him, “Behold, you have grown old, and your sons do not walk in your ways. Now appoint a king for us to judge us like all the nations.” But the thing was displeasing in the sight of Samuel when they said, “Give us a king to judge us.” And Samuel prayed to Yahweh. And Yahweh said to Samuel, “Listen to the voice of the people in regard to all that they say to you, for they have not rejected you, but **they have rejected Me from being king over them**. Like all the deeds which they have done since the day that I brought them up from Egypt even to this day - in that **they have forsaken Me** and served other gods - so they are doing to you also.”

When the Bible states that Nimrod was a mighty hunter before Yahweh, the actual wording states that Nimrod was a mighty hunter **in the face of Yahweh**. The Jewish rabbis understood the phrase “in the face of Yahweh” to mean “in defiance of Yahweh.” It is no contradiction to suggest that Nimrod’s act of establishing his own rule over man was an act of rejection and defiance in the face of God. A further clue regarding Nimrod’s rebellion against Yahweh is found in a suggested meaning of his name. Although the etymology of the name Nimrod is much debated, one possible derivation that I have found of interest is the following.

In 1920, J.D. Prince also suggested a possible link between the Lord (Ni) of Marad and Nimrod. He mentioned how Dr. Kraeling was now inclined to connect Nimrod historically with Lugal-Banda, a mythological king mentioned in Poebel, Historical Texts, 1914, whose seat was at the city Marad.
[Source: <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nimrod>]

The name Ni-Marad is translated “Lord of Marad.” Marad is much more than the name of an ancient Chaldean city. The Hebrew word for “rebel” is “marad.”

Numbers 14:9

Only do not **rebel** (Hebrew - marad) against Yahweh...

James Strong provides the following definition for this Hebrew word.

OT:4775

marad (maw-rad'); a primitive root; to rebel:

This Hebrew word that is used as a verb in Number 14:9 is also used elsewhere as a noun.

Ezekiel 20:38

And I will purge out from among you **the rebels** (Hebrew - marad), and them that transgress against me...

Bible teacher and author Donald Gray Barnhouse offered the following translation of the verses found in Genesis that relate to Nimrod.

Cush begat Nimrod; he began to be a mighty despot in the land. He was an arrogant tyrant, defiant before the face of the Lord; wherefore it is said, Even as Nimrod, the mighty despot, haughty before the face of the Lord. And the homeland of his empire was Babel, then Erech, then Accad, and Calneh, in the land of Shinar. From this base he invaded the kingdom of Asshur, and built Nineveh, and Rehoboth-Ir, and Calah, and Resin between Nineveh and Calah. These make up one great city.
[Source: *The Invisible War*, Donald Gray Barnhouse.]

There is much room for interpretation in this passage describing Nimrod. The word that is translated as “mighty” in our English Bibles is the Hebrew “gibbor.” This word is used in a wide range of applications. The giants who were born as the spawn of fallen angels cohabiting with the daughters of men are described as “gibborim,” a plural form of the same word. Some have suggested that Nimrod himself was a giant, and he appears as such in some ancient mythologies. The following image is found in the book *The Chaldean Account of Genesis*. It is an ancient depiction of Gilgamesh, whom archaeologist and historian George Smith referred to as Izdubar, for he stated that he had not yet phonetically deciphered the Chaldean name he found on the pottery fragments from ancient Nineveh. George Smith was convinced that Izdubar/Gilgamesh was the same as Nimrod of the Bible.



According to this ancient depiction, the figure of Izdubar/Gilgamesh/Nimrod holding a full grown lion would be approximately 20 feet in height. Some have suggested that the Biblical statement that Nimrod began to be a “gibbor” allows for an interpretation of Nimrod as a giant. This, however, strikes me as dubious, for the giants were ALWAYS descendants of angels and women cohabiting. In contrast, we are told that Nimrod is a direct descendant of Noah through his son Ham, and Ham’s son Cush. His lineage is completely human. It is certainly possible that Nimrod was a large and powerful man, but we have no indication that he was a descendant of the Nephilim (fallen ones).

George Smith provides the following evidence to support his belief that the Chaldean Izdubar/Gilgamesh was based upon the historic person the Bible names as Nimrod.

The centre of the empire of Izdubar appears to have lain in the region of Shinar, at Babylon, Akkad, Erech, and Nipur, and agrees with the site of the kingdom of Nimrod, according to Genesis X. 8, 9, 10, where we read : "And Cush begat Nimrod: he began to be a mighty one in the earth. He was a mighty hunter before the Lord: wherefore it is said, even as Nimrod the mighty hunter before the Lord. And the beginning of his kingdom was Babel, and Erech, and Accad, and Calneh, in the land of Shinar." All these cities were ultimately within the dominion of Izdubar, whose character as hunter, leader, and king corresponds with that of Nimrod, and the name of Shamas, or Samas the sungod, who is most probably represented as his father, may read Kusu (Cush), the same name as that of the father of Nimrod...

The two passages already quoted from Genesis afford the only reliable information with respect to Nimrod outside the cuneiform inscriptions. According to Genesis Nimrod was a "son of Cush," that is a Cushite, or Ethiopian, and he distinguished himself as a mighty hunter, his prowess being so great that his name passed into a proverb. He afterwards became king, commencing his reign in Shinar or Babylonia, and still later extended his empire into Assyria, where he laid the foundations of that state by the foundation of the four leading cities, Nineveh, Calah, Rehobothair, and Resen. The fame of Nimrod is again alluded to in the Bible, where Assyria is called the land of Nimrod...

I was entirely in the dark until I discovered the Deluge tablet in 1872, I then conjectured that the hero whose name I provisionally called Izdubar was the Nimrod of the Bible, a conjecture which I have strengthened by fresh evidence from time to time...

My own opinion that he was the hero I have hitherto called Izdubar was first founded on the discovery that he formed the centre of the national historical poetry, and was the hero of Babylonian cuneiform history, just as Nimrod is stated to have been in the later traditions.

I subsequently found that he agreed exactly in character with Nimrod; he was a giant hunter, according to the cuneiform legends, who contended with and destroyed the lion, tiger, leopard, and wild bull or buffalo, animals the most formidable in the chase in any country. He ruled first in Babylonia over the region which from other sources we know to have been the centre of Nimrod's kingdom. He extended his dominion to the Armenian mountains, the boundary of his late conquests according to tradition, and one principal scene of his exploits and triumphs was the city of Erech, which, according to Genesis, was the second capital of Nimrod.

[Source: *The Chaldean Account of Genesis*, George Smith]

The reader at this point may remark that there is a great difference between the words "mighty hunter" and "mighty despot." What is the proper rendering of the Genesis account of Nimrod? In Hebrew the words are "gibbor tsayid." The Hebrew word gibbor indicates that which is mighty in a wide range of applications. The word is used to describe the giant offspring of angels and women, as well as descendants of Adam who were mighty in battle or strength. The word is even applied to God, for He too is mighty. The Hebrew word tsayid is understood to relate to the process of catching or killing a wild animal (or figuratively man). It expresses the idea of lying in wait as a huntsman would in

pursuing his quarry. The word is at times used as a reference to the hunter, while at other times it is a reference to the wild game that he has slain for food. This same word is used when the Bible speaks of Esau, the son of Isaac, being a skilled huntsman (tsayid), and it is used to speak of the venison (tsayid) that Esau brought to his father.

Some have suggested that Nimrod was more than a mighty hunter of wild animals. They contend that he was a hunter of men, being skilled in warfare. In fact, some Bible translations describe Nimrod as a mighty warrior and mighty hunter.

Genesis 10:8-9

Cush was the father of Nimrod, who grew to be a **mighty warrior** (gibbor) on the earth. He was a **mighty hunter** (gibbor tsayid) before the Lord; that is why it is said, "Like Nimrod, a **mighty hunter** (gibbor tsayid) before the Lord."

[New International Version]

Genesis 10:8-10

Cush was also the ancestor of Nimrod, who was the first **heroic warrior** (gibbor) on earth. Since he was the **greatest hunter** (gibbor tsayid) in the world, his name became proverbial. People would say, "This man is like Nimrod, the **greatest hunter** (gibbor tsayid) in the world."

[New Living Translation]

The two translations above obviously reveal the beliefs of the translators and have strayed from a strict literal interpretation. There is nothing in the Hebrew wording to denote that Nimrod was considered a "heroic" figure, nor is the word "warrior" found in the Hebrew text. The same criticism could be leveled at Barnhouse's translation, for there is no mention of Nimrod being a "despot," or a "tyrant." Such ideas may be deduced from other evidence within or without the pages of Scripture, but a strict literal rendering of the original Hebrew manuscripts does not lead the translator to these interpretations.

There is much historical evidence to lend support to the idea of Nimrod being a mighty "hunter," for it was quite common for Chaldean monarchs to be depicted in conflict with a wild animal. These images helped shape public opinion about the ruler, suggesting that they were virile, strong, and fearless.



A Chaldean King Slaying a Lion

(Image from *The Five Great Monarchies of the Ancient World*, George Rawlinson)

It is likely that Nimrod was the prototype for the courageous Chaldean monarch, and others sought to emulate his fame through similar exploits. George Rawlinson reports that lion hunts were popular among the Babylonian and Assyrian kings. The heroic image of a mighty hunter was certainly a popular one among the ancient Chaldeans as the *Epic of Gilgamesh* demonstrates.



Gilgamesh Battling the Bull and the Lion

In the Epic of Gilgamesh, the lead character is described as two thirds divine and one part man. This glorification of a man into a deity parallels the history of Nimrod. Alexander Hislop in his book *The Two Babylons*, published in 1858, traces the origin of the Babylonian mystery religion back to Nimrod and his wife Semiramis. The subtitle to Hislop's book is *The Papal Worship Proved to be the Worship of Nimrod and His Wife*. If Hislop is correct (I believe he is), and Nimrod is the prototype and origin of that idolatrous religion now recognized as Roman Catholicism, then Nimrod becomes a character of great relevance to Christians today. The book of Revelation describes Babylon, the Great Harlot, in the following way.

Revelation 17:4-6

And the woman was clothed in purple and scarlet, and adorned with gold and precious stones and pearls, having in her hand a gold cup full of abominations and of the unclean things of her immorality, and upon her forehead a name was written, a mystery, "BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND OF THE ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH." And I saw the woman drunk with the blood of the saints, and with the blood of the witnesses of Yahshua.

This description fits well with the character of Roman Catholicism. The Bishop's and Cardinals of the Roman church adorn themselves in purple and scarlet.



Even the Pope arrays himself in scarlet.



Pope Benedict and Cardinals



“Having a cup of abominations in her hand...”

Unlike the humility of Christ, the apostles, and the early disciples, the Romish church has grown fabulously rich in the material goods of this world. Everywhere one turns gold, silver, precious stones, and rich clothing and fabrics are found. The apostasy of the Roman Catholic church is so extensive that it has become an abomination, more pagan than Christian. The abominations of Roman Catholicism stem from her pretending to be “Christian” when in fact her rites, symbols, holy days, vestures, and even her buildings proclaim that she is the guardian and promoter of the ancient solar worship.



Images of Christ, the apostles and saints are depicted throughout Roman Catholicism with a nimbus, or solar halo, around the head. The picture above could easily pass as a figure of the Roman Catholic

Christ, or one of the apostles, but in fact it is an image of Apollo, the Roman sun-god. The Catholic church has brought obelisks from Egypt and set them on the grounds of her most venerated sites. The central feature of the plaza of Saint Peter's Basilica at the Vatican is an Egyptian obelisk that was originally constructed in Heliopolis, Egypt. The very name Heliopolis means "city of the sun."



The "square" at the Papal Basilica of Saint Peter is actually circular, arranged like a great sun dial with the Egyptian obelisk at its center. The sun worship of Babel passed on to Egypt and from there to Rome where the Roman Catholic church has kept it alive to this day.

Saint Peter's Basilica is NOT the mother church of Roman Catholicism. This dubious honor belongs to the Papal Archbasilica of St. John Lateran in Rome. Outside of this building is an even larger obelisk that was likewise relocated from Egypt. It is called "the Lateran Obelisk."



Lateran Obelisk

The word obelisk means "shaft of Bel (Baal)." The meaning is two-fold. It is a reference to a shaft of light from the sun-god, as well as being a symbol of the reproductive organ of the same being. Examine the New Testament as thoroughly as you like and no discovery will be made of Christ or His apostles ever using the obelisk as a symbol of the faith. This symbol has from earliest antiquity always been associated with sun worship. It is a symbol venerated today by Freemasons, and has become an ubiquitous symbol in city squares and to mark the graves of Freemasons.



Obelisks at Rose Hill Cemetery - Macon, Georgia

For some years the Father led me to reside in Macon, Georgia. While there I learned much about Freemasonry and its Babylonian connection. The name Macon is the French word for “Mason.” Macon, Georgia is truly a Masonic city. It is located between 32 and 33 degrees north latitude, the numbers 32 and 33 being the two highest degrees in Scottish Rite Freemasonry. The website for the chamber of commerce of the city of Macon, Georgia states that the town was laid out upon the same design as the ancient city of Babylon, incorporating wide streets and tree lined boulevards.

Yet, I believe there is an unusual historical connection that influenced the Masonic founders of Macon to locate their city where they did. Within the limits of the city there is a National Monument called The Ocmulgee Indian Mounds. The early Indians who dwelt in this place are recognized as “mound builders.” The mounds they built served a similar function as the ziggurats, or stepped pyramids, of the Babylonians. On top of the mound was erected a temple, a place of worship. Following is an architect’s drawing of the Ocmulgee Great Temple Mound.



Ocmulgee Great Temple Mound

I have been out to this site numerous times. Following are a couple images of what this site looks like today. The first photo is an aerial shot. You can see the great mound at the upper right hand side of the photograph. There are no structures atop the mound today. It is just a level plateau.



(Click on image to view larger)

The next photo shows the same mound from ground level looking up.



Great Temple Mound

Standing atop the mound, a person can see the central section of downtown Macon, Georgia.



View From Top of Mound

The similarities between Macon, Georgia and ancient Babel are not coincidental. They are intentional. The Bible tells us that Nimrod founded the city of Babel, and the next chapter (Genesis 11) informs us that the people conspired together to build up the city and a tower.

Genesis 11:4

And they said, "Come, let us build for ourselves a city, and a tower whose top will reach into heaven, and let us make for ourselves a name; lest we be scattered abroad over the face of the whole earth."

The common rendering of the verse above is not literally accurate. The words "will reach into" do not appear in the original Hebrew manuscripts. A more literal translation would read, "Come, let us build for ourselves a city, and a tower whose top the heavens..." The translators have inserted the words "will reach into" as they believed this is the thought being conveyed. It is a point that is debated, however. Some Bible scholars and historians believe that a very different meaning was implied. There is substantial evidence to argue for a translation that would denote that the tower itself, especially its topmost level, was adorned with the figures of the heavens. E.W. Bullinger's *Companion Study Bible* includes the following note on Genesis 11:4.

may reach. *No ellipsis here. Heb. "And its top with the heavens," i.e. with the Zodiac depicted on it, as in ancient temples of Denderah and Esneh in Egypt.*

Bullinger shares his view that this tower had the zodiac depicted upon it. This is a view supported by others. In the 1850s, William Goode delivered a set of talks referred to as the *Warburtonian Lectures* which were published some years later. William Goode was Dean of Ripon, a Senior Cleric's position in the Church of England. In the notes to the published copy of his fourth lecture, Goode re-prints the account of Lieutenant General Chesney who had visited the ruins of Babylon in present day Iraq on several occasions.

*Nowhere have I seen the desolating effects of time so vividly brought before me as when gazing on the remains of this once mighty city; and the realization of the prophet's words, 'Babylon the great is fallen,' recur to the mind with thrilling force... About five miles SW of Hillah, the most remarkable of all the ruins, the **Birs Nimrud** of the Arabs arises to a height of 153 feet above the plain from a base covering a square of 400 feet, or almost four acres. It was constructed of kiln-dried bricks in seven stages to correspond with the seven spheres (Joseph's Note - the five known planets, the sun and the moon), their respective colors corresponding with the planets to which they were dedicated: the lowermost black, the colour of Saturn; the next orange, for Jupiter; the third red, for Mars, and so on. These stages were surmounted by a lofty tower, on the summit of which we are told were the signs of the zodiac and other astronomical figures; thus having (as it should have been translated), 'a representation of the heavens,' instead of 'a top which reached into heaven.' This temple... was restored by Nebuchadnezzar, whose name it bears on the bricks and on the cylinders deposited at its angles.*

It seems clear to me that this ruin came within the ruins of ancient Babylon, which, according to Herodotus, embraced an area of 120 stadia, or fourteen miles each way, which would be at least five times the size of London; but this of course includes gardens, which are often of considerable extent, parks, orchards, and even fields, as in most Eastern cities.

[Source: *Fulfilled Prophecy, A Proof of the Truth of Revealed Religion: Being the Warburtonian Lectures for 1854-1858, by the Very Reverend William Goode, Dean of Ripon*]

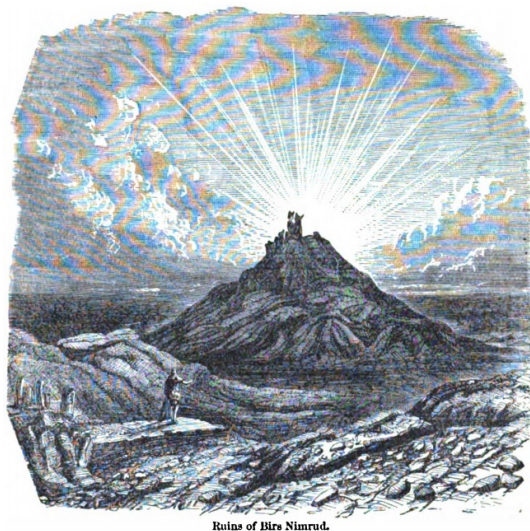
Birs Nimrud is one of a number of ancient ruins in the vicinity of ancient Babel that archaeologists

and Bible historians have proposed as the site of the Tower of Babel. Birs Nimrud translates into English as “the mound of Nimrod.” There was not much more than a large mound at this location in the days of King Nebuchadnezzar II, the Babylonian king who conquered Jerusalem. Nebuchadnezzar lived approximately 1,700 years after the original Tower of Babel was built. Nebuchadnezzar, perceiving this to be a site of great antiquity and religious importance, built over the ancient mound, encapsulating it within a new structure that arose around and above it. Wikipedia provides the following information on Birs Nimrud.

*Many legal administrative and **astronomical** texts on cuneiform tablets have originated at Borsippa and have turned up on the black market. Archives began to be published in the 1980s. An inscription of Nebuchadnezzar II, the "Borsippa inscription," tells how he restored the temple of Nabu, **"the temple of the seven spheres,"** with "bricks of noble lapis lazuli." that must have been covered with a rich blue glaze, surely a memorable sight. The Austrian archeologists have determined that **Nebuchadnezzar's ziggurat encased the ruins of a smaller tower from the second millennium BCE.** When it was completed it reached a height of 70 meters, in seven terraces; even in ruin it still stands a striking 52 meters over the perfectly flat plain...*

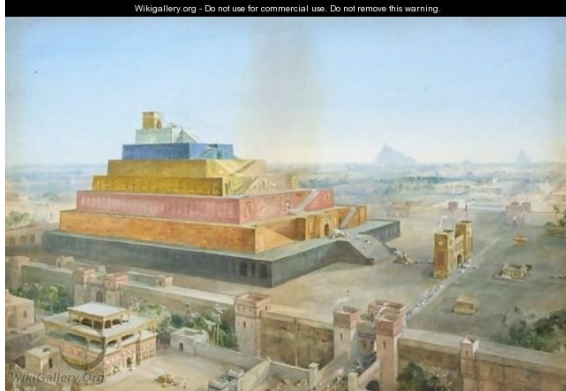
*An inscribed foundation stone has been recovered, which details Nebuchadnezzar's plan to have the Borsippa ziggurat built on the same design as that at Babylon, of which only the foundation survives. **Nebuchadnezzar declared that Nabu's tower would reach the skies...***

[Source: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Birs_Nimrud, emphasis added]



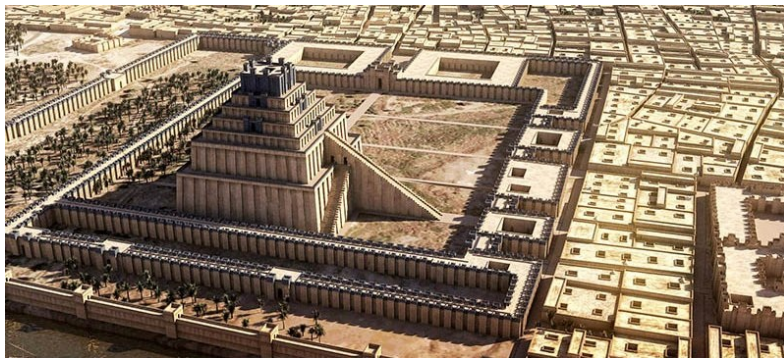
Drawing of the Ruins of Birs Nimrud from the 1800s

In Nebuchadnezzar’s day, this temple mound/tower was known as “the temple of the seven spheres.” The ancients recognized seven spheres, or planets, in the heavens. These are the five planets visible to the unaided eye, along with the sun and the moon. That the tower was dedicated to the seven spheres, or heavenly bodies, reveals the ancient relationship between tower building and astronomy/astrology among the Babylonians.



Birs Nimrud Restoration

The Wikipedia article states that Nebuchadnezzar adopted a design for the reconstruction of the temple of the seven spheres that was based upon an even larger stepped tower, or ziggurat that lay closer to the center of the city of Babylon. This greater tower is Etemenanki which translates as “House of the platform of Heaven and Earth.” Less remains of Etemenanki today than remains of Birs Nimrud. Some have proposed that Etemenanki is the site of the original tower of Babel.



Etemenanki

The image above is an artist’s rendering of Etemenanki in the city of Babylon found on the website <http://www.kadingirra.com/babylon.html>. Following is another image from the same webpage.



When I look at this, I see clear parallels to Macon, Georgia and the Ocmulgee Great Temple Mound.

It too lies along a river. Satan has kept alive the ancient sun worship from the time of Nimrod and the original tower of Babel. There is a very intriguing small mound into which the park visitor can walk at the Ocmulgee Indian Mounds. This smaller mound was a gathering place that has fifty molded seating places and the image of a great eagle on the ground. There is a narrow entryway that an adult has to stoop down to enter. Precisely at the time of the spring equinox, the sun shines directly down the narrow entry and falls upon the image of the eagle inside.



Exterior of Ocmulgee Meeting Mound



Interior of Ocmulgee Meeting Mound

This structure that is dated to seven or eight centuries before the founding of the United States of America bears the national symbol of America (the eagle) and has precisely fifty seats corresponding to the fifty United States of America. Something remarkable appears to be indicated here, as if Satan had planned from long ago for this land, and the nation that would one day occupy it, to be a key instrument in the reconstruction of Babylon upon the earth. America is the great melting pot of many nations, and within America lies the headquarters for the United Nations, the precursor to a restored one world government modeled upon ancient Babel. As such, Nimrod serves as a prototype for the antichrist to come.

An event that has struck me as a further parallel between this Macon monument and ancient Babel is that a “Guided Astronomy Walk” has been featured there. Participants meet at the Visitor Center and a park ranger guides them to the Great Temple Mound where they can use telescopes to view the planets, the moon, and the stars.

Nebuchadnezzar II ruled Babylon from 605-562 BC. It was he who destroyed Jerusalem (Zion) and

took God's people captive (those whom he did not slay.) There is certainly something spiritually significant indicated here, for spiritual Babylon is Satan's kingdom, and it has frequently ravaged God's chosen people whether they be the Hebrews, or the church of Christ. Today, the church spiritually resembles Jerusalem in ruins. The walls of the city are broken down, giving Satan and his servants free entrance among the people of God. The treasures of the people of God have been looted, taken to Babylon to be placed in the temple of idols. Indeed, that which most people perceive as Christianity today is a house of idolatry that has an abominable admixture of the holy and the profane.

Whether Birs Nimrud, or Etemenanki are the actual site of the Tower of Babel, I believe it is reasonable to conclude that the original tower's design is reflected in these structures. Both of them were stepped towers whose design, dimensions, and appearance have been described by ancient historians. Following are the dimensions of Etemenanki taken from a tablet that described the ziggurat.

1st step 300ft by 300ft 110ft high

2nd step 260ft by 260ft 60ft high

3rd step 200ft by 200ft 20ft high

4th step 170ft by 170ft 20ft high

5th step 140ft by 140ft 20ft high

6th step ? 20ft high?

7th step 70ft by 80ft 50ft high

(The scribe omitted the dimensions of the sixth step but its height was probably twenty feet.)

The temple situated on the very top of the ziggurat would have risen 300 feet above the plain. Etemenanki, like Birs Nimrud, was reconstructed in the days of King Nebuchadnezzar and his father Nabopolassar. It is believed that the tower that existed at this site was previously built in the 2nd millennium B.C., placing it in near proximity to the construction of the tower of Babel. This date estimate is based upon a poem fragment from an *Assyrian Creation Epic (Enuma Elis)* that mentions a "ziqurrat apsî elite," which translates as "the upper ziqurrat of the Apsû." This description is believed to be a reference to Etemenanki.

In 689 B.C. the Assyrian King Sennacherib invaded the land and is reported to have destroyed Etemenanki. The Babylonian Kings Nabopolassar and his son Nebuchadnezzar II spent 88 years rebuilding the city of Babylon. Following the pattern of the original inhabitants of Babel, the Babylonian kings continued to be tower builders. An inscription remains in Nebuchadnezzar's own words describing his reconstruction of Etemenanki and Birs Nimrud at Borsippa. The first paragraph below refers to Etemenanki, and the second paragraph to Birs Nimrud.

The tower, the eternal house, which I founded and built. I have completed its magnificence with silver, gold, other metals, stone, enameled bricks, fir and pine. The first which is the house of the earth's base, the most ancient monument of Babylon; I built and finished it. I have highly exalted its head with bricks covered with copper.

We say for the other, that is, this edifice, the house of the seven lights of the earth the most ancient monument of Borsippa. A former king built it, (they reckon 42 ages) but he did not complete its head.

Since a remote time, people had abandoned it, without order expressing their words. Since that time the earthquake and the thunder had dispersed the sun-dried clay. The bricks of the casing had been split, and the earth of the interior had been scattered in heaps. Merodach, the great god, excited my mind to repair this building. I did not change the site nor did I take away the foundation. In a fortunate month, in an auspicious day, I undertook to build porticoes around the crude brick masses, and the casing of burnt bricks. I adapted the circuits, I put the inscription of my name in the Kitir of the portico. I set my hand to finish it. And to exalt its head. As it had been done in ancient days, so I exalted its summit.

[Source: <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Etemenanki>]

These words reveal that it was believed in Nebuchadnezzar's day that the ruins at Birs Nimrud were the original Tower of Babel, a tower that was left with the top incomplete due to the people having abandoned its building when their language was confused. Nebuchadnezzar's testimony does little to settle the question of whether the Scriptures are communicating the people's intent to build a tower whose top *reached into the heavens*, or a tower whose top *revealed the heavens*. Nebuchadnezzar in one statement declares that his reconstruction of the "tower would reach the skies," yet he also constructed each of the seven levels to correspond to one of "the seven spheres" of the heavens, and Herodotus reported to have seen the tower and described it as having the constellations of the zodiac adorning its summit.

Whatever the actual meaning that is intended in the Scriptures, there is a definite link between Nimrod, Babel, its famed Tower, and the idolatrous worship that spread from there to all parts of the world. We will look further at the character of this religion, and its presence in all ages and all parts of the globe in the next chapter.

Beyond Babel



Tower of Babel/EU Parliament Building

I want to once again comment on the value of giving significant attention and time to an event that God allotted no more than ten verses to in the book of Genesis. Why trouble ourselves to understand what took place at Babel? What is the value for the Christian today?

Christians greatly err by relegating Babel to little more than a historic footnote in the history of man. Babel serves as a prototype for the evil men are capable of when they join together to fulfill Luciferian plans. There is a principle of first mention in the Bible, whereby great significance is embodied in the first occurrence of actions, places, or things in the Scriptures. Oftentimes the spiritual significance of a thing can be discerned by looking at its first mention in the Bible. For example, the very first occurrence of the number 13, a number of ill omen throughout the history of man, is found in the following verse.

Genesis 14:4

Twelve years they had served Chedorlaomer, but the **thirteenth** year they rebelled.

E.W. Bullinger shares the following insight into this number.

As to the significance of thirteen, all are aware that it has come down to us as a number of ill-omen. Many superstitions cluster around it, and various explanations are current concerning them.

*Unfortunately, those who go backwards to find a reason seldom go back far enough. The popular explanations do not, so far as we are aware, go further back than the Apostles. But we must go back to the **first occurrence** of the number **thirteen** in order to discover the key to its significance. It occurs first in Gen 14:4, where we read "**Twelve** years they served Chedorlaomer, and the **thirteenth** year they REBELLED."*

*Hence every occurrence of the number **thirteen**, and likewise of **every multiple of it**, stamps that with which it stands in connection with **rebellion, apostasy, defection, corruption, disintegration, revolution**, or some kindred idea.*

[Source: *Number in Scripture*, E.W. Bullinger]

There are many such instances in the Bible where the first mention of something reveals its spiritual significance, meaning, or identity. Babel holds numerous firsts. It is the first city built by man that is mentioned in the Bible. It is the beginning of the first kingdom of man. It is the site of the first tower to be built. It is also the location where God first divided humanity in tongues, and tribes, and nations.

Babel symbolizes the works of man performed *independently* of God, and, in many instances, in direct defiance of Yahweh. Regarding the building of Babel and its tower, we read:

Genesis 11:6

And Yahweh said, "Behold, they are one people, and they all have the same language. And this is what they began to do, and now nothing which they purpose to do will be impossible for them."

There is nothing wrong with unity among mankind. It is no sin to be of the same mind and purpose with others. Christ prayed that His disciples might be one, even as He and the Father are one. Unity of purpose becomes an evil thing when men band together to accomplish things that are not God's will, especially things that are done in defiance of God. Notice the words of Yahweh above. He says, "This is what THEY began to do..." This is NOT man working in harmony or agreement with God. It is man acting independently of God, in defiance of God. This is the legacy of Babel.

God did not judge the people at Babel because they were of one mind and purpose. He judged them because they banded together to accomplish works of rebellion. Babel is the site of the first coordinated effort of man to ascend to a position God had not ordained for them. Satan's plan was (and is) to lead all humanity to manifest the same rebellious spirit against Yahweh that he has embraced. He wants to unite both men and angels in a defiant overthrow of Yahweh's rule. The principle of Satan is self-rule. Satan was not content to fulfill the high call of God for his life. He desired to ascend higher, to determine his own way. The prophet Isaiah provides the following insight into the rebellion of this covering cherub.

Isaiah 14:12-14

How you have fallen from heaven, O star of the morning, son of the dawn! You have been cut down to the earth, you who have weakened the nations! But you said in your heart, "I will ascend to heaven; I will raise my throne above the stars of God, and I will sit on the mount of assembly in the recesses of the north. I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High."

Satan seeks to infect all humanity with this same spirit of defiance toward the rule of God. He wants men to declare their independence of God. The devil wants mankind to seek to ascend to the heavens, behaving as if they were gods themselves, following his own example. Is this not what we see occurring at Babel? It is the location of the first kingdom of man. In establishing their own kingdom, man was rejecting Yahweh's rule. They were determined to pursue their own will and plans, to make a name for themselves, seeking their own glory rather than that of the Creator.

Yahweh brought confusion to the speech of man to hinder him in his rebellious purpose. By confusing the language of men, Yahweh effectively thwarted the unity that existed in their pursuit of evil. Men would still pursue evil after they dispersed from Babel, but the Luciferian goal of uniting all men under a single ruler in defiance of Yahweh was stymied. No longer were the various families of man

able to cooperate freely in their renegade schemes. Rebellion and pride still existed in the hearts of men, but the power of man to accomplish his purpose was diffused as divisions arose and man was separated by tongues, by tribes, by culture, and by geography.

The Bible informs us that upon the confusion of man's speech at Babel, the people left off building the city and tower. This was not the end of Babel, however. Babel is more than a city. It is a spiritual principle. Babel signifies mankind united in purposes that contradict the will of his Creator. Babel is a symbol of humanity seeking to ascend to be like God, choosing self-rule over Divine rule.

Though the people left off building the city and dispersed throughout the earth, Babel was not completely abandoned. Neither did men forsake the prideful act of building towers. Babel became Babylon. The city reached its zenith seventeen centuries after the original city and tower were abandoned. Nabopolassar and his son Nebuchadnezzar II raised up on this site one of the greatest cities the world has ever known. It was referred to as "Babylon the Great." It was vast in expanse, surrounded by multiple layers of walls and fortifications. Babylon was renowned for its hanging gardens, considered one of the seven wonders of the ancient world. The city and region were also marked by towers, a form that is referred to today as the ziggurat. The term ziggurat comes from an Akkadian word that means "to build upon a raised area."

The building of towers was not rediscovered in the days of Nebuchadnezzar. The people of Mesopotamia never forsook the building of ziggurats. Many ancient ziggurats pre-dating the time of Nebuchadnezzar by centuries were constructed. Nebuchadnezzar rebuilt some of the ancient towers, and he constructed new ones as well. Nebuchadnezzar, like the people of Babel before him, was infected with that spirit of humanistic pride that boasted in what man could accomplish independently of God. The Bible informs us of the spirit of those first tower builders.

Genesis 11:4

And they said, "Come, let us build for ourselves a city, and a tower whose top will reach into heaven, ***and let us make for ourselves a name***; lest we be scattered abroad over the face of the whole earth."

In the phrase "let us make for ourselves a name," there is great pride manifested. The people wanted fame. They desired to be a people of great renown. They desired to obtain glory on earth, a glory that would raise its head toward the heavens and arrogantly declare to God, "Look what we have built by the might of our own power."

This spirit has always infected Babylon. After having completed Etemenanki, Birs Nimrud, and other massive building projects in the city of Babylon, King Nebuchadnezzar manifested the pride that drove him and the people to such works.

Daniel 4:29-32

[Nebuchadnezzar] was walking on the roof of the royal palace of Babylon. The king reflected and said, "***Is this not Babylon the great, which I myself have built as a royal residence by the might of my power and for the glory of my majesty?***" While the word was in the king's mouth, a voice came from heaven, saying, "King Nebuchadnezzar, to you it is declared: sovereignty has been removed from you, and you will be driven away from mankind, and your dwelling place will be with the beasts

of the field. You will be given grass to eat like cattle, and seven periods of time will pass over you, until you recognize that the Most High is ruler over the realm of mankind, and bestows it on whomever He wishes.”



Despite the many judgments Yahweh has brought upon mankind to humble them, Satan is ever able to turn men back again to pride, rebellion, and wickedness. Wherever men have gathered together in large numbers they have built towers. The great cities of the nations are marked by their “sky scrapers,” their immense high-rise towers that are constructed to create a name for the builders, the occupants, and the cities in which the towers reside.

I have made mention of Macon, Georgia, the Masonic city that I lived in for some time. The Freemasons who laid out the city plan intentionally modeled it after Babylon. More than a century after Macon’s founding the influence of Freemasonry, the guardians of the Babylonian mystery religion, continued to be felt in the city as one its tallest buildings up until that time was constructed. This tower today holds offices for the city of Macon. Approaching this building, I was often captivated by its resemblance to a ziggurat. Significantly, there are thirteen floors, or levels, to this building.



Macon Municipal Building in Foreground

It should not strike any person as incredible that more than four thousand years after the construction of the Tower of Babel that Satan is inspiring men to build similar structures today. The spirit of Babylon has spread outward from that ancient city.

Genesis 11:8-9

So Yahweh scattered them abroad from there over the face of the whole earth; and they stopped building the city. Therefore its name was called Babel, because there Yahweh confused the language of the whole earth; and from there Yahweh scattered them abroad over the face of the whole earth.

At the time of this scattering, the entire landmass of the earth was one giant continent. It was after the flood of Noah that the earth was divided. The book of Genesis tells us that this occurred in the days of Peleg, whose name means “to divide asunder.”

Genesis 10:25

And two sons were born to Eber; the name of the one was Peleg, for in his days the earth was divided.

Some have assumed that what is referred to here is nothing more than the tribes and families of mankind spreading out from Mesopotamia to the land Yahweh apportioned to them. I am convinced that something much more remarkable is indicated. What the author of Genesis is telling us is that the dry land was formerly one contiguous mass. There was only one continent. This is a view that science itself agrees with, though scientific theory varies greatly from the Biblical account in its estimation of when this super-continent existed and the length of time it took for it to drift apart. Geologists refer to the original super-continent as Pangea, or Pangaea. Its separation into the present continents of the earth is referred to as “continental drift theory.”



Pangaea

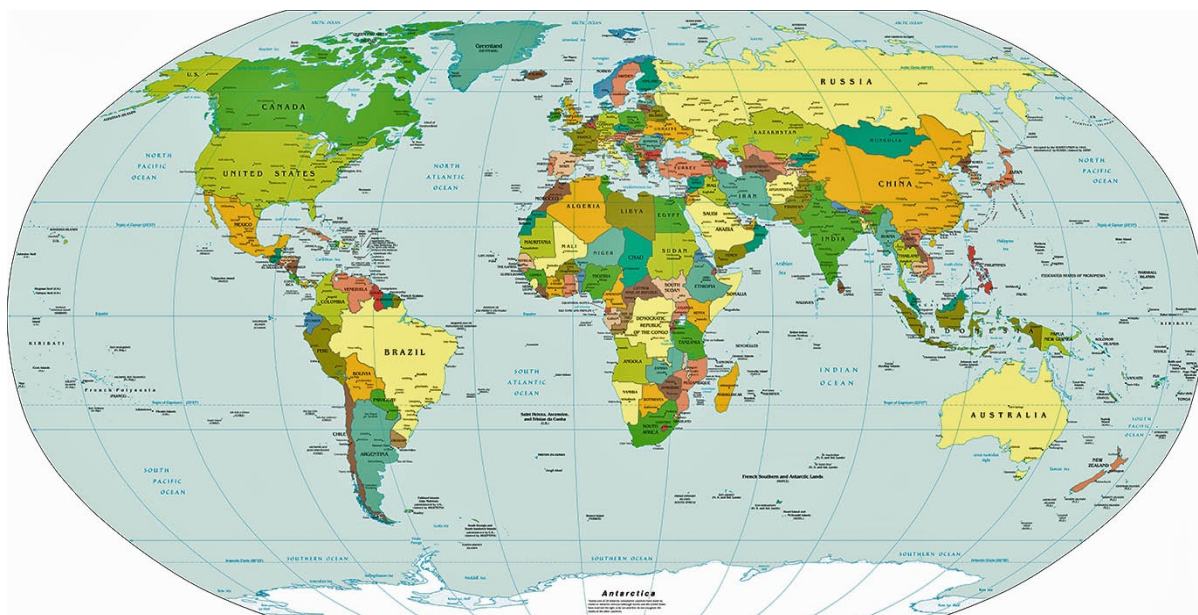
It is a simple matter to examine the outlines of the continents and envision how they may have once fit together. There is some diversity in the portraits of what the ancient single landmass looked like, but similarities exist in most of the depictions. The above image shows one possibility. A close-up of the central portion of this landmass is shown below.



There is sound Biblical reason to believe that the world was one single continent from the time of Adam until some time after the flood of Noah. One of the most persuasive arguments is that there had to be some way for the animals that Noah carried on the ark to spread to all of today's present continents and islands. If all flesh perished in the flood except that which was kept safe in the ark, how do we explain the presence of kangaroos and koalas in Australia, or llamas and alpacas in South America? These animals certainly did not swim across oceans to arrive there. Some attempt to get around this problem by suggesting that the flood of Noah's day was local. The Bible does not allow for such a possibility, however.

Genesis 7:21-24

And all flesh that moved on the earth perished, birds and cattle and beasts and every swarming thing that swarms upon the earth, and all mankind; of all that was on the dry land, all in whose nostrils was the breath of the spirit of life, died. Thus He blotted out every living thing that was upon the face of the land, from man to animals to creeping things and to birds of the sky, and they were blotted out from the earth; and only Noah was left, together with those that were with him in the ark. And the water prevailed upon the earth one hundred and fifty days.



If you locate Turkey on the map above, at the upper right corner of that nation is where Bible historians believe Noah's ark came to rest after the flood. If you travel south and east from there to the nations of Iraq and Iran, you will come to the plains of Shinar in ancient Mesopotamia. This is where Noah's descendants traveled to, and where they founded the city of Babel. A question that must be answered is, "How did the animals taken aboard the ark to repopulate the earth travel to distant continents such as Australia, South America, and North America?"

Some have suggested that an ancient land bridge existed between Eastern Russia and Alaska, providing a path for animals and men to travel to North and South America. This is a possibility, but it fails to explain how animals that could not swim or fly arrived at Australia, New Zealand, New Guinea, Japan, Malaysia, Madagascar, Iceland, or many of the other terrestrial areas that are separated from the EurAsian continent. We need not guess, however, for the Bible tells us that the earth was not divided into continents until after the flood in the days of Peleg. In the book *Astrology: The Ancient Conspiracy*, the author writes the following concerning Peleg and the division of the earth.

The word Peleg, which is not itself a proper name, means "a division"; but, as we shall see, a division of a particular kind. This verse is usually explained as meaning that, at some time during Peleg's lifetime, God divided the land among the people; that is, He apportioned the various tracts of country to the various companies of people - nations, as they afterwards became - which were to inhabit them. That is quite right as far as it goes, but it does not go far enough.

There are thirteen verbs translated "divide," each with a slightly different shade of meaning. We need here to consider only two - "chalak" and "palag."

Chalak means "to divide" in the sense of "to share" or "to apportion." It is the verb generally used when we read of a victorious nation dividing the spoil: -

"... divide the spoil of your enemies with your brethren" (Joshua xxii. 8).

"As men rejoice when they divide the spoil" (Isa. Ix. 3).

It is worthy to note that when land has to be divided, in the sense of being shared or apportioned, this verb is used.

"Joshua divided the land unto the children of Israel..." (Joshua xviii. 10)

"... Thou and Ziba divide the land" (2 Sam. Xix. 29).

Palag means "to divide" by bringing pressure or force to bear on an object to be divided.

"Who hath divided a watercourse [a channel] for the overflowing of waters..." (Job xxxviii. 25).

That is, who has parted or cleaved the ground asunder, so as to make a channel, such as a river-bed, or the channel of a stream to carry of the overflowing water.

The noun peleg occurs in Psalm xlv. 4, and is translated “streams.”

“There is a river, the streams whereof shall make glad the City of God...”

The translation “streams,” which is represented in the Hebrew by Peleg in the plural, with the third person singular pronominal suffix, is an example of the figure of metonymy, by which the things contained (“streams,”) are put for the containers (the divisions or clefts in the ground, through which streams run). There is another example of the same figure in the next clause - “gladden the City of God,” where city (the container) is put for the things contained (i.e., the population of the City). It is obvious that the force of the word “peleg” in this verse harmonizes with the meaning that the verb “palag” has in Job xxxviii. 25, quoted above.

The above examples, I think, show clearly the difference in meaning between the two verbs. What the reader should note is that if the popular explanation of Genesis x. 25 were correct (i.e., if the verse meant merely that in Peleg’s days God apportioned the land to the various companies of people who were to inhabit it) then we should have had in the text the verb “chalak,” “to divide” by sharing; but instead we have “palag,” “to divide” by cleavage.

“He called his name Peleg [a cleft or division], because in his days was the earth “niphl gah” [i.e., divided by cleavage]...”

What these verses in Genesis xi. tell us is that God first separated the people by confounding their language, thus causing them to group themselves according to their respective tongues; He then separated the land - dividing it by cleavage.

No doubt, those who are unbelievers in the God of the Bible will scoff at this account of the division of the earth into continents. It is taught by many geologists that the division of the surface of the earth began some 200 million years ago, and it occurred over the course of millions of years. Of course, these same men would scoff at the idea that the earth we presently inhabit, with all of its plant and animal life, was formed in six days. They would also decry the suggestion that the various languages of man all arose in a single moment of time as the Bible declares to have occurred at Babel. Linguists would argue that the languages of man developed over thousands, perhaps tens of thousands, of years.

Man is quite imperfect in his knowledge. Man’s attempts at reconstructing past events has led to such absurdities as the theory of evolution that would have all life arising without the aid of an intelligent designer through the all powerful combination of time and chance. Statistical probability refutes any possibility of such complex organisms as exist today arising through a random combination of elements. Believing Yahweh to be the all-wise and omnipotent Creator of the universe with all it contains, I do not find it inconsistent, nor incredible, to accept that Yahweh divided the earth into continents in the days of Peleg’s life.

In Genesis chapter 11 we are given the genealogy of Shem, one of the three sons of Noah. In this genealogy we are told that Peleg was born 101 years after the flood and he lived to the age of 239. Sometime during the nearly two and one half centuries of Peleg’s life, the continents drifted apart. As they did, the tribes of man found themselves separated by vast distances of oceans and seas. This

geographic separation, along with the confusion of man's language, served to keep humanity from cooperating too much in their pursuit of evil and rebellion against God. Satan's plan to quickly bring about a single world government that would unite all humanity in defiance of Yahweh was consequently dashed. The Bible reveals that a one world government under the rule of Satan's appointed man will arise at the very end of the age. That hour is now at hand. This is all the more reason why Christians should understand the history and significance of Babel. The political/religious/economic/military union of all mankind in the last days is referred to as Babylon. From Genesis to Revelation this city has stood as a symbol of opposition to Yahweh and all that is righteous and holy. The wicked spiritual principles of Babel will come to maturity in these last days.

The apostle Paul wrote the following words.

I Corinthians 8:5-6

For even if there are so-called gods whether in heaven or on earth, as indeed there are many gods and many lords, yet for us there is but one God, the Father, from whom are all things, and we exist for Him; and one Lord, Yahshua Christ, by whom are all things, and we exist through Him.

To depart from the worship of Yahweh and His Son Yahshua is idolatry and rebellion. The very first of the Ten Commandments states:

Exodus 20:3-5

You shall have no other gods before Me. You shall not make for yourself a carved image - any likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth; you shall not bow down to them nor serve them. For I, the Lord your God, am a jealous God...

All of the idolatrous religions of the world are traceable back to Babylon. The prophet Jeremiah recorded Yahweh's words of judgment upon Babylon due to its pronounced idolatry.

Jeremiah 50:35-38

"A sword against the Chaldeans," declares Yahweh, "And against the inhabitants of Babylon, and against her officials and her wise men!... For it is a land of idols, and they are mad over fearsome idols."

The worship of the heavenly bodies, and the beings they represented, was a feature of Babylonian religion. When mankind spread out from Babylon, they took the idolatry of Babylon with them. One of the places Babel came to rest was in Egypt. There the people gave themselves over to the worship of the sun, the moon, and stars, and a host of deities in the image of man and beast. There too they built towers to rival the great tower at Babel.



Pyramids of Egypt

On the plains of Shinar man had only mud with which to make bricks. In Egypt there was stone to be quarried. The limestone pyramids of Egypt, though slightly more recent than the most ancient ziggurats of Mesopotamia, have been preserved in a much better state. This is partly due to the stone construction, but also due to the dryer climate of Egypt. The pyramid is a modified Mesopotamian ziggurat. This fact is most clearly observed in the “stepped pyramids” of Egypt.



Step Pyramid of King Djoser at Saqqara

138 pyramids have been discovered in Egypt to date. The Pyramid of King Djoser at Saqqara, Egypt is believed by many historians and archaeologists to be the oldest of the pyramids. The date of this pyramid places it historically close in proximity to the dispersion from Babel. The following reconstruction of this pyramid shows the similarity of design to that of the Babylonian towers.



Saqqara Pyramid Reconstruction

The evolution of the ziggurat, or step pyramid, into the smooth sided pyramid is observed in the Meidum Pyramid. It was originally constructed as a step pyramid. Subsequently the steps were filled in and an outer casing added. In its finished form it was of similar dimensions as the Great Pyramid of Giza, but it has not withstood the ravages of time as well. This is likely due to the fact that the pyramid was modified to be a smooth pyramid, rather than being constructed as one in its original form.



Pyramid at Meidum

The Meidum Pyramid suffered several collapses in ancient and medieval times. Arabs of medieval times, described it as having seven levels, but only three survive today. The seven levels would correspond identically to the number of levels of Birs Nimrud, the ziggurat constructed by Nebuchadnezzar.

History has preserved very well the fact that the Egyptians not only shared the tower building propensities of Babel, but they shared their idolatry as well. The Egyptians corrupted the zodiac into an idolatrous religion and worshiped deities in the form of humans and beasts, and mixtures of the two. After Yahweh brought Israel out of Egyptian bondage 3,500 years ago, He spoke the following words to the people through Moses.

Deuteronomy 4:15-20

“So watch yourselves carefully, since you did not see any form on the day Yahweh spoke to you at Horeb from the midst of the fire, lest you act corruptly and make a graven image for yourselves in the

form of any figure, the likeness of male or female, the likeness of any animal that is on the earth, the likeness of any winged bird that flies in the sky, the likeness of anything that creeps on the ground, the likeness of any fish that is in the water below the earth. And beware, lest you lift up your eyes to heaven and see the sun and the moon and the stars, all the host of heaven, and be drawn away and worship them and serve them, those which Yahweh your God has allotted to all the peoples under the whole heaven.”

The spirit of Babel was present in Egypt. It was a spirit of pride and rebellion. It was a spirit of idolatry, a worship of man and false gods. Babel is a turning away from God to a vain worship of that which is not God. In Egypt, as in Babel, man “exchanged the truth of God for a lie, and worshiped and served the creature rather than the Creator, who is blessed forever” (Romans 1:25).

When God came down and confused the language of man at Babel, man scattered as if they had been struck. They spread out across the land. Then Yahweh divided the land itself into continents, placing great distances of ocean between the peoples of the earth. Yet, everywhere man went, he carried Babel with him. Those who journeyed east from Mesopotamia carried the spirit of Babel with them. The following image is of an ancient stepped pyramid in China near the North Korean border.



More than one hundred pyramids have been identified in Xian, China, some of immense size.



Some of the Xian Pyramids

The mound below is referred to by locals as the Maoling Mausoleum. It is the burial site of Emperor Wudi of the Western Han Dynasty (206 BC – 24 AD).



Maoling Mausoleum

Traveling south and east of China, to the islands of Indonesia, we find that Babel spread to this part of the globe as well. Following is an image of the temple at Candi Sukuh. It resembles closely a ziggurat, or stepped pyramid.



Candi Sukuh

Anyone who has seen images of the Mesoamerican pyramids of Mexico, and Central and South America, will note a similarity between them and the structure above.



Mayan Ruins at Tikal in Guatemala



Pyramid of the Magician at ancient Mayan City of Uxmal, Mexico

Throughout Mesoamerica there are numerous Pre-Columbian (before the appearance of Europeans) cities that feature pyramids. The Wikipedia entry for “Mesoamerican Pyramids” states, “These structures were usually step pyramids with temples on top - more akin to the ziggurats of Mesopotamia than to the pyramids of Ancient Egypt.” As previously mentioned, the Mississippians of North America built large mounds with flat tops. On the tops were located temples to their gods. This was also the design of the ziggurats of Babylonia.

It is not difficult to observe the influence of Babylon in these structures from the Americas. One can also see a great similarity to the pyramids of Egypt.



Pyramid of the Moon at Teotihuacan, Mexico

The image above shows the Pyramid of the Moon. Also at Teotihuacan, Mexico was the even larger Pyramid of the Sun. These names were given to these structures by the Aztecs who came upon the ruins centuries after they were abandoned. What the original inhabitants called these structures is unknown. Following is a model reproduction of the Temple of the Sun at Teotihuacan.



Pyramid of the Sun

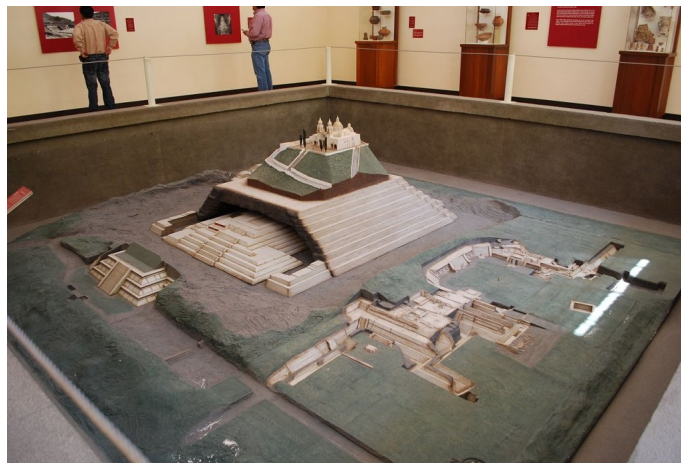
The largest of the Mesoamerican pyramids by volume is the Great Pyramid of Cholula, in the Mexican state of Puebla. It is estimated that construction of the Pyramid at Cholula began in the 3rd century B.C. and continued until the 9th century A.D. as the pyramid was expanded. Today, this enormous pyramid looks like a hill with a Roman Catholic Church built on its top.



When one understands the connection between the Roman Catholic Church and Babylon, they will recognize the poignancy of this image. The Babylonians would build temples to their idols atop the flat plateau of the ziggurat. How fitting that a Roman Catholic church should be placed at the top of this largest pyramid in the Americas. Rome has kept alive the worship of the sun, moon, and stars. The Roman Mary is merely the Babylonian Queen of Heaven masquerading as the mother of Christ. Inside the church pictured above is found the following shrine to Mary, the Queen of Heaven.



More than four thousand years after the Babylonians ascended their ziggurats to worship Semiramis as the Queen of Heaven, we find that people in Mexico are doing the same. Ascending the largest ziggurat in Mesoamerica, they enter this Roman Catholic church to pray before an image of the Queen of Heaven. The church is called “Church of Our Lady of Remedies,” being built by the Spanish in 1594. Could anyone other than Satan have inspired such a work? Satan has perpetuated the idolatry of Babylon throughout all the ages of man, and across every continent.

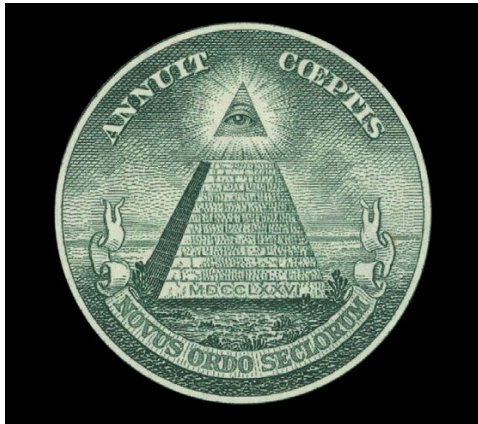


Great Pyramid of Cholula with Cutaway Showing Structure Beneath the Roman Church

Through the agency of the Roman Catholic Church, the Freemasons, the Illuminati, and numerous other organizations, Satan has kept alive the rebellion and idolatry of Babylon. The tower builders of Babylon are still with us today. So too are the esoteric teachings of Babylon present to this very hour. Satan has always placed men into positions of power and influence who would keep alive the dream of building Babylon upon the earth once more. The common phrase used in this day to refer to Babylon reborn is the New World Order. In fact, it is a very old world order. The goal of the New World Order is to institute a single world government, a single currency, and a single world religion

that are all under the aegis of Satan. Lucifer is the architect and power behind the New World Order even as he was the inspiration for Babel. It was he who inspired men to build a tower in defiance of Yahweh. It was he who stirred up the pride in fallen humanity, tempting them to choose their own rule and authority, casting off the rule of Yahweh.

The current rulers of this world system present an appearance of being modern thinkers who have cast aside the backward beliefs of stone age religion. They declare themselves to be “scientific” in their approach to the world, and in their ideas for creating a new secular order (Novus Ordo Seclorum). This is mere facade. It is a masquerade. Beneath the thin veneer of their pretentiousness, those whom Satan has chosen to be captains of industry and rulers of nations are adepts in the oldest of humanity’s idolatrous religions. They have embraced the rebellion of Satan, and worship the dark lord as the bringer of light. They have adopted the symbols and beliefs of ancient Babel.



Great Seal of the United States as it appears on U.S. Currency

It is interesting to note that the top is missing from the Great Pyramid of Giza, and it is missing in the image of the pyramid on the Great Seal. This gives the pyramid a flat top like that of a ziggurat. It would be here that the temple for the idol would be found. There are thirteen courses of stones forming the pyramid on the Great Seal, thirteen being the number of rebellion in the Scriptures. Also, we find the number 1776 in Roman numerals written across the lowest course of stones. This being the foundation level, the number corresponds to the year in which the foundation for Babel was laid.

Most students of what are described as “conspiracy theories” understand that the number 1776 on the Great Seal has a dual meaning. It is the year in which the Declaration of Independence was signed by America’s founding fathers. It is also the year in which the Bavarian Illuminati was established by Adam Weishaupt. These events occurring in the same year are hardly coincidental. Satan is able to guide the events of human history, and he very evidently chose for both of these key events in the resurrection of Babylon among the nations to occur in the same year. A question I have pondered is “Why did Satan choose for this work to be accomplished in the year 1776?”

Reflection upon this matter led me to consider whether there was a connection to the founding of the original city of Babel and its tower. Although the Bible does not tell us the year in which the people located to the plain of Shinar and began the construction of Babel and its tower, we can look at the genealogies found in Genesis and see that it is quite possible that the foundation of that first tower

could have been laid 1,776 years from Adam's creation. Following is what can be deduced from the Bible. The data is taken from Genesis chapters 5 and 11.

Year 0: Adam is created.
Year 130: Seth is born, son of Adam.
Year 235: Enosh is born, son of Seth.
Year 325: Kenan is born, son of Enosh.
Year 395: Mahalalel is born, son of Kenan.
Year 460: Jared is born, son of Mahalalel.
Year 622: Enoch is born, son of Jared.
Year 687: Methuselah is born, son of Enoch.
Year 874: Lamech is born, son of Methuselah.
Year 1056: Noah is born, son of Lamech.
Year 1559: Shem is born, son of Noah.
Year 1656: Flood of Noah.
Year 1659: Arphaxad is born, son of Shem.
Year 1694: Shelah is born, son of Arphaxad.
Year 1724: Eber is born, son of Shelah.
Year 1758: Peleg is born, son of Eber.

The Bible tells us that during Peleg's days the earth was divided. It is quite possible that during Peleg's lifetime both the Tower of Babel incident occurred with the division of man's language, and the earth was divided forming the continents and placing a physical division among the families of man.

The year 1776 from the creation of Adam would occur 18 years after the birth of Peleg; (6+6+6) years. The Bible only gives us the ages of the lineage of Shem, the son of Noah who is the father of the Semitic (Shemitic) people from whom descended Abraham and the Israelites. Nimrod, the founder of Babel was of the lineage of Ham, the brother of Shem. We are not told the ages of the descendants of Ham, or when their sons were born. However, Peleg was the 4th generation after Shem, and Nimrod was the 2nd generation from Ham. This would allow time for Nimrod to mature, begin to establish himself as a ruler over the people, and to found the city of Babel. By the year 1776 after Adam's creation, the people could well have been laying the foundation for the tower of Babel.

We need not suppose that the people's language was confused during this same year. Years may have been spent in building up the city and the tower before Yahweh came down to observe and interrupt the work. Because the Great Seal has the number 1776 on the foundation level of the pyramid (a type of the Tower of Babel), we would need only assume that the building of the tower began in that year. Similarly, the Declaration of Independence was signed on July 4th, 1776, but it was not until 1789 (13 years later) that America seated her first government with George Washington as her first president. This period of time can be compared to the building of the tower. The year 1776 represents merely the initial act, the symbolic laying of the cornerstone.

That the foundation of the Tower of Babel was laid in the year 1776 from Adam's creation can only be presented as a hypothesis. The Bible does not tell us the exact year. We can determine from

Scripture that Noah's flood occurred in the year 1656 from Adam, and that Peleg was born in the year 1758 from Adam. Peleg lived 239 years, and we are told the earth was divided during his life. We can say conclusively that the scriptures **allow** for the Tower of Babel to have been founded in the year 1776. We cannot confidently assert that the Tower of Babel **was** founded in that year. Certain evidence, however, does point to this year for the founding of Babel's tower.

Man's lifespan is such that no man living can claim to have firsthand knowledge of when the Tower of Babel was constructed. Neither do we have any extant historical record of the date of this event. The Bible gets us very close to the date, but it does not establish the date. Satan, however, can lay claim to having been present to observe the laying of the first stones of that tower. It was surely a day of celebration among the fallen angels who rebelled against God. For on this date all mankind united as one in defiance of Yahweh to build that which stood as a sign of their independence from the rule of God.

Is it not a remarkable parallel that 1,776 years from the date of the Second Adam, who is Christ, that mankind united once more to declare their independence and their right to rule themselves? The new nation that was inaugurated on that day would come to bear the name UNITED States. What God had divided, man chose to bring back into ONE union. It is significant that the Great Seal with the pyramid is found only on the ONE dollar bill. The message on this instrument of world currency is that of the rebuilding of Babel, bringing all mankind into ONE cohesive unit.



The number 1 appears no less than ten times on the reverse side of the one dollar bill. The largest writing on any denomination of America's printed money is the large word "ONE" in the center of the image above. At Babel the men were all of ONE language and intent on ONE purpose. They were UNITED in defiance of Yahweh. On this bill there are THIRTEEN courses of stones on the pyramid. There are THIRTEEN stars above the eagle's head. There are THIRTEEN arrows in the eagle's talons. There are THIRTEEN leaves on the branch grasped by the eagle. There are THIRTEEN letters in the words ANNUIT COEPTIS (interpreted as "God favors our undertaking"). It should be obvious that the "GOD" referenced on this unit of monetary exchange is NOT Jesus Christ/Yahshua the Messiah, nor is it Yahweh His Father. The "GOD" referenced by all of this Babylonian imagery is Satan.

II Corinthians 4:4

The god of this world (Satan) has blinded the minds of the unbelieving, that they might not see the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God.

The United States plays a central role in Satan's schemes to resurrect Babel upon this earth. The UNITED States is the reversing of Yahweh's judgment at Babel. A people scattered across the world are drawn back into one place, into the great melting pot where the diverse tongues, tribes, and nations of men are amalgamated into ONE. The United States would become the location for the next union of man, the UNITED Nations. The U.N. was formed in October of 1945. This was 156 years after the first U.S. government was seated in the year 1789. 156 is (12 x 13). In the Scriptures the number 12 denotes government, and the number 13 denotes rebellion. Not coincidentally, the United States began as the union of 13 states, and to this date there are 13 stripes on the U.S. flag. America was born in an act of rebellion, declaring her independence. For a truly Biblical view of America's founding as a nation, see the book *Dragon Flood*.

http://www.heart4god.ws/index_html_files/Dragon%20Flood.pdf

What I am seeking to emphasize is that Satan has never abandoned his plan to establish Babel upon the earth. He desires to establish a one world government that defies God. It will be a government that follows Satan's example of rebellion toward divine authority.

Revelation 13:3-6

And the whole earth was amazed and followed after the beast; and they worshiped the dragon, because he gave his authority to the beast; and they worshiped the beast, saying, "Who is like the beast, and who is able to wage war with him?" And there was given to him a mouth speaking arrogant words and blasphemies; and authority to act for forty-two months was given to him. And he opened his mouth in blasphemies against God, to blaspheme His name and His tabernacle, that is, those who dwell in heaven.

In imitation of God, Satan does all his works according to design. He has certain numbers and symbols that permeate his wicked plans. He has never conceded defeat, and has not altered his plans. These plans to unite all humanity under his rule, a rule that is rebellious to Yahweh, was first observed after the flood at Babel. Babel remains central to the plans of Satan today. I would suggest the possibility that the foundation of the original Tower of Babel was laid in the year 1776 from Adam's creation. I would further posit that the foundations for the second Babylon were laid in the year 1776 from the Second Adam, who is Christ (I Corinthians 15:45). Symbolically, Satan chose a man named Adam to play an instrumental role in laying the groundwork for the New World Order in the year 1776 A.D.. This man was Adam Weishaupt. Symbolically, in Satan's twisted thinking, this man was the third Adam, and the perfected man, for he gave himself wholly to accomplishing the will of Satan and bringing forth a one world rule upon the earth.

On September 11th, 2001 the World Trade Towers in New York City were destroyed. The media and government presented a deceptive account suggesting that they were brought down by two planes commandeered by men who used box cutters to hijack the airplanes. In truth, the towers were brought down by the shadow government of this fallen world system. It was a planned destruction, on a date specifically chosen, to usher in the final stages of Satan's plan to create a New World Order (aka Babylon). On May 10, 2013 the replacement tower reached its full height of 1,776 feet as the final piece of the spire atop the building was put in place. The building is schedule to open this year, 2014, thirteen years after the previous towers were destroyed.



One World Trade Center Viewed from the Hudson River

Not surprisingly, the design of this Babylonian tower is pyramidal. There are alternating pyramids on the face of the tower, some pointing up, and some pointing down. From street level, the appearance of a pyramid is very obvious.

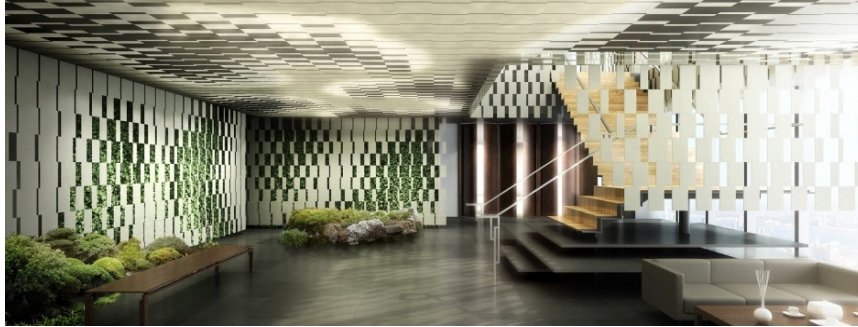


One World Trade Center - Street Level View

Of course, Babylon would not be complete without hanging gardens. The very first commercial tenant of One World Trade Center to occupy space will be China Center. They have leased 200,000 square feet on the 64th through the 69th floors. This space is to feature a garden.

The design, called “Folding Garden,” includes green walls bursting with native Asian plants lining the building’s winding hallways. The walls are meant to make visitors feel as though they’re meandering through nature, rather than walking through one of the most secure office buildings in the world.

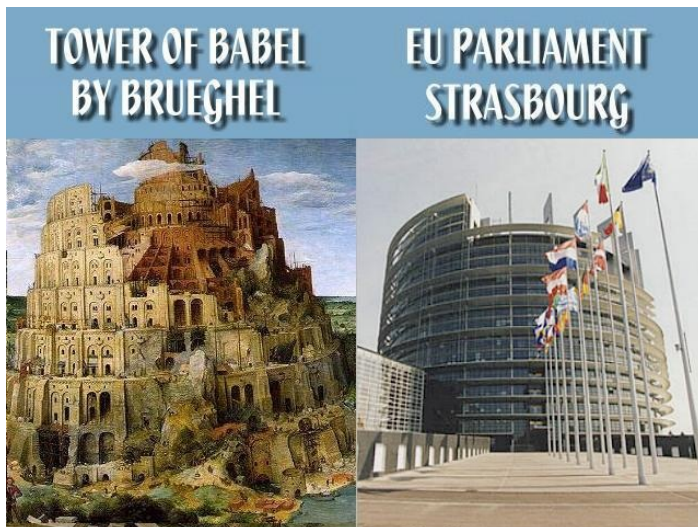
[Source: <http://www.newprocontainers.com/blog/folding-garden-china-center/>]



A Section of the Folding Garden in the New Tower of Babel

It bodes very ill for Christians that Satan's plans are reaching their apex as we approach the end of this age. In the book of Daniel we read of the persecution of the saints of Yahweh who were carried as captives into Babylon. The three friends of Daniel; Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego (Hebrew names Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah), were commanded to bow down and worship the idolatrous image constructed by King Nebuchadnezzar. When they refused, they were cast into a fiery furnace. Similarly, when a law was enacted that forbid anyone in the kingdom of Babylon to pray to anyone other than the king, Daniel was arrested, charged with illegal actions, and cast into a den of lions. These things are recorded as types revealing the experiences that will befall the saints of God in this last hour as Babylon encompasses the entire earth.

For those who have eyes to see, it is impossible to miss the very evident signs of Babylon's growing ascendancy. In 1993 the Maastricht Treaty formed the European UNION which now consists of 28 member states. The legislative body for the European Union convenes at the EU Parliament building in Strasbourg, France. This building was designed to resemble the painting of the Tower of Babel created by Pieter Brueghel in 1563.



The relationship between the formation of the European Union and Satan's plan to complete the building of Babel that was begun four millennia ago, is observed in a poster published by the European Union.



EU Poster

There are a number of things to note in this poster. First, observe the modern crane that is erected on the tower. It symbolizes a renewal of the building of the Tower of Babel. Then note the odd shape of the stars that are above the tower. They are aligned upside down from what typically appears in flags and other symbols that display a five pointed star. The five pointed star is an occult symbol. When it appears in this orientation it is a symbol for Satan worship.



Notice also that all of the people are square shaped. This signifies all humanity being molded into the same image. As we observe the New World Order arising at this time, we are observing a removal of personal liberty and freedom of expression. Only words and thoughts that are in compliance with the Luciferian philosophy are tolerated. All other voices are suppressed. To accomplish this societal uniformity a surveillance culture has arisen where every word and action of mankind is catalogued and flagged for non-compliance. Those who stand for righteousness, and who walk in the fear of God, are regarded as threats to the emerging global system.

The slogan on the poster above is “MANY TONGUES, ONE VOICE.” Is this not a blatant attempt to reverse the judgment of Yahweh upon mankind at Babel? The expression “ONE VOICE” announces that men will once again be united in ONE purpose, acting in concert with ONE mind.

Men have occasionally given themselves to reflection to what it would have been like to live during a specific period of history. One might muse over what it may have been like to be alive during the time when man was all of one language, gathered on the plains of Shinar, focused on building the city

of Babel and its great tower. We live at an even more momentous time. We are witnessing the completion of that which was begun more than four thousand years ago. Babel is being completed. The divided nations, tongues, and tribes of man are being gathered together under one rule. They are beginning to speak with one voice. They are calling for freedom from all moral restraint. They want to be loosed from the rule of Yahweh. Certainly the psalmist had this present hour in mind when he wrote the following words.

Psalms 2:1-3

Why do the nations assemble with commotion [uproar and confusion of voices], and why do the people imagine (meditate upon and devise) an empty scheme? The kings of the earth take their places; the rulers take counsel together against the Lord and His Anointed one (the Messiah, the Christ). They say, "Let us break Their bands [of restraint] asunder and cast Their cords [of control] from us."
[Amplified Bible]

We live at a troubling hour. The whole world lies in the power of the evil one, the great deceiver who deceives the entire world. Men, having failed to learn from the errors of the past are repeating behaviors that elicited the judgment of God. Babel, that wicked city, adversary of all that is righteous and good, is once more raising its head toward the heavens. Unable to touch the Creator, humanity under the inspiration of Satan will turn their wrath upon the saints of God. Daniel foresaw this day and recorded the following words.

Daniel 12:7-11

And I heard the man dressed in linen, who was above the waters of the river, as he raised his right hand and his left toward heaven, and swore by Him who lives forever that it would be for a time, times, and half a time; and as soon as they finish shattering the power of the holy people (the saints), all these events will be completed. As for me, I heard but could not understand; so I said, "My lord, what will be the outcome of these events?" And he said, "Go your way, Daniel, for these words are concealed and sealed up until the end time. Many will be purged, purified and refined; but the wicked will act wickedly, and none of the wicked will understand, but those who have insight will understand."

Do you have understanding? Do you perceive what is happening at this hour? Do you see that the tyrant Nimrod will rise again in the person of Satan's appointed antichrist? Oppression will increase. An hour is near when the righteous will no longer be able to work and speak openly. Nevertheless, Satan will not have the last word. At the time appointed by the Father Christ will stand up and avenge His holy ones.

Isaiah 26:20-21

Come, my people, enter into your rooms, and close your doors behind you; Hide for a little while, until indignation runs its course. For behold, Yahweh is about to come out from His place to punish the inhabitants of the earth for their iniquity; and the earth will reveal her bloodshed, and will no longer cover her slain.

Revelation 18:4-10, 20

And I heard another voice from heaven saying, "Come out of [Babylon], my people, lest you share

in her sins, and lest you receive of her plagues. For her sins have reached to heaven, and God has remembered her iniquities. Render to her just as she rendered to you, and repay her double according to her works; in the cup which she has mixed, mix double for her. In the measure that she glorified herself and lived luxuriously, in the same measure give her torment and sorrow; for she says in her heart, 'I sit as queen, and am no widow, and will not see sorrow.' Therefore her plagues will come in one day - death and mourning and famine. And she will be utterly burned with fire, for strong is the Lord God who judges her. The kings of the earth who committed fornication and lived luxuriously with her will weep and lament for her, when they see the smoke of her burning, standing at a distance for fear of her torment, saying, 'Alas, alas, that great city Babylon, that mighty city! For in one hour your judgment has come.' Rejoice over her, O heaven, and you holy apostles and prophets, for God has avenged you on her!"

Babylon is rising. Oppression of the disciples of Christ will increase. Many will overcome as they love not their lives, even unto death. At the appointed time Babylon will be thoroughly judged. She will be destroyed, never to arise again. Satan's schemes that have stood in defiance of Yahweh for millennia will be ended as the serpent's head is crushed beneath the feet of the Savior.

Giants on the Earth



The Bible presents a history of the earth in the days of man that is at times astonishing. It is not surprising that many who reject the divine inspiration of the Scriptures view its narratives as nonsense. There are even those among professing Christians who stumble in unbelief when they encounter Biblical facts that cannot be explained rationally through accepted scientific dogma. The earth and all living creatures being formed in six days - ridiculous! A great flood that covered the entire earth, overtopping all the mountains - hogwash! Men before the flood living to nearly 1,000 years - preposterous! All the languages of humanity being created in a single moment of time at Babel - foolishness!

The truth is, the miraculous and incredible are present with us every day. Mankind has a tendency to put on blinders which keep him from perceiving the evidence that we live in a supernatural realm that cannot be explained by purely naturalistic laws. There is a divine presence that sustains, directs, and continually upholds order in the creation. This is a truth the Scriptures affirm.

Hebrews 1:1-3

God, after He spoke long ago to the fathers in the prophets in many portions and in many ways, in these last days has spoken to us in His Son, whom He appointed heir of all things, through whom also He made the world. ***And He*** is the radiance of His glory and the exact representation of His nature, and ***upholds all things by the word of His power.***

Acts 17:22

The God who made the universe and all the things in it, this God being the natural Lord of heaven and earth, does not take up His residence in sanctuaries made by hands, neither is He served by the hands of mankind as though needing any certain thing in addition to what He already has, and this in view of the fact that ***He himself is constantly giving to all life and breath and all things.*** And He made out of one source material every nation of mankind to inhabit the entire surface of the earth, having marked out the limitations of strategic, epochal periods of time which have been appointed and the fixed boundaries of their occupancy, in order that they should be seeking this aforementioned God, if so then they will grope after Him and find Him, though He is not far from each one of us, ***for in Him we derive our life and have motion,*** as also certain of your poets have said, For of Him are

we also offspring.

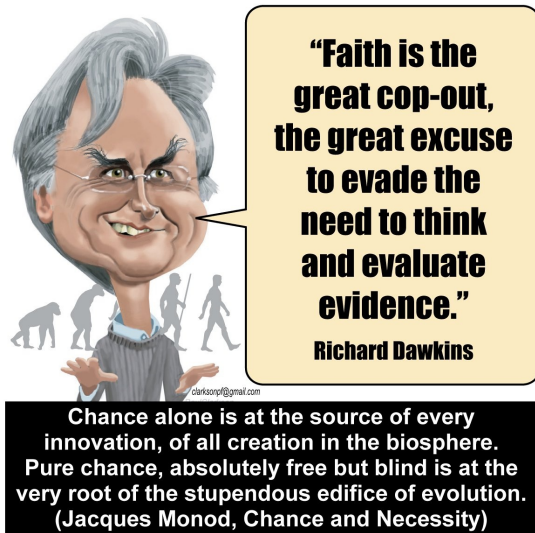
[An Expanded Translation by Kenneth S. Wuest]

The folly of man is revealed in the feeble explanations of that which is called “science” as it attempts to describe how life arose, and order and complexity of infinite magnitude appeared, spontaneously out of chaos. The same minds that balk at the idea of an eternal, self-existent God, do not shrink back from suggesting that matter and energy have always existed. Where did matter originate? They cannot say. It simply always was. How did matter order itself into complexity, and how did the inanimate become animate? Surely it is a great, indeed a miraculous leap, for non-living matter, a garbled mass of elements, to arrange themselves into self-replicating life forms. Even more incredible is the suggestion that inanimate matter developed intelligence on its own. The greatest leap of all is to suggest that the highest life form (mankind) spontaneously developed self-awareness and personality.

The existence of the soul is truly inexplicable when mankind removes God from the equation. How remarkable that a man and woman can come together in sexual union and a new life be generated! This new life is not merely a functioning biological entity. It has awareness, emotion, will, and the ability to reason. The soul that comes into being is not a rubber stamp of its parents. It is likely to embrace very different values, beliefs, and desires than that of its ancestors. This is a great mystery, and science has no satisfactory answer to the existence of life, or the development of the soul. All theories that leave out an omnipotent, omniscient, eternal Creator fall flat. Life, indeed the very creation itself, is miraculous in nature.

Nevertheless, there are those even among Christians who stumble over the historical narratives of the Bible when there is a departure from what can be explained through scientific principles. They reject much of what seems improbable, extraordinary, and supernatural. In some cases they do not reject the Bible narrative entirely, but attempt to explain the Bible’s historical account through what they understand of natural phenomena. Some years back I came across an attempt at scholarly explication of the ten plagues of Egypt in the days of Moses. It was one of the most dissatisfying, inane, and contrived expositions of Scripture I had ever encountered. The authors, attempting to completely remove the aspect of the supernatural from the plagues of Egypt, reduced the Biblical narrative to a natural chain of events that was bereft of the power of God.

I believe this rejection of the supernatural is an attempt by Christians to not appear foolish to those who are acknowledged to be men and women of advanced scientific learning and wisdom. Christianity has been lambasted by those with scientific credentials as these respected professionals pretend that their theories do not require the same “blind faith” they accuse Christians of resorting to. To believe the immense complexity and order of the universe, the existence of life, intelligence, emotion, will, and the soul itself, all came about by “chance” is the greatest exhibition of blind faith manifested among humanity today. Evolution is not as much a science as it is a religion. The religion of evolution is based upon a denial of God, and a rejection of the supernatural.



I do not believe Christians should be anti-knowledge, or opposed to understanding. Nor do I believe it is error to seek explanations of the human condition and the world around us. Quite the opposite. I am a great proponent of "true knowledge." I have been a life-long student in search of truth and understanding. Yahweh has Himself exhorted mankind to pursue wisdom, knowledge, and understanding.

Proverbs 4:5-9

"Get wisdom! Get understanding! Do not forget, nor turn away from the words of my mouth. Do not forsake her, and she will preserve you; Love her, and she will keep you. Wisdom is the principal thing; Therefore get wisdom. And in all your getting, get understanding. Exalt her, and she will promote you; She will bring you honor, when you embrace her. She will place on your head an ornament of grace; A crown of glory she will deliver to you."

One thing I have observed among Christians who are enthralled with the pretensions of science today as the repository of all truth and knowledge, is a tendency to reject, avoid, or denigrate any Bible doctrine that defies scientific explanation. This behavior seems especially pronounced among men of learning in the church who have attended Bible Colleges and Seminaries, who have earned degrees and have letters or titles appended to their names; Doctor of Divinity (D.D.), Doctor of Ministry (D.Min - a most unfortunate abbreviation), Doctor of Theology (Th.D.), Master of Divinity (M.Div.), Master of Theology (Th.M.), etc..

Although not true of all who hold such "Christian" degrees, there is an inclination among Christian men and women of letters to pursue honor among other educated, degreed professionals, whether they be Christians or non-Christians. This desire to have standing and honor in the world has resulted in many Christians attempting to distance themselves from doctrines and beliefs that have an appearance of foolishness, or unsophistication. Learned men, whether Christian or not, often find it galling to be criticized as naive, anti-scientific, superstitious, or to be accused of some failure of intellectual rigor or skepticism.

Although what is written here could be applied to other topics already addressed in this series, it

seems especially appropriate when embarking upon a discussion of giants in the Bible. Giants are often regarded as the fodder of myths, superstitions, and fables. They are lumped into the same categories as childhood monsters, dragons, unicorns, fairies, and leprechauns. It is difficult for someone who wishes to be held in high regard by those esteemed to be wise in this world to throw his/her support behind the Biblical accounts of a race of giants living concurrently with mankind. Yet, this is the reality the Scriptures present. I am unashamed to say I believe the Biblical narrative. The Bible, in fact, has quite a lot to say about a race of giants dwelling among men.

I intentionally use the expression “race of giants,” rather than treating giants as individual aberrations, for the Bible refers to them in this manner. There are a number of names given to the race of giants in the Bible. The variety of names are primarily the result of people of diverse languages having different words by which they referred to the giants. Some of the names are descriptive of characteristics of the giants, and others are related to ancestry. The Bible uses the names Nephilim, Anakim, Rephaim, Zamzummin, and Emim to refer to the race of giants. The term “Amorite” may also be a reference to giants. There were Amorites mentioned in the Bible who were not giants, but in certain Scriptures the word “Amorite” is clearly linked to giants. The name “Horites” may also be a reference to giants.

Deuteronomy 2:10-12

(The Emim lived there formerly, a people as great, numerous, and tall as the Anakim. Like the Anakim, they are also regarded as Rephaim (Giants), but the Moabites call them Emim. The Horites formerly lived in Seir, but the sons of Esau dispossessed them and destroyed them from before them and settled in their place, just as Israel did to the land of their possession which Yahweh gave to them.)

The passage above from the book of Deuteronomy does not tell us specifically whether the Horites were giants. The inclusion of their mention along with the Emim, Anakim, and Rephaim, all of whom were giants, does present the possibility, however. Interestingly, the name Horite means “cave-dweller or troglodyte.”

Horite

Choriy (kho-ree'); from OT:2356; cave-dweller or troglodyte

[*Strong's Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible*]

Perhaps there is some historic basis behind the mythology of giants living in caves, or giant trolls living in caves. A cave-troll, after all, is a tall, massive, and powerful human like being that is violent and wicked. Returning to the matter of there being a “race” of giants, this is borne out by the following Scriptures.

Deuteronomy 2:20-21

(That also was accounted **a land of giants**: giants dwelt therein in old time; and the Ammonites call them Zamzummims; **A people great, and many, and tall, as the Anakims**; but Yahweh destroyed them before them; and they succeeded them, and dwelt in their stead...)

This verse indicates that the entire land in reference was populated by a race of giants. It was not a

case of a few giants scattered among the people. The entire group of people were described as “*great, and many, and tall, as the Anakims.*” Yahweh, however, waged a war against these giants. The descendants of Abraham were instrumental in this warfare. Esau, the son of Isaac, and grandson of Abraham, slaughtered the Horites and occupied their territory. Jacob, the twin of Esau, also waged war against the giants (Genesis 48:21-22), as did his descendants when Joshua led them back to Canaan to conquer the land and its inhabitants. Before the Israelites even crossed the Jordan River to occupy the land between the river and the Great Sea (the Mediterranean), they fought against the Ammonites who were under the rule of Og, King of Bashan.

Deuteronomy 3:11

(For only Og king of Bashan was left of the remnant of the giants (Rephaim). Behold, his bedstead was an iron bedstead; it is in Rabbah of the sons of Ammon. Its length was nine cubits and its width four cubits by ordinary cubit.)

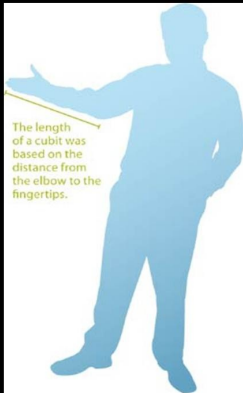
The Hebrew word “rephaim” is translated into English as “giants.” This word occurs 25 times in the Old Testament. At times it is understood to be the name of a people, while other times to be a reference to giants.

Deuteronomy 3:13

And the rest of Gilead, and all Bashan, being the kingdom of Og, gave I unto the half tribe of Manasseh; all the region of Argob, with all Bashan, ***which was called the land of giants.***

The translation of “rephaim” as “giants” is certainly appropriate. We are told that Og, King of Bashan, had a bed that was nine cubits in length, and four cubits wide. This equated to 13 feet by 6 feet. This bed size suggests that Og may have been between 11-12 feet tall. This bed size is calculated using the “ordinary” or “common” cubit, which equates to 18 English inches.

The <u>Cubit</u>	
Culture	Inches
Hebrew (short)	17.5
Egyptian	17.6
Common (short)	18
Babylonian (long)	19.8
Hebrew (long)	20.4
Egyptian (long)	20.6



The length of a cubit was based on the distance from the elbow to the fingertips.

The land of Bashan was referred to as “the land of the giants (rephaim),” though by the time Joshua led the Israelites in to take possession of the land, only Og remained of what were formerly a great and numerous people.

Joshua 13:12

All the kingdom of Og in Bashan, who reigned in Ashtaroth and Edrei, ***who remained of the remnant of the giants;*** for Moses had defeated and cast out these.

There were still a large number of giants across the Jordan in the land of Canaan whom the people of Israel would have to conquer. It was the presence of giants in the land that had so terrified the hearts of ten of the twelve spies that Moses sent into look over the land forty years earlier.

Numbers 13:27-29, 31-33

“We went in to the land where you sent us; and it certainly does flow with milk and honey, and this is its fruit. Nevertheless, ***the people who live in the land are strong***, and the cities are fortified and very large; and moreover, ***we saw the descendants of Anak there***. Amalek is living in the land of the Negev and the Hittites and the Jebusites and the Amorites are living in the hill country, and the Canaanites are living by the sea and by the side of the Jordan... ***We are not able to go up against the people, for they are too strong for us.***” So they gave out to the sons of Israel a bad report of the land which they had spied out, saying, “The land through which we have gone, in spying it out, is a land that devours its inhabitants; and ***all the people whom we saw in it are men of great size. There also we saw the Nephilim (the sons of Anak are part of the Nephilim); and we became like grasshoppers in our own sight, and so we were in their sight.***”

The term “Anakim” is a patronym denoting that the ancestor of this family of giants was Anak. The Anakim were a giant race of people, a sub-group of a broader race of giants known as “Nephilim.” The word “Nephilim” translates into English as “fallen ones.” (More on that later.) The Anakim were extraordinarily large people, giving rise to the comparison of the Israelites as grasshoppers. This was exaggeration, of course, for a grasshopper is no higher than a man’s foot. It was accurate, however, to describe the people of Canaan as bigger and taller than the Israelites, especially those who were of the family of the Anakim who were true giants.

Deuteronomy 1:28

Our brethren have made our hearts melt, saying, “The people are bigger and taller than we; the cities are large and fortified to heaven. And besides, we saw the sons of the Anakim there.”

The generation of Israelites who were afraid to face the giants died over the course of the next forty years as they wandered in the wilderness. When this unbelieving generation had passed away, Joshua led the next generation to take possession of the land of Canaan. Joshua did not deceive the people. He fully declared to them that there would be giants they would meet in battle. However, Joshua assured the people that Yahweh would fight for Israel, and the giants would be defeated.

Deuteronomy 9:1-3

“Hear, O Israel! You are crossing over the Jordan today to go in to dispossess nations greater and mightier than you, great cities fortified to heaven, ***a people great and tall, the sons of the Anakim***, whom you know and of whom you have heard it said, ‘***Who can stand before the sons of Anak?***’ Know therefore today that it is Yahweh your God who is crossing over before you as a consuming fire. He will destroy them and He will subdue them before you, so that you may drive them out and destroy them quickly, just as Yahweh has spoken to you.”

We can be assured that the giants in the land of Canaan were much more than a marginally taller and stronger race of people. They were extraordinarily larger, taller, and stronger than the Israelites. There had to be such a mismatch in physical attributes that the glory for victory in battle necessarily went

to Yahweh, rather than to Israel. The mismatch had to be so substantial that it would require faith in Yahweh's divine intervention for Israel to triumph. Yahweh intended this as a test of His chosen people's faith. If there was any chance of Israel triumphing through their own natural abilities, the people would not have looked to God to fight for them. They would have leaned upon the arm of the flesh, and when victory came they would have been puffed up in pride. No! This had to be a real test. Israel was facing much more than a marginally stronger and taller people. They were facing giants.

The victory of Israel was not obtained by their physical strength, or their cunning. Their victory was their faith. They believed that Yahweh would do what He said when He promised to fight for them. Yahweh had told Joshua that no enemy in the land would be able to stand against them. As Joshua and the Israelites reckoned on the promises of God, rather than on what their eyes beheld, they were made mighty in faith and found approval by God. The former generation were disapproved and rejected by Yahweh because they would not stand upon His word. They put sight before faith in Yahweh's promises.

Numbers 14:11

And Yahweh said to Moses, "How long will this people spurn Me? And how long will they not believe in Me, despite all the signs which I have performed in their midst?"

Psalms 78:22-33

Because they did not believe in God, and did not trust in His salvation. Yet He commanded the clouds above, and opened the doors of heaven; And He rained down manna upon them to eat, and gave them food from heaven. Man did eat the bread of angels; He sent them food in abundance. He caused the east wind to blow in the heavens; And by His power He directed the south wind. When He rained meat upon them like the dust, even winged fowl like the sand of the seas, then He let them fall in the midst of their camp, round about their dwellings. So they ate and were well filled; And their desire He gave to them. Before they had satisfied their desire, while their food was in their mouths, the anger of God rose against them, and killed some of their stoutest ones, and subdued the choice men of Israel. In spite of all this they still sinned, and did not believe in His wonderful works. So He brought their days to an end in futility, and their years in sudden terror.

We must not think it was a small test that caused the people to stumble in unbelief. There truly were giants in the land the Israelites were commanded to go in and possess. These were a people of great height and power. They were terrible to behold. Only an overwhelming faith in Yahweh could induce the men of Israel to face such foes with any hope of victory. They had to believe Yahweh would remove the strength of their adversaries while giving skill, stamina, and strength to His own people. This is precisely what Yahweh did.

Amos 2:9

"Yet it was I who destroyed the Amorite before them, though his height was like the height of cedars and he was strong as the oaks; I even destroyed his fruit above and his root below."

Joshua 24:18

"And Yahweh drove out from before us all the peoples, even the Amorites who lived in the land."

Just how tall and powerful were these giants that Israel faced? Other than Og, King of Bashan, there is no description given of their size and might until the days of David during the reign of King Saul. We are told that among the Philistines there was a family of giants, the most famous of whom was Goliath.

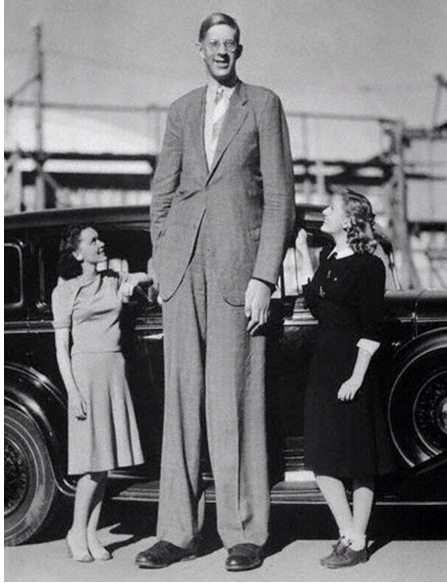
I Samuel 17:4-7

Then a champion came out from the armies of the Philistines named Goliath, from Gath, whose height was six cubits and a span. He had a bronze helmet on his head, and he was clothed with scale-armor which weighed five thousand shekels of bronze. He also had bronze greaves on his legs and a bronze javelin slung between his shoulders. The shaft of his spear was like a weaver's beam. The head of his spear weighed six hundred shekels of iron; his shield-carrier also walked before him.



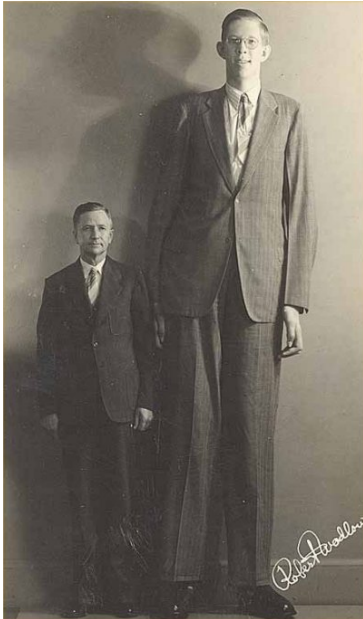
Rendering these weights and measures into their English equivalents, we are informed that Goliath was 9 feet 6 inches tall. His armor weighed 125 lbs. and the head of his spear weighed 15 lbs.. It is little wonder that King Saul and all of his army were daunted by this giant. They were looking through physical eyes and recognized that they were overmatched. Only David, looking through eyes of faith, saw that the Philistine giant could be conquered, for Goliath's strength was no match for that of Yahweh.

It is difficult to imagine how large Goliath actually was. It is inappropriate to describe Goliath as a large man. He was truly a giant. In modern times there have been some instances of men who grew to impressive stature. This is usually due to a physical defect such as the case of Robert Wadlow of Indiana in America. Robert Wadlow was born in 1918 and died in 1940 at the age of 22. He holds the record for being the tallest documented human in modern history. Robert had a tumor on his pituitary gland that caused his body to secrete excessive amounts of human growth hormone. By the time Robert graduated from high school he was 8 feet 4 inches tall. At his death he had obtained a height of 8 feet 11 inches.



Robert Wadlow

The following photograph shows Robert standing next to a man who is 5 feet 11 inches tall, the height of an average American male.



Robert Wadlow

Imagine now that Goliath was 7 inches taller than Robert Wadlow, and unlike most men who experience some form of gigantism today, Goliath was not crippled in any way, but was as strong and capable as he was tall. Less famous, but equally formidable, were giants by the name of Ishbi-benob Saph, and Lahmi the brother of Goliath. These giants were slain by David's mighty men, along with other impressive giants.

II Samuel 21:15-22

Now when the Philistines were at war again with Israel, David went down and his servants with him; and as they fought against the Philistines, David became weary. Then Ishbi-benob, who was among the descendants of the giant, the weight of whose spear was three hundred shekels of bronze in weight, was girded with a new sword, and he intended to kill David. But Abishai the son of Zeruiah helped him, and struck the Philistine and killed him. Then the men of David swore to him, saying, "You shall not go out again with us to battle, that you may not extinguish the lamp of Israel." Now it came about after this that there was war again with the Philistines at Gob; then Sibbecai the Hushathite struck down Saph, who was among the descendants of the giant. And there was war with the Philistines again at Gob, and Elhanan the son of Jaare the Bethlehemite killed [the brother of] Goliath the Gittite, the shaft of whose spear was like a weaver's beam. And there was war at Gath again, where there was a man of great stature who had six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot, twenty-four in number; and he also had been born to the giant. And when he defied Israel, Jonathan the son of Shimei, David's brother, struck him down. These four were born to the giant in Gath, and they fell by the hand of David and by the hand of his servants.

I Chronicles 20:4-8

Now it came about after this, that war broke out at Gezer with the Philistines; then Sibbecai the Hushathite killed Sippai, one of the descendants of the giants, and they were subdued. And there was war with the Philistines again, and Elhanan the son of Jair killed Lahmi the brother of Goliath the Gittite, the shaft of whose spear was like a weaver's beam. And again there was war at Gath, where there was a man of great stature who had twenty-four fingers and toes, six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot; and he also was descended from the giants. And when he taunted Israel, Jonathan the son of Shimea, David's brother, killed him. These were descended from the giants in Gath, and they fell by the hand of David and by the hand of his servants.

I Chronicles 11:22-23

Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, the son of a valiant man of Kabzeel, mighty in deeds, struck down the two sons of Ariel of Moab. He also went down and killed a lion inside a pit on a snowy day. And he killed an Egyptian, a man of great stature five cubits tall. Now in the Egyptian's hand was a spear like a weaver's beam, but he went down to him with a club and snatched the spear from the Egyptian's hand, and killed him with his own spear.

Nowhere else in the Bible do we read of a group of men who had more success in slaying giants than in the accounts of David and his mighty men. David led by example, being a man of great faith in Yahweh, and his men were greatly emboldened by David's victories. Immediately after the account of the victory of David's men over the giants in the book of II Samuel, there is recorded a magnificent psalm of David. In it he rightly ascribes the victory to Yahweh.

II Samuel 22:30-40

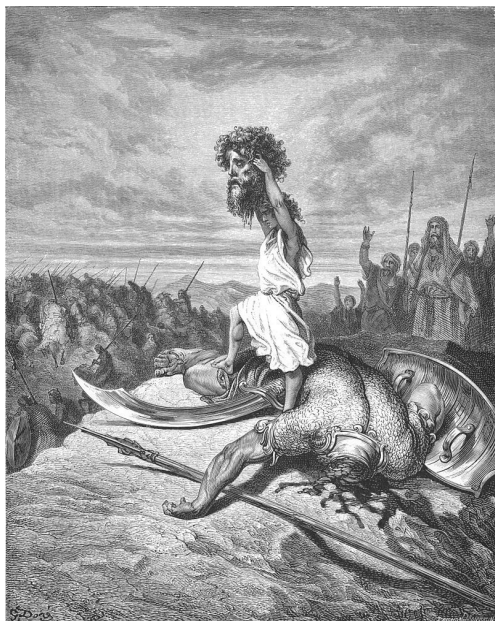
For by You I can run against a troop; By my God I can leap over a wall. As for God, His way is perfect; The word of Yahweh is proven; He is a shield to all who trust in Him. For who is God, except Yahweh? And who is a rock, except our God? God is my strength and power, and He makes my way perfect. He makes my feet like the feet of deer, and sets me on my high places. He teaches my hands to make war, so that my arms can bend a bow of bronze. You have also given me the shield of Your

salvation; Your gentleness has made me great. You enlarged my path under me; So my feet did not slip. I have pursued my enemies and destroyed them; Neither did I turn back again till they were destroyed. And I have destroyed them and wounded them, so that they could not rise; They have fallen under my feet. For You have armed me with strength for the battle; You have subdued under me those who rose against me.

David's victory was not in his own strength or prowess as a warrior. His victory was in his faith in God. By faith David slew the giant Goliath.

I Samuel 17:45-47

Then David said to the Philistine, "You come to me with a sword, a spear, and a javelin, but I come to you in the name of Yahweh of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom you have taunted. This day Yahweh will deliver you up into my hands, and I will strike you down and remove your head from you. And I will give the dead bodies of the army of the Philistines this day to the birds of the sky and the wild beasts of the earth, that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel, and that all this assembly may know that Yahweh does not deliver by sword or by spear; for the battle is Yahweh's and He will give you into our hands."



David with the Head of Goliath

One fact observed from the testimony of Scripture is that no giant is ever described as righteous. The giants are always the adversaries of God's people. Yahweh Himself declared a war of annihilation against them. Why was this so? The answer lies in understanding the unique ancestry of the giants. The race of giants were the spawn of fallen angels who engaged in sexual intercourse with women. I realize the paternity of the giants is greatly debated among Christians. Many deny that angels are even capable of cohabiting with women and producing offspring. Consequently, I will be patient and thorough in setting forth the Biblical evidence supporting this view.

We read earlier that the Anakim, who were giants, were a subset of the giant race known as Nephilim.

Let us revisit that verse.

Numbers 13:33

“There also we saw the Nephilim (the sons of Anak are part of the Nephilim); and we became like grasshoppers in our own sight, and so we were in their sight.”

The Bible does not leave us guessing as to the identity and origin of the Nephilim. As I stated previously, the name Nephilim means “fallen ones.” Nephilim is derived from the Hebrew word “naphal” which *Strong’s Concordance* defines in the following manner.

naphal (naw-fal'); a primitive root; to fall, in a great variety of applications

Following are some Scripture verses that include the Hebrew word naphal.

Genesis 2:21

And Yahweh God caused a deep sleep to **fall** (naphal) upon Adam and he slept...

Genesis 14:10

And the valley of Siddim was full of slimepits; and the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah fled, and **fell** (naphal) there; and they that remained fled to the mountain.

Genesis 17:3

And Abram **fell** (naphal) on his face: and God talked with him...

Exodus 21:33-34

“And if a man opens a pit, or digs a pit and does not cover it over, and an ox or a donkey **falls** (naphal) into it, the owner of the pit shall make restitution...”

I believe it is important to establish well the meaning of the word “Nephilim” as “fallen ones,” for it has a great bearing upon the identity of these beings. You can see from the examples cited above, and from many more Scriptures, that this word conveys the sense of falling, or declining downward. The action of climbing down off of a camel was described by the use of this word “naphal.”



Rebekah Dismounts a Camel

Genesis 24:64

And Rebekah lifted up her eyes, and when she saw Isaac she *dismounted* (naphal) from the camel.

This word “naphal” is also used to describe the act of Yahweh casting down those who are workers of iniquity. Such a description is befitting the angels who sinned and were cast out of heaven.

Psalms 36:12

There are the workers of iniquity *fallen* (naphal): they are cast down, and shall not be able to rise.

Psalms 5:10

Pronounce them guilty, O God! Let them *fall* (naphal) by their own counsels; Cast them out in the multitude of their transgressions, for they have rebelled against You.

Truly, the angels who fell are workers of iniquity. They are rebels against God. Therefore, they have been thrust out of heaven by violence. They have fallen to the earth. Speaking prophetically of the fall of Satan, the prophet Isaiah wrote:

Isaiah 14:12-15

How you have *fallen* (naphal) from heaven, O star of the morning, son of the dawn! You have been cut down to the earth, you who have weakened the nations! But you said in your heart, “I will ascend to heaven; I will raise my throne above the stars of God, and I will sit on the mount of assembly in the recesses of the north. I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High.” Nevertheless you will be thrust down to Sheol, to the recesses of the pit.

Satan has fallen (naphal) from heaven. He is therefore a Nephilim, a fallen one. Although Satan is a Nephilim, a fallen one, we have no Biblical account of his having engaged in sexual activity with the daughters of men. It is very doubtful that he has done so, for the Scriptures declare that those angels who transgressed in this manner have been judged before the normal time of judgment and sealed away in chains (Jude 6). Not all Nephilim (fallen ones) have transgressed by engaging in fornication with women. There were many angels who joined Satan in his rebellion against Yahweh. These ones were cast from the heavenly realms where the throne of Yahweh resides. Like Satan, they too experienced a fall (naphal) from heaven. They are Nephilim, fallen ones.

Revelation 12:9

And the great dragon was thrown down, the serpent of old who is called the devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world; he was thrown down to the earth, and *his angels were thrown down with him*.

In a previous chapter I noted that Satan has been cast down in the past. This was at his original rebellion. At that time the earth was destroyed, made formless and void, and sealed in darkness. After a long season of unknown duration Yahweh began the work of re-creating the earth. This is described in Genesis 1:2, continuing to the end of the chapter. Satan was released at this time, along with those angels who fell with him. Thus we observe him in the garden in the form of a serpent deceiving Eve. This act reveals that the “Nephilim” were “on the earth” from the early days of man, for Satan is the chief of the Nephilim, or fallen ones. Satan and his angels will be cast down and judged two more

times before their rebellion is thoroughly broken, three being a divine number of completion and fulness.



Satan and His Angels Cast Down

There is no Biblical reason to expect that Satan was the only fallen one among the angels to walk upon the earth and interact with humanity. Satan is the archetype. We can surmise that those angels who fell with him have followed his own pattern of wickedness. Is it not interesting to note that Satan approached the woman, Eve, and deceived her into engaging in forbidden behavior? It is no contradiction to suggest that the angels who fell with Satan have followed this same pattern of approaching women and enticing them to participate in behavior that is a transgression of the will of Yahweh. Indeed, the Bible tells us that this is what has occurred.

Genesis 6:1-4

Now it came about, when men began to multiply on the face of the land, and daughters were born to them, that *the sons of God* saw that the daughters of men were beautiful; and they took wives for themselves, whomever they chose. Then Yahweh said, "My Spirit shall not strive with man forever, because he also is flesh; nevertheless his days shall be one hundred and twenty years." The Nephilim (fallen ones) were on the earth in those days, and also afterward, when *the sons of God* came in to the daughters of men, and they bore children to them. Those were the mighty men who were of old, men of renown.

Much of the debate as to the identity of the Nephilim has revolved around the phrase "the sons of God." In the Hebrew, the expression is written as "bene ha Elohim." To whom does this expression refer? This expression is found three times in the book of Job, which along with Genesis is considered to be among the oldest of the books of the Bible. We would expect that due to the close proximity in the time of their authorship, these books would find much correspondence in the usage and meaning of the Hebrew expressions found in them. In the book of Job the Hebrew phrase "bene ha Elohim" is used as a reference to the angels, including those who have fallen.

In an earlier chapter I wrote about the meaning of the expression "only begotten Son of God," which is used as a reference to Yahshua the Messiah. "Only begotten" is in the Greek "monogenes." That

is to say, Christ is the only direct generation of the Father. Yahshua is the only being directly created by the Father. All other things were created through the agency of the Son. Yahshua created man, and He created the angels.

Colossians 1:15-16

He [Yahshua] is the image of the invisible God, the first-born of all creation. For by Him all things were created, both in the heavens and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities - all things have been created by Him and for Him.

The words “thrones,” “dominions,” “rulers,” and “authorities” identify angelic beings. Paul, in another of his epistles identifies the fallen angels as being included in this group of powerful, ruling beings.

Ephesians 6:12

For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places.

The apostle Paul is describing here the fallen ones. These “spiritual hosts of wickedness” are the Nephilim. They are the adversary of the righteous. They were not created evil, but they turned to evil after they were created. In their original condition, they were all the holy sons of God (bene ha Elohim). Satan in his original condition was also a holy one.

Ezekiel 28:15

You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created, until unrighteousness was found in you.

The Biblical definition of a son is “the male offspring, or generation, of another.” Yahweh directly generated Yahshua. In this relationship, Yahweh is Father and Yahshua is Son. Similarly, Adam was created by a direct act of Yahshua. Because of this, Adam is described as a “son of God.” An interesting thing is observed in the Gospel of Luke as the genealogy of Yahshua is given. Yahshua’s lineage is traced back through Joseph, whom people supposed to be His father. Each man named in the list is declared to be the son of another man. This pattern continues all the way to Adam where we are met with the only exception to this pattern. Because Adam was not descended from any other man, but was created by Elohim, he is described as “the son of God.”

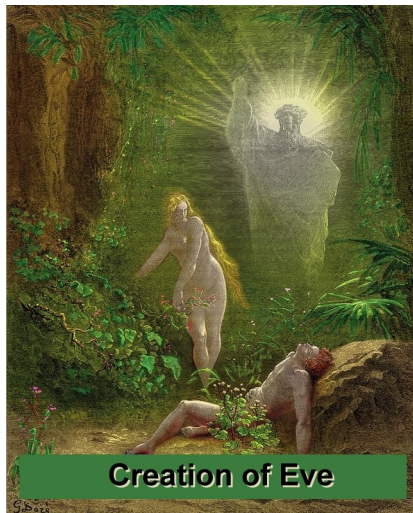
Luke 3:23-38

And when He began His ministry, Yahshua Himself was about thirty years of age, being supposedly the son of Joseph, the son of Eli... the son of Seth, the son of *Adam, the son of God.*

The angels, like Adam, are the creation of God. None of the angels came into being through the act of sexual reproduction. The reason for this is made plain as we compare the angels to Adam. Adam was created male. By himself, Adam was incapable of procreation. The Bible informs us of this in the second chapter of Genesis.

Genesis 2:18-25

Then Yahweh God said, “It is not good for the man to be alone; I will make him a helper suitable for him.” And out of the ground Yahweh God formed every beast of the field and every bird of the sky, and brought them to the man to see what he would call them; and whatever the man called a living creature, that was its name. And the man gave names to all the cattle, and to the birds of the sky, and to every beast of the field, but for Adam there was not found a helper suitable for him. So Yahweh God caused a deep sleep to fall upon the man, and he slept; then He took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh at that place. And Yahweh God fashioned into a woman the rib which He had taken from the man, and brought her to the man. And the man said, “This is now bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh; She shall be called Woman, because she was taken out of Man.” For this cause a man shall leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave to his wife; and they shall become one flesh.



Creation of Eve by Gustave Dore

If Yahweh had not fashioned for the man a helper, a sexual counterpart to his masculine nature, Adam, like the angels, would have been incapable of reproduction. Had Yahweh not formed woman for man, it might be said of Adam, as it is of the angels, that he does not marry. It would be error to derive from such a statement that Adam was without gender identity. He was created male. So too, we cannot conclude that angels lack sexual identity because the angels in heaven do not marry. Yahweh did not create for the angels a sexual counterpart. The holy angels abide contentedly in the condition Yahweh has appointed to them. The fallen ones, however, have given themselves to wickedness. They disregard the will of God, choosing to pursue their own will and desires. Some of the Nephilim have greatly transgressed the will of Yahweh by going after “strange flesh,” and committing acts of fornication.

Jude 6-7

And angels who did not keep their own domain, but abandoned their proper abode, He has kept in age-enduring bonds under darkness for the judgment of the great day. Just as Sodom and Gomorrah and the cities around them, since they in the same way as these indulged in gross immorality and went after strange flesh, are exhibited as an example, in undergoing the punishment of age-enduring fire.

Yahweh considers the actions of these fallen angels to be “gross immorality.” The actions of the

Nephilim who took wives for themselves from among the daughters of men, is compared to the abominations committed by the men of Sodom and Gomorrah. These men abandoned the natural order established by Yahweh. They forsook the function, role, or utility of the woman as a sexual partner, and burned in their lust for one another (Romans 1:27). Jude conveys to us that some of the fallen angels followed a similar course by rejecting the natural order of Yahweh. They lusted in their hearts after the daughters of men, and engaged in sexual relations with them which was a transgression of the will of their Creator.

In four verses in the sixth chapter of Genesis, a wealth of information is conveyed to us. The motive of the angels is given. Some very popular writings exist today that suggest that the angels were motivated by a desire to corrupt the genetic purity of mankind. It is proposed that by mixing the seed of angels with the DNA of man that the promised Seed of the woman, Yahshua the Messiah, would be prevented from coming forth. This idea was set forth by E.W. Bullinger in the late 1800s and early 1900s. It has been greatly popularized by the writings of Tom Horn and others. Nevertheless, the Bible does not reveal this to be the angels' motive. Let us review again what is written in Genesis.

Genesis 6:1-2

Now it came about, when men began to multiply on the face of the land, and daughters were born to them, that ***the sons of God saw that the daughters of men were beautiful; and they took wives for themselves, whomever they chose.***

Here the matter is stated very plainly. The bene ha Elohim, the sons of God (aka the fallen angels) SAW that the daughters of men were beautiful. Here we observe a plain statement of cause and effect. The sons of God saw the daughters of men were beautiful, consequently, because they had no regard for the will of God and sought only to fulfill their own will, they took wives for themselves, whomever they chose.

Some deny that the angels are capable of lust, or other human failings. This is not true. The eyes have always been a portal through which evil enters. This is a fact that is as true for angels as it is for men. Yahshua stated:

Matthew 6:22-23

“The lamp of the body is the eye; if therefore your eye is clear, your whole body will be full of light. But if your eye is bad, your whole body will be full of darkness. If therefore the light that is in you is darkness, how great is the darkness!”

The eye is capable of admitting both darkness and light. We must therefore be careful what we set our attention on. If we dwell too long on something while entertaining evil thoughts toward the object of our attention, we give sin room to take root and grow. Ultimately, if our eye remains evil, it will give rise to the fruit of disobedience and rebellion.

I John 2:16

For all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh and the lust of the eyes and the boastful pride of life, is not from the Father, but is from the world.

James 1:14-15

But each one is tempted when he is carried away and enticed by his own lust. Then when lust has conceived, it gives birth to sin; and when sin is accomplished, it brings forth death.

The Scriptures reveal that Satan's initial sin began with the eyes. He was beguiled with his own beauty and magnificence. As his eye remained upon his own glorious image, pride and conceit found place in his heart, ultimately leading to willful rebellion.

Ezekiel 28:17

"Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty; You corrupted your wisdom by reason of your splendor."

The apostle Paul admonished Timothy not to appoint a new convert to a position of leadership among the body of Christ "*lest he become conceited and fall into the condemnation incurred by the devil*" (I Timothy 3:6). Satan became conceited by setting his eyes upon his own beauty. Is there not a perfect synchronicity between Satan's fall and the angels who were enticed by the beauty of women? Both entered into sin by setting their eyes upon that which was beautiful while giving place to selfish thoughts.

It is no sin to look at a woman and acknowledge that she is beautiful anymore than it would have been a sin for Satan to recognize that Yahweh had created him to be a beautiful being. The sin was in setting one's attention on that which was beautiful, allowing the imagination to suggest selfish actions that were contrary to the will of God. Rather than taking every thought captive to the obedience of Christ, Satan gave his mind over to entertain conceited and prideful thoughts regarding his own magnificence. Similarly, the fallen angels who beheld the beauty of women did not arrest their desires. They continued to gaze with desire at the women until lust had enticed them, conceived, and gave birth to sin. They went after flesh that Yahweh had not created for the angels. Woman was created for man. It was a gross violation of the order of Yahweh's creation for angels to take wives to themselves from the daughters of men.

I believe we need look no further than what is declared in Genesis 6:2 to understand the motive for these angels' transgression. We need not imagine that they were attempting to corrupt the genetics of humanity so the promised Deliverer could not come forth. The angels were tempted by lust as they observed the beauty of women. Compare the following two verses side by side.

Genesis 3:6

When the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable to make one wise, she took from its fruit and ate...

Genesis 6:2

The sons of God saw that the daughters of men were beautiful; and they took wives for themselves, whomever they chose.

The woman saw the forbidden fruit was attractive, and she ate. The sons of God saw that the daughters of men were beautiful, and they took wives. Cause and effect. Temptation and sin. This is

the simplicity of the narrative. We need not complicate it.

The Bible does not tell us why Yahweh chose for men to have a sexual counterpart, but He did not provide the angels with the same. Angels exist in vast numbers. Each one was brought into being by a creative act of Yahshua. In contrast, God created only two men.

I Corinthians 15:45-49

“The first man, Adam, became a living soul.” The last Adam became a life-giving spirit. However, the spiritual is not first, but the natural; then the spiritual. The first man is from the earth, earthy; the second man is from heaven. As is the earthy, so also are those who are earthy; and as is the heavenly, so also are those who are heavenly. And just as we have borne the image of the earthy, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly.”

Paul refers to Adam as “the first man” and Yahshua as “the second man.” Both of these sons of God are able to have myriads of other sons through the act of reproduction. The first man “is from the earth, earthy,” therefore the reproduction of this first man is carnal, or physical. The second man “is from heaven,” and His sons are born through means of spiritual reproduction.

John 3:5-8

Yahshua answered, “Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. That which is born of the flesh is flesh, and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. Do not marvel that I said to you, ‘You must be born again.’ The wind blows where it wishes and you hear the sound of it, but do not know where it comes from and where it is going; so is everyone who is born of the Spirit.”

We cannot observe the spiritual union that leads to the reproduction of the Spirit of Christ within us, but we can tell it has occurred as we look at the results. Even as the wind is invisible, yet it produces an effect upon all it touches, so too does the Spirit of Christ animate and bring new life to all whom He moves upon.

The angels have a different calling than the first and second man. Their number was established when they were created.

Revelation 5:11

And I looked, and I heard the voice of many angels around the throne and the living creatures and the elders; and the number of them was myriads of myriads, and thousands of thousands...

At this time, I will endeavor to dispel some common misconceptions regarding angels. These false ideas about the nature of angels result from a lack of carefulness in studying the Scriptures. The first misconception is that angels are sexless, and therefore incapable of reproduction. This doctrine is largely the result of a misinterpretation of the following words of Christ.

Matthew 22:30

For in the resurrection they neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are like angels in heaven.

Some, in reading these words of Yahshua, mistakenly conclude that angels are asexual (without sex). This is NOT what Yahshua said. Yahshua said nothing about the angels' gender. He spoke only of the act of marriage. Angels in heaven do not marry. Why is this so? One obvious reason is that all angels are masculine. Despite popular depictions of angels as female, there is not a single description of an female angel in the Bible. They always appear as masculine. The language used to describe them is also masculine. One well known example is the following.

Genesis 19:1-6

Now **the two angels** came to Sodom in the evening as Lot was sitting in the gate of Sodom. When Lot saw them, he rose to meet them and bowed down with his face to the ground. And he said, "Now behold, my lords, please turn aside into your servant's house, and spend the night, and wash your feet; then you may rise early and go on your way." They said however, "No, but we shall spend the night in the square." Yet he urged them strongly, so they turned aside to him and entered his house; and he prepared a feast for them, and baked unleavened bread, and they ate. Before they lay down, the men of the city, the men of Sodom, surrounded the house, both young and old, all the people from every quarter; and they called to Lot and said to him, "**Where are the men** who came to you tonight? Bring them out to us that we may have relations with them."

The homosexual men of Sodom perceived the angels to be attractive men. They desired to have sexual relations with them. The angels did not appear genderless, nor did they appear female. They were obviously perceived as masculine.



An objection may be raised to refute the identity of the "sons of God" as angels based upon Christ's statement that the angels in heaven do not marry. A person might say this invalidates any possibility that it is angels being referred to in Genesis 6, for we are told "the sons of God saw that the daughters of men were beautiful; and **they took wives for themselves**, whomever they chose." How can we reconcile Christ's statement that the angels in heaven do not marry, and the statement in Genesis 6 that the sons of God took wives for themselves?

We must not overlook the fact that Christ added a very important qualification to His description of the angels. Yahshua did NOT say "angels" do not marry, or take wives for themselves. He specifically referenced "**the angels in heaven**." This is a critical distinction, for the angels in heaven are holy angels. They live to do the will of Yahweh. They have not transgressed by going after strange flesh, and cohabiting with the daughters of men. The distinctiveness of the will of God being done by the holy angels **in heaven** is expressed in the very well known Scripture passage referred to as "The Lord's Prayer."

Matthew 6:10

“Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done, on earth as it is in heaven.”

In these words, Yahshua informs His disciples that the will of God is done in heaven. This is why Satan and the angels who rebelled could not remain there. Willful disobedience cannot abide in the presence of God.

Every word uttered by the Son of God was a manifestation of the will and wisdom of Yahweh. We would err if we concluded that the words “in heaven” appended to the mention of the angels is in any way superfluous. Yahshua was speaking of a very specific group of angels when He made reference to them neither marrying, nor giving in marriage. He did NOT have in mind the fallen angels. They are called fallen angels because they have been cast out of heaven. If Christ had meant to state that no angels married, or took wives to themselves, He would not have added the limiting words “in heaven” after naming the angels.

Let us move on to another common misunderstanding of the Scriptures that leads some to reject the mention in Genesis of “sons of God” as a reference to angels. This objection is based upon the following verses of Scripture.

Hebrews 1:3-5

When [Yahshua] had made purification of sins, He sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high; having become as much better than the angels, as He has inherited a more excellent name than they. For to which of the angels did He ever say, “You are My Son, today I have begotten You”?

Some point to this passage from Hebrews and say, “See, it says right here that God never calls the angels His sons.” Brothers and sisters, we must do better in applying ourselves to an understanding of the Scriptures. The apostle Paul has elsewhere admonished us to “rightly divide the word of God.” Many people are wrongly dividing God’s word. They are wresting thoughts and doctrines from the Scriptures that Yahweh never intended.

Even as we can easily arrive at a wrong understanding of Christ’s words in Matthew 22:30 if we ignore the words “in heaven,” so too might a person derive a wrong interpretation of Paul’s words above if they truncate the quotation. Paul is citing a specific Scripture (Psalms 2:7). Note that the words “You are My Son, today, I have begotten You” are in quotes. Paul’s point is that this Scripture quotation was spoken to Yahshua, and not to any other being. Only Yahshua was directly “begotten” of the Father. All other creatures were created by and for the Son. Paul is NOT denying that angels are called “sons of God.” He is saying that Christ has a higher, preeminent position than the angels due to His being the only begotten Son of the Father. Only to Yahshua did the Father say, “You are My Son, *today I have begotten You.*”

Let us look now to the testimony in the book of Job.

Job 1:6-7

Now there was a day when the sons of God (bene ha Elohim) came to present themselves before Yahweh, and Satan also came among them. And Yahweh said to Satan, “From where do you come?”

Then Satan answered Yahweh and said, “From roaming about on the earth and walking around on it.”

Do you perceive a harmony here with what is recorded in Genesis 6? Satan is chief of the Nephilim, the fallen ones. On a certain day the angelic hosts come before Yahweh to present themselves, and Satan is with them. Satan’s presence among the “bene ha Elohim” is not an aberration, for he too is one of them. What could be more natural than to state that the sons of God appeared before Yahweh on a certain day and Satan was with them?

Satan responds to Yahweh’s question by announcing that he has been “roaming about on the earth and walking around on it.” This was obviously Satan’s habit in those days, for the very same words are repeated in the following chapter of Job when Satan appears once more before Yahweh. It may seem odd to us today to think of Satan and his angels walking about openly on the earth, even being seen of men and interacting with them, but this is what the Bible declares to have occurred.

Genesis 6:4

The Nephilim were on the earth in those days, and also afterward, when the sons of God came in to the daughters of men, and they bore children to them. Those were the mighty men who were of old, men of renown.

There is a perfect harmony between the testimony of Genesis chapter six and the book of Job. Both reveal that the fallen angels walked upon the earth in the days before and after the flood of Noah. Much could be written about the corroborating testimony of other peoples and nations regarding this matter. In the mythology and religions of many cultures there are stories of the gods coming down from the heavens, espying some beautiful woman, and taking her for a wife. In these stories, the offspring from these unions are mighty men, and famous, matching perfectly the testimony of Genesis. Those whom the Greeks, Romans, and other cultures called “gods” were actually fallen angels. They were Nephilim. When they took wives from among the daughters of men, their offspring were “mighty men of old, men of renown.”

Perseus, the first of the Greek heroes is an example of such a tale. He was reputed to be the son of Zeus and the maiden Danae. His exploits are legendary. He fits the description of a mighty man of old, and a man of great renown.



Perseus

We read previously from Numbers the thirteenth chapter that the sons of Anak (the Anakim) were a part of the Nephilim. The Anakim were a race of giants. How could this race of giants be part of the Nephilim if the word Nephilim refers only to the fallen angels? The answer leads us to the discovery that both the fallen angels and their progeny were referred to as Nephilim. This was a very common occurrence in the Scriptures. Many nations of people were identified by their forebears. The most common example of this is observed in the name "Israelites." The Israelites are the offspring of Israel, the son of Isaac, and grandson of Abraham.

The Canaanites were (at least partially) descended from Canaan, the son of Ham, and grandson of Noah. The Ishmaelites were descendants of Ishmael. Dozens of such examples could be cited from the Bible. Very frequently we see these nations described solely by reference to the name of the father. Thus, instead of Israelites, the nation may be referred to as Israel. Instead of Moabites, we read of Moab. In place of Edomites, the Bible speaks of Edom.

Numbers 20:21

Thus Edom refused to allow Israel to pass through his territory; so Israel turned away from him.

The verse above reads like a conflict between two men named Edom and Israel. The truth, however, is that both Edom (Esau) and Israel had been dead for centuries. What is described is a conflict between latter generations of their offspring. So too we find that the word Nephilim is used to speak of the fallen angels and their offspring.

It is little wonder that Yahweh declared war on the race of giants descended from the fallen angels. They were conceived in an act of rebellion. The disobedience of the fallen angels required judgment. The unlawful seed they raised up had to be expunged from the earth. This was accomplished the first time at the flood of Noah. All who survived the flood were eight members of Noah's family. After the flood the fallen ones continued their transgression, and more giants were born to women. In the Bible we read of the great majority of these giants dwelling in the land of Canaan. Yahweh's chosen people Israel were given the task of wiping out this race of giants, removing them from the face of the earth. Thus Yahweh judged them a second time. Yahweh also judged the angels who transgressed His will by choosing wives from among the daughters of men.

II Peter 2:4-10

For if God did not spare angels when they sinned, but cast them into hell and committed them to pits of darkness, reserved for judgment... then the Lord knows how to rescue the godly from temptation, and to keep the unrighteous under punishment for the day of judgment, and especially those who indulge the flesh in its corrupt desires and despise authority.

Do these words not describe perfectly the actions of the Nephilim? They indulged the flesh and despised the authority of God. Consequently, God has delivered them into chains and pits of darkness, awaiting the day of judgment.

I would like to address what is perhaps the most common alternative interpretation of Genesis 6:1-4. This interpretation suggests that the expression "sons of God" is a reference to the descendants of Seth, the son of Adam, while the expression "daughters of men" is a reference to the female

descendants of Cain. The argument suggests that it was a violation of the will of God for these two lines to intermarry, for the Cain line was wicked, while the Seth line was righteous. However, there is no indication anywhere in the Bible that Yahweh had forbid the descendants of these two brothers to intermarry.

It is not too difficult to pick apart this interpretation of the Genesis account. One of the foundational errors upon which this view is predicated is the assumption that among the descendants of Adam there were two distinct lines that did not intermarry. I understand how such a view arose. The Bible names only three sons of Adam: Cain, Abel, and Seth. Cain murdered Abel, leaving only two descendants of Adam whose names are recorded for us in the Bible. Furthermore, the book of Genesis provides a partial genealogy of these two men. The Cain line is remarkable for its emphasis on earthly technology and arts. It also includes another murderer, this being Lamech, who is the fifth generation in descent from Cain.

By contrast, there are a number of godly men mentioned in the lineage of Seth. Among them are Enoch who walked with God and then was translated, not seeing death, and Noah who was declared righteous in his generation. The Bible, however, does not tell us that all of Cain's descendants were evil, or that all of Seth's were righteous. In fact, both lines had produced thousands of descendants by the time of Noah's flood, Noah being the tenth generation of mankind with Adam being the first. Of all the multitude of descendants of Seth only one man was declared righteous in the generation of Noah. This leads to the obvious conclusion that the Sethite line was not as righteous as some would suggest.

A further chink in the argument is uncovered when it is recognized that Adam actually had many more sons than the three named, along with many daughters. All of Adam's descendants were likely to intermarry with one another for the pool of available suitors started off small.

Genesis 5:4-5

Then the days of Adam after he became the father of Seth were eight hundred years, and he had other sons and daughters.

Imagine how many sons Adam could have had in 800 years. The strength and vitality of man (and woman) was far greater in those days before the flood. It is not unreasonable to suggest that Adam had as many as 100 sons, possibly more. To do so Eve would only have had to be pregnant 75 years out of 800. Gideon lived a far shorter life and he had 70 sons (Judges 8:30).

The fact that Adam had other sons than Seth and Cain destroys the two lineage argument. In fact, the fallacy of the Sethite and Cainite argument is revealed when one asks "Where did Seth and Cain get their wives?" The only possible answer is that they married their sisters, who were all descended from Adam and Eve.

Those who make the argument for "the sons of God" being a reference to the lineage of Seth, face another obstacle when it comes to identifying the expression "daughters of men." In the Hebrew the actual expression is "benot ha adam." The word "Adam" is both the name of mankind's first patriarch and the Hebrew word for "man." It is quite difficult to wrest from the text any rationale that would

justify rendering “daughters of Adam” as “daughters of Cain.” The argument is based strictly on the assumption that the descendants of Cain were all wicked and that the name “Adam” somehow described this wickedness, while the line of Seth was righteous, earning them the highly favorable expression of “sons of God.” This is all conjecture, however.

If we are to look to the Scriptures for evidence, there is a far better argument to be made for Seth’s line to be referred to as descendants of Adam than for the Cainite line. In the genealogy recorded in Luke we looked at previously, we find the phrase, “Seth, the son of Adam.” Furthermore, after Seth was born to Adam and Eve, the Scriptures provide the following statement.

Genesis 5:3

When Adam had lived one hundred and thirty years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, according to his image, and named him Seth.

Since the Bible describes Seth as the image and likeness of Adam, it seems difficult to argue that Cain’s descendants should be called after the name of Adam, while the Sethite line should not. The plain and obvious meaning of the expression “benot ha Adam” is the daughters of Adam, or the daughters of men. There is no contextual justification to suggest that “benot ha Adam” refers only to the daughters of Cain. This entire argument is necessitated only because some Christians have rejected the more defensible interpretation that the fallen angels, referred to as “bene ha Elohim,” had sexual relations with women resulting in men of renown and great stature being born.

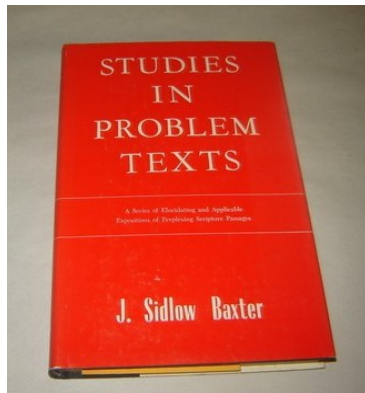
A further argument against the Seth/Cain view is that it would have been very easy for the author of Genesis to write that the sons of Seth saw that the daughters of Cain were beautiful, and began to take wives from them. Yet, neither Seth, nor Cain, receive any mention.

An additional, and equally problematic difficulty is describing why the sons of the Sethite line marrying the daughters of the Cainite line should have produced men of renown, much less have resulted in a race of giants. I have read some attempts to defend this view, and they are particularly weak on this point. One author suggested that the offspring of these inter-family marriages would have enjoyed a political advantage, being accepted by both lines. Consequently they would have risen to prominence. I do not find much merit in such an argument, and find it hard to imagine why such slight political advantages, if they did exist, should merit mention in the Scripture. In contrast, if the fallen angels took wives to themselves from the descendants of Adam, and through them sired men of immense stature and strength, this would certainly be worthy of mention.

A final difficulty I will mention that arises from the Seth/Cain view is that if we deny the transgression of the fallen angels described in Genesis chapter 6, we are left without any explanation for the passages in Jude and II Peter that describe the angels transgressing. I have read some attempts at explanation by those who hold to the Seth/Cain interpretation, but they were wholly dissatisfying as they deny there was any sexual transgression by the fallen angels warranting comparison with the citizens of Sodom and Gomorrah, despite the linking of these events in these Scripture passages.

One of the popular advocates of the Seth/Cain view of Genesis 6 is J. Sidlow Baxter, a Baptist minister from England who wrote at some length on this subject. Mr. Baxter produced a book in the

1970s titled *Studies in Problem Texts*. In this book he devoted 40 pages to discussing Genesis 6:1-4. He wrote additional pages on this subject in his magnum opus *Explore the Book*, which ran to a length of 1,760 pages. I have found that many who espouse the Sethith/Cainite interpretation cite Mr. Baxter's writings. A brother in Christ generously scanned and forwarded to me Mr. Baxter's treatise on this subject from the book *Studies in Problem Texts*. Although I found the arguments set forth by J. Sidlow Baxter to be faulty, and easily refuted, I deemed it a profitable experience to review his arguments. This exercise pointed out to me the various objections individuals have to the Biblical narrative of fallen angels cohabiting with women.



Toward the beginning of Mr. Baxter's presentation of his arguments on this subject, he writes the following:

As for the suggestion that these evil angels somehow took human bodies to themselves and thus became capable of sex functions, it is sheer absurdity, as anyone can see. Both on psychological and physiological grounds it is unthinkable. We all know what an exquisitely delicate, intricate, intimate, sensitive inter-relation and inter-reaction there exists between the human body and the human mind or soul. This is because soul and body came into being together through the wonderful process of a human birth, and are mysteriously united in one human personality. Thus, and only thus, is it that the sensations of the body become experiences of the mind. This psycho-physical parallelism of the human personality is a mystery; but it is an absolute and universal reality.

Now if angels merely took bodies and miraculously indwelt them for the time being, their doing so could not have made them in the slightest degree able to experience the sensations of those bodies, even if those bodies themselves could have been capable of real sensations, which is greatly doubtful; for the angels and those temporarily occupied bodies, not having come into being together by a real human birth as one personality, there could not be any such inter-reaction as that which exists in the case of the human mind and body. Indeed, the bodies could not have been real bodies of flesh and blood at all, when we come to think of it; for without being inhabited by the human spirit, the human flesh-and-blood body dies. Bodies occupied by angels simply could not be normal human bodies of flesh and blood.

[Source: J. Sidlow Baxter, *Studies in Problem Texts*]

One thing the astute reader may notice in the argument above is that it is not based upon any Scriptural evidence. There is not a single Bible verse cited in support of the view that angels are incapable of "real sensations" including, but not limited to, sexual reproduction. Mr. Baxter states that

the angels “could not have... in the slightest degree” been “able to experience the sensations of” the physical bodies they inhabited.

Such a claim must be considered a foundational precept of Mr. Baxter’s argument. All his other arguments arise out of this denial that angels can manifest in physical bodies that are capable of physical sensations and functioning. The primacy of this point in his argument demands some Biblical evidence to back it up. Yet, none is forthcoming. In fact, Mr. Baxter declares that no such Biblical support is necessary.

Let us be frank and explicit. The angels are bodiless, purely spiritual beings, and sexless. Being bodiless and sexless means that they are without sex organs, and that they are therefore absolutely incapable of sensuous experiences or sexual processes; nor are they capable of procreation or reproduction in any way whatever. There is no need to refer to this or that or the other text: the whole teaching of the Bible concerning the angels stands solidly behind that affirmation.

[Source: Ibid]

As a teacher called by Christ to instruct, reprove, correct, and edify His people, I am particularly troubled by the last sentence above. It is inappropriate for any Bible teacher to make confident assertions and dogmatic statements and follow them up by saying no specific texts are necessary to back them up. This leaves the reader with nothing more than the individual’s opinion to rest his belief upon. Opinion is an insufficient basis to establish any truth. The apostle Paul declared the following.

II Timothy 3:16

All Scripture is inspired by God and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, for training in righteousness...

Mr. Baxter would have his readers to accept his statement “The angels are bodiless, purely spiritual beings, and sexless” without providing any Biblical evidence to support these claims. Alarm bells should go off whenever any Christian teacher starts making dogmatic claims while refusing to provide Biblical evidence to back them up. The Scriptures reveal that angels often manifest in human form. They have physical senses. They function as humans. They appear masculine, and are always referred to with masculine speech. They are absolutely NOT the “bodiless,” “sexless,” “purely spiritual” beings that Mr. Baxter declares them to be. I won’t ask you to take my word for this. I will provide you with Scriptures so you can test this matter yourself. Let us begin by revisiting the encounter between Abraham and his three heavenly visitors just prior to the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah.

Genesis 18:1-8

Now Yahweh appeared to him by the oaks of Mamre, while he was sitting at the tent door in the heat of the day. And when he lifted up his eyes and looked, behold, three men were standing opposite him; and when he saw them, he ran from the tent door to meet them, and bowed himself to the earth, and said, “My lord, if now I have found favor in your sight, please do not pass your servant by. Please let a little water be brought and wash your feet, and rest yourselves under the tree; and I will bring a piece of bread, that you may refresh yourselves; after that you may go on, since you have visited your servant.” And they said, “So do, as you have said.” So Abraham hurried into the tent to Sarah, and

said, “Quickly, prepare three measures of fine flour, knead it, and make bread cakes.” Abraham also ran to the herd, and took a tender and choice calf, and gave it to the servant; and he hurried to prepare it. And he took curds and milk and the calf which he had prepared, and placed it before them; and he was standing by them under the tree as they ate.



Abraham and His Heavenly Visitors

As this passage continues, it declares plainly that two of the visitors that Abraham met with that day were angels.

Genesis 18:22, 19:1

Then the men turned away from there and went toward Sodom, while Abraham was still standing before Yahweh... Now the two angels came to Sodom in the evening as Lot was sitting in the gate of Sodom.

If angels manifesting in physical bodies are incapable of all physical sensation and function, it is remarkable that these angels could sit down and eat the cakes and meat that Abraham served to them. How could they even hold a plate of food if they had no sensory function? How could they see, touch, hear, smell, or taste? Yet, the Bible reveals repeatedly that the angels are exercising these physical senses as they interact with mankind. As Abraham was speaking with the angels, Sarah laughed inside her tent when the angels announced that Sarah would have a baby the following year. The angels asked “Why did Sarah laugh?” This is evidence of the exercise of sensory functions. They **heard** Sarah laugh.

When the two angels arrived in Sodom, Lot took them into his home. That evening the wicked men of Sodom surrounded Lot’s home and demanded that he send out the men (angels) who had entered there. The men of Sodom wanted to have sexual relations with them. When the men of Sodom pressed Lot, and were about to become violent, the angels reached out and drew Lot back into the house, closing the door behind him. They later took hold of Lot, his wife and two daughters by the hand and led them out of Sodom. How could they do these things if they did not experience physical sensation? How would they know they had hold of someone’s hand? How would they know they were not squeezing the hand too hard, or not hard enough?

When Elijah fled from the threats of Jezebel and lay down in the wilderness weary and despondent, the angel of Yahweh came to him, touched the prophet, and provided him with food to strengthen him for his journey.

I Kings 19:5-8

And he lay down and slept under a juniper tree; and behold, there was an angel touching him, and he said to him, "Arise, eat." Then he looked and behold, there was at his head a bread cake baked on hot stones, and a jar of water. So he ate and drank and lay down again. And the angel of Yahweh came again a second time and touched him and said, "Arise, eat, because the journey is too great for you."

We observe again that the angels are able to touch, hear, speak, and to interact with mankind while appearing in physical bodies. In Acts chapter 12 we read of an angel appearing to Peter in prison. The angel struck Peter on the side, awakening him and rousing him up. He then told Peter to follow him as he led Peter right out of the prison and past the guards on duty. In Mark chapter one we read of the angels ministering to Christ after He had not eaten for forty days and had been tempted of the devil in the wilderness. These encounters with angels reveal that they are capable of physical interaction with mankind. They can prepare food, serve it, offer words of comfort, and converse with mankind. In the book of Hebrews, we read a remarkable comment regarding the people of God interacting with angels.

Hebrews 13:2

Do not neglect to show hospitality to strangers, for by this some have entertained angels without knowing it.

What is included in the idea of entertaining angels? Certainly it would include sharing food with them, offering them a place to stay, possibly washing their feet. There may have been a handshake of greeting, or even the exchange of a holy kiss. There would certainly be occasions of conversation. A myriad of reputable examples of Christians encountering angels could be cited, including experiences of my own, but I will limit myself to Biblical examples.

Rather than portraying angels as bodiless, sexless, purely spiritual beings, the Bible reveals that the angels move about with equal ease among both the spiritual and physical realms. Why should this seem strange to any believer? The angels were created to abide with Yahweh in heaven, yet they were also created to serve as ministering spirits to mankind. It is error to judge angels by our own present constraints. Nor should we think that what mankind currently experiences will be his portion in the ages to come. Man at present is limited to experiencing life through a physical body. We cannot put off this body at will, or take on an ethereal body to enter into the heavens. Yet the day will come when the people of God will be able to do both.

A remarkable prophetic passage alludes to this ability of the overcoming sons of God in coming days. This passage is found in the book of Ezekiel. On one level, this word recorded by the prophet is forecasting an upcoming day when the righteous sons of God will, like the holy angels, experience what it is like to enter into the presence of Yahweh in glorified, holy bodies while also being able to put on other bodily forms that they might go out from the presence of God to mingle among the masses of humanity who have not yet been glorified.

Ezekiel 44:10-19

“But the Levites who went far from Me, when Israel went astray, who went astray from Me after their idols, shall bear the punishment for their iniquity. Yet they shall be ministers in My sanctuary, having oversight at the gates of the house and ministering in the house; they shall slaughter the burnt offering and the sacrifice for the people, and they shall stand before them to minister to them. Because they ministered to them before their idols and became a stumbling block of iniquity to the house of Israel, therefore I have sworn against them,” declares Yahweh God, “that they shall bear the punishment for their iniquity. And they shall not come near to Me to serve as a priest to Me, nor come near to any of My holy things, to the things that are most holy; but they shall bear their shame and their abominations which they have committed. Yet I will appoint them to keep charge of the house, of all its service, and of all that shall be done in it.”

“But the Levitical priests, the sons of Zadok, who kept charge of My sanctuary when the sons of Israel went astray from Me, shall come near to Me to minister to Me; and they shall stand before Me to offer Me the fat and the blood,” declares Yahweh God. “They shall enter My sanctuary; they shall come near to My table to minister to Me and keep My charge. And it shall be that when they enter at the gates of the inner court, they shall be clothed with linen garments; and wool shall not be on them while they are ministering in the gates of the inner court and in the house. Linen turbans shall be on their heads, and linen undergarments shall be on their loins; they shall not gird themselves with anything which makes them sweat. And when they go out into the outer court, into the outer court to the people, they shall put off their garments in which they have been ministering and lay them in the holy chambers; then they shall put on other garments that they may not transmit holiness to the people with their garments.”

Just like the immense temple described by Ezekiel has never been built, so too has this prophetic word never known a physical fulfillment. Nor do I anticipate it being fulfilled in a strictly literal sense. The Levitical priesthood has been superseded by a better priesthood, that of Melchizedek. Similarly the sacrifices and offerings of bulls and goats, of fat and the blood, has been done away with. Christ is the perfect sacrifice that brings an end to all other sacrifices.

Nevertheless, there will be a fulfillment of that which Ezekiel described in this passage. Zadok was an actual person, a descendant of Aaron. He served as High Priest in the days of King David. The name Zadok means “righteous.” The name Melchizedek shares the same root as Zadok, meaning “king of righteousness.” I believe this prophetic passage is speaking of the experience of the righteous human sons of God who will be accounted worthy to serve as priests in the Melchizedek priesthood under the rule of Christ who is the true King of Righteousness. Because these sons of God turned away from the idols of the world that their brothers went after, they will be accounted worthy to enter into the very presence of Yahweh and to have access to His most holy things. When these sons enter Yahweh’s presence they will be arrayed in holy garments, glorified bodies, that are befitting those who stand in the presence of the Most High God.

These righteous sons will have occasion to go out from the presence of Yahweh to move about among the throngs of mankind. Has Christ not called His people to be a nation of kings and priests? When they go out among the people who have not yet been sanctified and glorified, these righteous sons must put on other array. They must lay aside their glorified bodies and appear in more humble array

lest they transmit holiness to those who are unholy. I believe this to be the meaning of the prophecy above.

I perceive in this an experience similar to that of the holy angels today. When they go into the presence of Yahweh, they appear in their glorified, celestial bodies. Yet when they are sent out as ministering spirits into the presence of men, they clothe themselves with an appearance that is common, not displaying their heavenly glory. Is this not what the Bible reveals? Do we not often read of angels appearing to men in such ordinary form that they are mistaken for men? Yet, on other occasions, men are given visions of the angels in their holy array and glorified bodies. When the angels appear in this manner, men are stricken with paralyzing fear. All strength leaves their bodies, and they are so overwhelmed by the glory of the angels that they instinctively fall down before them to worship. This is true even of the most godly and righteous of men.

Daniel 10:5-9

I lifted my eyes and looked, and behold, there was a certain man dressed in linen, whose waist was girded with a belt of pure gold of Uphaz. His body also was like beryl, his face had the appearance of lightning, his eyes were like flaming torches, his arms and feet like the gleam of polished bronze, and the sound of his words like the sound of a tumult. Now I, Daniel, alone saw the vision, while the men who were with me did not see the vision; nevertheless, a great dread fell on them, and they ran away to hide themselves. So I was left alone and saw this great vision; yet no strength was left in me, for my natural color turned to a deathly pallor, and I retained no strength. But I heard the sound of his words; and as soon as I heard the sound of his words, I fell into a deep sleep on my face, with my face to the ground.

Revelation 22:8-9

And I, John, am the one who heard and saw these things. And when I heard and saw, I fell down to worship at the feet of the angel who showed me these things. And he said to me, "Do not do that; I am a fellow servant of yours and of your brethren the prophets and of those who heed the words of this book; worship God."

Brothers and sisters, there are many incredible things revealed in the word of God. Many have stumbled over them, being offended at the supernatural character of this creation. Some have been inculcated to respond with indignation to that which appears mystical, spiritual, or defies natural explanation. The subject matter set forth in Genesis 6:1-4 is of such a nature. Angels walking openly with humanity, even choosing wives from among the daughters of men, is an idea that offends the sensibilities of some people. Let us not be among those who are offended by the reality of the supernatural world around us. Yahweh is a supernatural God. His sons must be as comfortable in the supernatural realm as they are in the natural.

Wrapping Up

It hardly seems that it has been seven months since I began writing this book, yet the first post to this series was published online on February 21, 2014. Today is September 12, 2014. When I set forth to begin this writing I had certain goals in mind. I was troubled by the vast amount of confusion and false teaching present among the body of Christ regarding the beginnings of creation. Whether the subject is the ages of the earth, the identification of Jesus Christ/Yahshua the Messiah as “the only begotten son of God,” the fall of angels and men, the beginnings of idolatry, the various doctrines related to the creation account of Genesis, or other topics related to the foundations of this present universe, one can find a myriad of conflicting and erroneous views.

One of my aims in addressing these foundational issues was to set forth the truth of each subject in a manner that is faithful to the testimony of the Bible. In an hour when so many authors, speakers, and Christian teachers are looking to extra-Biblical sources for their inspiration, including the occult teachings of Kabbalah, and numerous pseudepigraphal (falsely attributed) writings, my desire was to establish every matter by leading the reader back to the pages of holy Scripture. Every chapter of this book contains abundant Biblical quotations, enabling the student of God’s word to test everything themselves.

It has not been possible to address every point of reader interest relating to the beginnings of God, angels, man, sin, and the physical creation. I am satisfied, however, that attention has been given to many critical issues of foundational truth. Many of these topics had long been weighing upon my mind. Having a large correspondence with the saints of God from all across the world, I am aware of the confusion so prevalent in the church. My heart’s burden and desire is summed up in the words of the apostles Paul and John.

Hebrews 13:9

Do not be carried about with various and strange doctrines.

III John 4

I have no greater joy than this, to hear of my children walking in the truth.

It is certain that as we race forward to the end of this age and the next appearance of Christ, that deceivers and deception will be increasingly abundant. We live in an hour when every son or daughter of Christ who aspires to walk victoriously must be diligent to test every doctrine, every claim, every word of prophecy. Those who prove to be deficient in searching out truth and exposing error will be prey for the adversary. Satan’s chief weapons of destruction have always been deception and enticement to various lusts. Those who would overcome him must be on guard, and exercise great care. They must be as diligent in testing every doctrine as they are in ruling over the passions and desires of the flesh. A failure in either area can have tragic repercussions.

As I pen these closing words, I feel as if a necessary task has been accomplished. When the foundations of our beliefs rest upon solid rock, that which rests upon the foundation is able to stand the tests of time. I pray that this book has been a boon to you, the reader, and has helped you to divide between truth and error.

I can now move on to other duties and interests without the thought nagging at my mind of needing to address the topics which have been expounded upon in these pages.

May you be blessed with peace and understanding in these days,

Joseph Herrin



Books By Joseph Herrin

The Remnant Bride

Sabbath

Sarah's Children

The Road from Babylon to Zion

Laying Down the Law

God's Plan of the Ages

The Divine Quest - God's passionate pursuit of faith in the heart of man.

The Mark of the Beast

Evidence of Things Unseen

Overcoming Addiction by the Spirit of Christ

Christ in You - The Hope of Glory

The Marriage Covenant

The Gate and the Way

Dragon Flood

No Apologies

Yahweh's Book

Foundations

Push Back! A Christian Response to the Homosexual Agenda

Lunacy & the Age of Deception

Living Epistles - Testimonies of Faith

Attractive Deception - The False Hope of the Hebrew Roots Movement